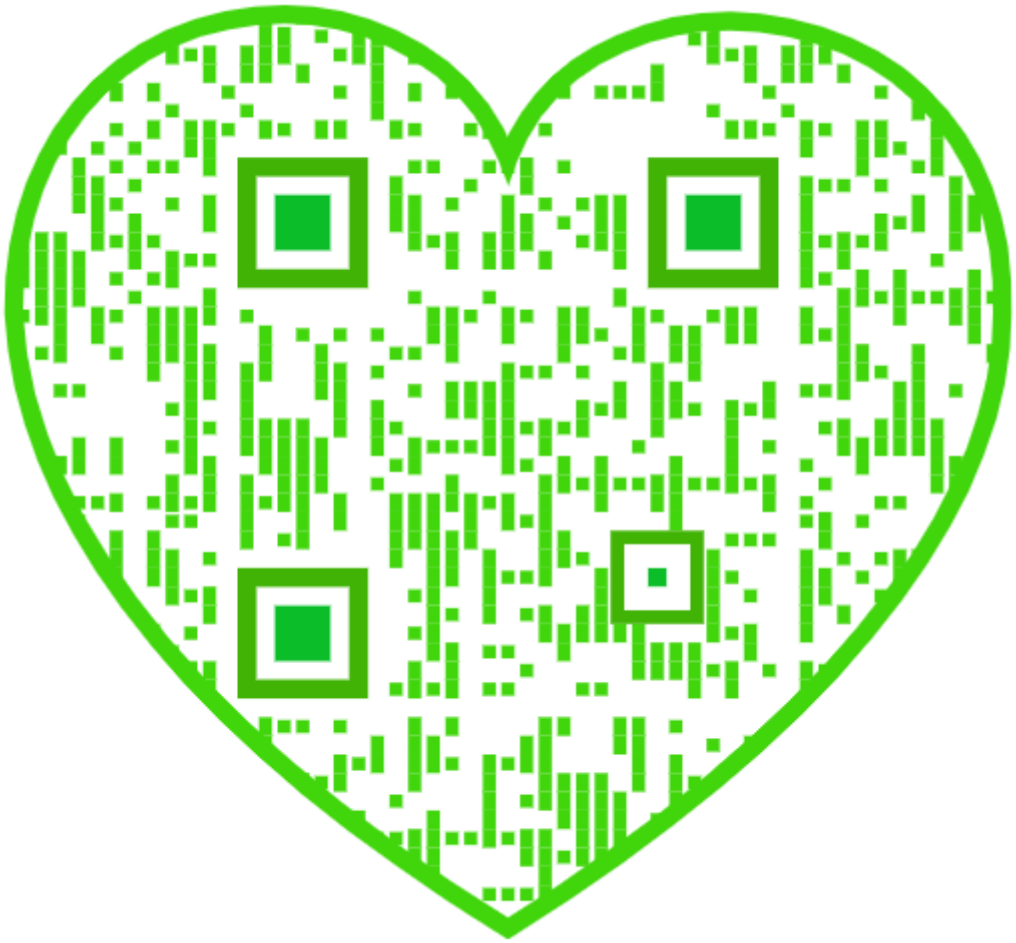
Cook

# First Book in Old English

Ginn & Company



Rutgers University
LIBRARY

*Purchased by*

Sundry Fund

PE129
.C7 F3

214635

# A FIRST BOOK IN OLD ENGLISH

*GRAMMAR, READER, NOTES, AND VOCABULARY*

BY

ALBERT S. COOK

PROFESSOR OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE
IN YALE UNIVERSITY

*THIRD EDITION*

GINN AND COMPANY
BOSTON · NEW YORK · CHICAGO · LONDON
ATLANTA · DALLAS · COLUMBUS · SAN FRANCISCO

L

PE 189
.C77F3

COPYRIGHT, 1894, 1903, 1921, BY
ALBERT S. COOK

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

PRINTED IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

227.1

The Athenæum Press
GINN AND COMPANY · PROPRIETORS · BOSTON · U.S.A.

TO

JAMES MORGAN HART

Author of "German Universities"

and

Scholar in Old English

A111635

# PREFACE TO FIRST EDITION.

The present volume is an attempt to be of service to those who are beginning the study of our language, or who desire to acquaint themselves with a few specimens of our earliest literature. It has seemed to the author that there were two extremes to be avoided in its compilation — the treatment of Old English as though it consisted of wholly isolated phenomena, and the procedure upon a virtual assumption that the student was already acquainted with the cognate Germanic tongues and with the problems and methods of comparative philology. The former treatment robs the study of its significance and value, which, like that of most other subjects, is found in its relations; the latter repels and confounds the student at a stage when he is most in need of encouragement and attraction.

How well the author has succeeded must be left to the judgment of others — the masters whom he follows at a distance, and the students whose interests he has constantly borne in mind. Of one thing, however, he can assure such as may care to inspect his book — that he has spared no pains in treading the path which seemed to be thus marked out for him in advance. Errors there doubtless are — errors of judgment, and errors of fact; but for both he must plead the best excuse ever

offered for similar imperfections, that of King Alfred in the last sentence on page 162 of this volume.

The selections have been made with reference to giving a fairly just, though necessarily incomplete, view of the surroundings, occupations, problems, ideals, and sentiments of our English ancestors. The earlier pieces of both prose and poetry are short; the longer ones that follow either have more sustained interest, or are supported by their reference to preceding ones; but they, too, fall into natural subdivisions, partially indicated in the printing, so that they may be read as successions of short extracts.

It may be objected that Latin and Greek have been too freely used for illustration. The reply to such an objection is twofold: that the book is likely to fall into the hands of some who possess at least an elementary acquaintance with one or both of these languages, and that to these the disclosure of the relations involved in a comparison with the ancient tongues will materially increase their pleasure and their gain; and, secondly, that the book may be intelligently read, from cover to cover, without the slightest knowledge of either Greek or Latin.

The passages from Bede have been taken from Miller's edition; the portion of Ælfric's Colloquy from the Wright-Wülker Vocabularies; the extracts from Wulfstan from Napier's edition; the selections from Beowulf and Andreas are based upon the Grein-Wülker edition of the Bibliothek derAngelsächsischen Poesie; that from the Judith upon my own edition. The originals of the others are either indicated, or will be patent to scholars.

The normalization of the texts to an Early West Saxon basis — Cosijn's Altwestsächsische Grammatik being the chief authority for norms — will doubtless be criticised by some scholars whose judgment is entitled to respect; but here again the author has had in mind the beginner, for whose especial use the book is intended. If he welcomes this introduction on account of its greater ease, and is yet not led astray by it; if he becomes solidly grounded in the elements, so that further progress is facilitated, while yet he has nothing to unlearn in the future; the author will be consoled by his approbation for the censure of those who entertain a different opinion on this head.

To the normalization of the texts exception has been made in the case of the poetry. For this there are two reasons. In spite of the greater difficulty of the poetry, the student should have had sufficient practice in reading, and particularly in parsing — the importance of which cannot be too much insisted upon — to proceed in the poetry without great obstruction from the retention of manuscript forms, especially as the cross-references of the Vocabulary will furnish him with the necessary assistance; and, secondly, the normalization of the poetry would sometimes have been attended with considerable uncertainty, an uncertainty which is decidedly less in the case of the prose. Besides, such profit as accrues to the student from the inspection of the irregular orthography of the manuscripts may, by the literal reproduction of the orthography, be gained from this part.

The device noted on page 202 is presented with some

persuasion of its utility, though frankly as an experiment on which the author would gladly take, after sufficient trial, the judgment of his colleagues.

The Grammar is the merest outline. Its condensation has been largely effected by confining the treatment almost entirely to Old English itself, excluding all references to the theoretical Primitive Germanic. This method is accompanied with some loss; but, again, it is the beginner whom the author has had in view. More doubtful, perhaps, is the expediency of an empirical classification of nouns, instead of the scientific arrangement according to stems; many of us have unquestionably found, however, that the more purely scholarly classification occasions not a little trouble in practice, and that its theoretical advantages are dearly purchased at this stage, before there is any adequate conception of comparative philology and its postulates. The author is not so clear with regard to the probable utility of paragraphs 12–14, on original and derivative vowels; criticism on this point will be especially welcome.

The Appendixes include illustrative matter for which there was no natural place elsewhere, or materials and hints for those who would prosecute their researches a little further. The first three of them carry their meaning on their face; the last is provided in order to facilitate the beginning of dialectic study. It — Appendix IV. — has cost more thought than is likely to appear on the surface. The dialects have as yet been but imperfectly discriminated; it is easier to say what is non-West Saxon than what is Mercian or Kentish; the residuum of demon-

strably pure Northumbrian forms in Cædmon's Hymn, for example, turns out to be surprisingly small.

Care has been devoted to the unification of the book — to making its parts mutually coherent; the illustrations of syntax are therefore taken from the texts printed in the Reader, and the Vocabulary contains copious references to the Grammar. It is hoped that this plan will prevent distraction on the part of the student, and conduce to a nearly absolute mastery of the matter here presented. The book ought to occupy at least a semester, and could readily be used for a longer time. The author believes that the history of the English language may most profitably begin with such a manual, studied under a competent teacher and with access to a few good reference books. Thus used, it might advantageously be introduced into the earlier part of College courses, and perhaps into the better sort of High Schools and Academies.

In conclusion, it is a pleasure to the author to acknowledge his indebtedness to Miss Elizabeth Deering Hanscom, graduate student of Yale University and American Fellow of the Association of Collegiate Alumnæ, who has rendered material assistance in the preparation of the Vocabulary.

YALE UNIVERSITY, December 11, 1893.

# PREFACE TO SECOND EDITION.

The favorable reception accorded to the first edition has encouraged the author, besides correcting several small errors, to amplify Appendix I., and to add a new Appendix, numbered V. The provision of a brief bibliography has been so generally welcomed that it has seemed desirable to append a list of books of a more advanced character, while retaining the former one essentially unchanged. No attempt at completeness has been made, but perhaps not many books of primary value have been omitted. The illustration of umlaut from Gothic, suggested by a reviewer, now constitutes Appendix V.

Certain teachers having expressed a wish that the Vocabulary should give the gender of nouns, the author thinks it proper to state the principle upon which the designation of gender was omitted. This principle was that the Grammar should be in constant use. The cardinal use of a knowledge of the gender is with reference to declension; given the declension, and the gender follows. Now the references to the Grammar under nouns primarily indicate the declensions. If, then, the student recognizes the meaning of such references as **43**, **47**, etc., it is a proof that he is sufficiently acquainted with the paradigms they indicate; if not, it is a clear sign that he ought to refer to them, and that a mere knowledge

of the gender would not suffice. This is the author's opinion, but he holds himself prepared to defer to the expressed wish of his colleagues, when he can believe that that wish is at all general among those who have given the book a fair trial.

The author hopes soon to issue a small companion volume of exercises in Old English, designed chiefly to facilitate drill on inflections. These exercises will consist of brief sentences for translation into Old English, based upon the successive prose selections of the Reader, together with an English-Old English Vocabulary.

A final word to those who use this book — a word based upon experience with it: *Look up carefully every foot-note, and constantly refer from the Vocabulary to the Grammar, with reference to the speedy mastery of the latter, supplementing this process by the committal to memory of paradigms.*

YALE UNIVERSITY, December 31, 1894.

# PREFACE TO THIRD EDITION.

In this edition Appendix I. has again been revised and amplified; Appendix VI. has been added, as Appendix IV. was in the second edition; and a few minor errors have been corrected.

Certain kindly critics have desired changes which would virtually mean the introduction of a larger element of comparative Germanics, but I have not seen my way clear to satisfy them, for the reasons stated on p. viii; such persons can always find what they desire in Sievers' *Old English Grammar*, in Bülbring's *Altenglisches Elementarbuch*, or in my *Phonological Investigation of Old English*. Any curiosity about the general appearance of the other Germanic tongues may now be gratified by a glance at Appendix VI.

The *Exercises in Old English*, based principally upon the earlier prose texts of this book, has proved its utility as a means of securing grammatical drill with a comparatively small expenditure of effort and time, and may therefore be commended to teachers with some confidence.

Yale University, December 20, 1902.

## SUPPLEMENTARY NOTE

For a new impression of this book I now have the opportunity of consulting Krapp's edition of the *Andreas*, and have conformed a few readings to his, besides emending *sēce* to *sęcge* (216. 5).

Yale University, June 28, 1906.

# CONTENTS.


PAGE

GRAMMAR . . . . . 1

Introduction . . . . . 3

Dialects and Periods . . . . . 3

Phonology . . . . . 5

Letters and Sounds . . . . . 5

Effects and Relations of Sounds . . . . . 10

Consonantal Loss and Change . . . . . 21

Inflection . . . . . 26

Declension of Nouns . . . . . 26

Declension of Adjectives . . . . . 38

Comparison of Adjectives . . . . . 42

Formation and Comparison of Adverbs . . . . . 44

Numerals . . . . . 46

Pronouns . . . . . 48

Verbs . . . . . 53

Formation of Words . . . . . 81

Syntax . . . . . 88

Nouns . . . . . 88

Adjectives . . . . . 99

Adverbs . . . . . 100

Pronouns . . . . . 100

Verbs . . . . . 101

Prepositions . . . . . 106

Conjunctions . . . . . 107

Prosody . . . . . 108

READER . . . . . 121

I. The Creation of the World . . . . . 122

II. Trades and Occupations . . . . . 129

III. The Day of Judgment . . . . . 134

IV. Bede's Description of Britain . . . . . 137

V. Æthelwald calms the Sea . . . . . 141

PAGE

VI. The Invasion of Britain by the Picts and Scots . 144
VII. The Passing of Chad . . . . . 150
VIII. The Dangers of Greatness . . . . . 156
IX. Duties of the Rich toward the Poor . . . . . 159
X. Alfred's Preface to Boethius . . . . . 162
XI. A Prayer of King Alfred . . . . . 163
XII. Apollonius of Tyre . . . . . 164
The Shipwreck . . . . . 165
Apollonius and the Fisherman . . . . . 166
The Incidents in the Gymnasium . . . . . 168
Apollonius at the Feast . . . . . 170
Entry of the Princess . . . . . 172
A Lesson in Music . . . . . 174
Apollonius as Teacher . . . . . 177
The Three Suitors . . . . . 178
The Princess chooses . . . . . 180
Apollonius relates his Adventures . . . . . 184
The Recognition . . . . . 185
The Fisherman's Reward . . . . . 186
The End . . . . . 187
XIII. The Six Days' Work of Creation . . . . . 189
XIV. The Song of the Gleeman . . . . . 200
XV. The Rout of the Assyrians . . . . . 202
XVI. Selections from the Andreas . . . . . 210
Conversation between Andrew and the Sea-Captain 211
The Voyage. — Storm at Sea . . . . . 218
Andrew relates Christ's Stilling of the Tempest . . 222
Andrew desires Instruction in Seamanship . . . 225
The Pilot recognizes God's Presence with Andrew . 227
Andrew is carried to the City . . . . . 228
Andrew's Disciples relate their Adventure . . . 230

APPENDIXES . . . . . 233
Appendix I. Some Useful Books for the Study of Old English 235
Appendix II. Correspondences of Old English and Modern German Vowels . . . . . 245
Appendix III. Andrew's Negotiations with the Steersman . 247
Appendix IV. Specimens of the Dialects . . . . . 250
Appendix V. I-umlaut illustrated from Gothic . . . . . 268
Appendix VI. Specimens of Old Germanic Dialects . . . 270

VOCABULARY . . . . . 279

# GRAMMAR.

# INTRODUCTION.

## Dialects and Periods.

**1.** Old English (sometimes called Anglo-Saxon) is the name of the Germanic language spoken in England between the middle of the fifth and the middle of the twelfth century. Its literature extends from the eighth to the twelfth century, and there are no Old English words found in documents earlier than the seventh century. The principal prose texts date from the period of King Alfred (871–901 A.D.), or from that of Abbot Ælfric (pronounced Alfric), who flourished about the year 1000 A.D. The poetical pieces are mostly of uncertain dates, ranging from the eighth to the tenth or eleventh century.

There are four dialects of Old English, the Northumbrian, Mercian, Kentish, and West Saxon; of these the Mercian is intermediate in its characteristics between the Northumbrian and West Saxon. The Northumbrian dialect formed the basis of modern Scotch and Northern English, the Mercian of standard literary English. The literature of Old English is chiefly extant in West Saxon, though the poetry,

and some of the prose, contains forms from other dialects, chiefly from the Northumbrian.

Since the remains of the other dialects are comparatively small, West Saxon is the principal existing representative of Old English, and hence the two terms are often used interchangeably. West Saxon is divided into Early West Saxon (EWS.) and Late West Saxon (LWS.). The former is the language as written in King Alfred's time, the latter as in that of Abbot Ælfric and his successors. A hundred years made some changes in the language, but rather with respect to syntax, euphony, and style in general than to the forms of words, though these also underwent some modification.

In this work, the forms are those of Early West Saxon, which is assumed as the standard, even when the selections are from Late West Saxon.

# PHONOLOGY.

## Letters and Sounds.

**2. Alphabet.** — The Old English alphabet has the letters of Modern English, with the exception of *j*, *k*, *q*, *v*, and *z*, and with the addition of **ð** and **þ**, both of which represent the modern *th*. Of these, *j* and *v* are never used, being represented by **g** (or **i**) and **f**, respectively; *k*, *q*, and *z* but rarely, *k* being commonly represented by **c**, *ks*(*cs*) by **x**, *q*(*u*) by **c**(**w**), and *z* by **ts**. The two unfamiliar characters **ð** and **þ** are pronounced *eth* (*eth* in *brethren*) and *thorn*, respectively; they are used interchangeably in the manuscripts; in this book **ð** will, in general, stand for both.

**3. Vowels and diphthongs.** — The vowel-letters are those of Modern English, with the addition of **æ**. Modern editors employ **ę** and **ǫ** to denote respectively an **e** and **o** which sprang from an original **a** (but **ę** occasionally from **o**; **17**, **25**). The vowels may be either short or long.

The diphthongs are represented by **ea**, **eo**, and **ie**, both short and long. The second vowel sound in each diphthong is scarcely heard in pronunciation, the first element being the one which receives the stress.

*The vowel of every syllable is to be pronounced, but in an unstressed syllable the sound is less distinct* (**23**).

**4. Quantity.** — Long vowels and diphthongs must be carefully distinguished from short ones. In normalized texts, length is indicated by the acute accent (′) or the macron (¯), placed over a vowel or the first element of a diphthong. For instance, OE. **god** is Mod. Eng. *god*, but OE. **gód** or **gōd** is Mod. Eng. *good;* so **for**, *for*, but **fōr**, *went;* **bær**, *bare*, but **bǣr**, *bier;* **ac**, *but*, but **āc**, *oak;* **geat**, *gate*, but **gēat**, *poured;* **is**, *is*, but **īs**, *ice;* **man**, *man*, but **mān**, *crime;* **tol**, *toll*, but **tōl**, *tool;* **węnde**, *went*, but **wēnde**, *weened*. Beginners should never fail to note whether the radical vowel of each word is long or short, and should no more confound **a** with **ā** than **a** with **y**.

The length of a syllable must be distinguished from that of a vowel. Every syllable containing a long vowel is itself long, but so is also one which contains a short vowel followed by any two consonants or a double consonant. In the latter case, the syllable is said to be long by position; in the former, by nature.

**5. Pronunciation of vowels and diphthongs.** — The pronunciation of the vowels and diphthongs can only be mastered by ignoring their pronunciation in Modern English. Any modern language, or Latin or Greek as pronounced by the Continental method, would be a safer guide.

The exact pronunciation of the Old English vowels and diphthongs can be but imperfectly represented. The learner will not be far astray if he follows the pronunciation indicated in this table: —

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **a** | as in | last (not *a* in man) | **habban** |
| **ā** | " | far | **ān** |
| **æ** | " | man | **æt** |
| **ǣ** | " | care | **ǣr** |
| **e, ę** | " | men | **help, męnn** |
| **ē** | " | they | **hē** |
| **i** | " | fin | **in** |
| **ī** | " | machine | **wīn** |
| **o, ǫ** | " | broad (but shorter) | **god** |
| **ō** | " | tone | **gōd** |
| **u** | " | full | **full** |
| **ū** | " | rune | **dūn** |
| **y** | " | dünn (Germ.) / din (less accurate) | **dynn** |
| **ȳ** | " | grün (Germ.) / green (less accurate) | **hȳd** |
| **ea** | = | æ + u̯h | **eall** |
| **ēa** | = | ē + a̯h | **nēah** |
| **eo** | = | e + o | **eom** |
| **ēo** | = | ē + o | **frēond** |
| **ie** | = | i + ĕh | **fierd** |
| **īe** | = | ī + ĕh | **nīed** |

NOTE. — The true sounds of **y** and **ȳ** are most readily produced by placing the lips in the position for pronouncing long *oo*, and, while retaining the lips in this position, pronouncing respectively the *i* in *it*, and the *ee* in *deem*.

6. **Consonants.** — The consonants are divided into —

*labials*, **w, m, p, b, f.**

*dentals*, **r, l, n, t, d, ð, s.**

*gutturals* (sometimes *palatals*), **(ng), c, g, h.**

**7. Pronunciation of consonants.** — **w** was pronounced as in Mod. Eng., also distinctly in the combinations **wr, wl**; **m, p,** and **b** as in Mod. Eng.; **f** as *f* and as *v* (**2**).

**r** and **l** were pronounced nearly as in Mod. Eng. (but see **21**); **n, t, d,** as in Mod. Eng.; **ð** as *th* in *thin* and in *the*; **s** as *s* and as *z*.

**ng** was pronounced like Mod. Eng. *ng* in *finger*; when palatal (**10**) it resembled *ng* in *singe*. **c** was pronounced like Mod. Eng. *k*, or, when palatal, like English *ch* in *child*, and was distinctly heard as *k* in the combination **cn**; **cg** like *dg* in Mod. Eng. *bridge* (see **11**). **g** was pronounced as *g* (but see **9**) and as *y* (**10**). **h** was pronounced as in English, even in the combinations **hl, hn, hr, hw**; when final, and in the combinations **ht, hð**, and **hh**, it had the sound of German *ch*, as in *ach* or in *ich*. **hs** was pronounced like Mod. Eng. *x* (cf. **2**).

When **c** was pronounced as *k*, **g** as *g*, and **h** as German *ch* in *ach*, these letters are to be regarded as gutturals; when as *ch* in *child*, *y*, and *ch* in *ich* respectively, as palatals (**10**).

**8. Surds and sonants.** — The consonants **p, t, c,** together with **f, s, ð** when pronounced like Mod. Eng. *f*, *s*, *th* in *thin*, are called surds. All the other consonants, and all the vowels and diphthongs, are called sonants.

**f, s,** and **ð** are surds when beginning a syllable, or following a surd at the end of a syllable; they are

sonants, that is, are pronounced like *v*, *z*, and *th* in *the*, when they occur between two sonants, or follow a sonant at the end of a syllable. To the foregoing rule there may be some exceptions; in case of doubt, the analogy of Modern English may be followed.

**9. Spirants and stops.** — Spirants are consonantal sounds producible by a continuous emission of breath. Stops are momentary or explosive. The spirants are **f**, **s**, **ð**, and **h** (properly also **g**); to **f** and **ð** correspond the surd stops **p** and **t**, and the sonant stops **b** and **d**.

**10. Gutturals and palatals.** — The consonants **c**, **g**, **h**, are gutturals when occurring before consonants or the vowels **a**, **ā**, **ē**, **o**, **ǫ**, **ō**, **u**, **ū**, **y**, and **ȳ** (and sometimes **ǣ**). They are palatals when occurring before, and sometimes after, the palatal vowels **æ**, **e**, **ę**, **i**, **ī**, **ea**, **ēa**, **eo**, **ēo**, **ie**, **īe** (sometimes **ǣ**); **c** and **g** medially (that is, in the middle of a word), when they are or may be followed by **e** or **i**; **c** likewise in the combination **sc** (pronounced almost like **sh**); **g** in the medial combination **cg**; and **c**(**cc**, **nc**), **g**(**ng**) often medially and finally after a palatal vowel, but at least **ng** not always: *e.g.*, **ęngel**, **Ęnglisc** have not **ng** = *nj*. For the pronunciation of these consonants as palatals see **7**.

**11. Double consonants.** — Double consonants must not be pronounced as in Mod. Eng., except at the end of a syllable. When medial, each consonant is pro-

nounced separately: **sunnum** as *sun-num*, the *n*'s as in Mod. Eng. *penknife*.

Double **f**, when sonant, is always represented by **bb**, and double **g** is usually written **cg**. The only consonant never doubled is **w**.

### Effects and Relations of Sounds.

**12. Original and derivative vowels.** — Of the vowels and diphthongs of Old English, some are original, in the sense of being more directly an inheritance from the Parent Germanic tongue, while others are derivative, or result from modifications of those that we call original.

The original vowels and diphthongs are the following: —

**a**, **ā**, **æ**, **ǣ** (sometimes), **e**, **ē** (rarely), **i** (sometimes), **ī**, **o**, **ō**, **u** (regularly), **ū**, **ēa**, **ēo** (sometimes).

The derivative vowels and diphthongs are: —

**æ** (sometimes), **ǣ** (sometimes), **ę**, **ē** (usually), **i** (sometimes), **ǫ**, **u** (occasionally), **y**, **ȳ**, **ea**, **eo**, **ēo** (sometimes), **ie**, **īe**. Though **ea**, **eo**, **ie** when short are all derivatives, **ie** may be called a derivative of the second order, since it arises from one of the two others.

**13. Relation of original to derivative vowels.** — The relations between original and derivative vowels may thus be shown (see **17**, **18**, **20**, **21**, **25**): —

| Original. | Derivative. |
|---|---|
| **a** | **æ, ę, ǫ, ea, ie** |
| **ā** | **ǣ** |
| **e** | **i, eo, ie, o** |
| **i** | **eo, u** |
| **ǫ** | **ę** |
| **o** | **ę, eo** |
| **ō** | **ē, ēo** |
| **u** | **y** |
| **ū** | **ȳ** |
| **ēa** | **īe** |
| **ēo** | **īe** |

**14. Relation of derivative to original vowels.** — Reversing the order of the last table, we obtain : —

| Derivative. | Original. |
|---|---|
| **æ** | **a** |
| **ǣ** | **ā** |
| **ę** | **a, ǫ, o** |
| **ē** | **ō** |
| **i** | **e** |
| **ǫ** | **a** |
| **y** | **u** |
| **ȳ** | **ū** |
| **ea** | **a (æ)** |
| **ēa** (rarely) | **ǣ** |
| **eo** | **e, i, o** |
| **ēo** | **ō** |
| **ie** | **a (ea), ę, e (eo), i (eo)** |
| **īe** | **ēa, ēo** |

Occasionally (**28, 29, 30**) **ǣ** is derived from **æ**, **ē** from **e**, **ī** from **i**, **ō** from **o** or **a**, **ū** from **u**, **ȳ** from **y**, **ēa** from **ea**, and **ēo** from **eo**. Rarely are **o** and **u** derived from **e** and **i** (**26**).

*It must be observed that not every vowel standing in the column of derivatives belongs exclusively there. Thus* **i**, *for example, is sometimes original* (**12**).

**15. Umlaut.** — Umlaut is a change effected in the vowel of a stressed syllable by the vowel of a following, usually the next following, syllable.

There are two chief kinds of umlaut, the **i**-umlaut (pron. *ĭh'-oom'-lowt*), and the **u**- or **o**-umlaut (*oo*- or *ŏh*-).

**16. The i-umlaut.** — **i**-umlaut is a change effected in a vowel or diphthong by palatalization, such palatalization consisting in an approximation of the umlauted vowel or diphthong to the sound of **i** (*ĭh*). The cause of **i**-umlaut was in all cases an **i** or a **j** (pronounced like Mod. Eng. *y*) of a following syllable, but the **i** or **j** usually disappeared before the period of historic Old English, or was turned into **e**. When the word umlaut is used without qualification, **i**-umlaut is to be understood. See Appendix V.

**17. Illustrations of i-umlaut.** — The effect of **i**-umlaut will be shown by the following table: —

| Original Vowel. | Umlaut Vowel. |
|---|---|
| **a** | **ę** (æ) |
| **ā** | **ǣ** |
| **e** | **i** |
| **ę** | **ę** |
| **o** | **ę** |
| **ō** | **ē** |
| **u** | **y** |

| Original Vowel. | Umlaut Vowel. |
|---|---|
| **ū** | **ȳ** |
| **ea** (from **a**) | **ie** |
| **ēa** | **īe** |
| **eo** (from **e**) | **ie** |
| **ēo** | **īe** |

Examples are: **mann** (*man*), **męnn** (*men*); **lār** (*lore*), **lǣran** (*teach*); **helpan** (*help*), **hilpð** (*helps*); **mǫnn** (*man*), **męnn** (*men*); **oxa** (*ox*), **ęxen** (*oxen*); **dōm** (*doom*), **dēman** (*judge*); **wulle** (*wool*), **wyllen** (*woollen*); **brūcan** (*use*), **brȳcð** (*uses*); **eald** (*old*), **ieldu** (*age*); **hēah** (*high*), **hīehra** (*higher*); **weorpan** (*throw*), **wierpð** (*throws*); **hrēowan** (*rue*), **hrīewð** (*rues*).

Sometimes two words are so related that **y** seems to be **i**-umlaut of **o**, like **gold** (*gold*), **gylden** (*golden*); but in such cases the **o** came from an earlier **u**.

The umlaut of **a** is generally **ę**, but in some words **æ** is found.

Strictly speaking, **i** is not the umlaut of **e**, but the phenomenon, though resulting from **a** somewhat different cause, is virtually the same.

**18. Palatal influence.** — Initial **g**, **c**, and **sc**, change **æ** (from **a**) to **ea**, **ǣ** to **ēa**, and **ę**, **e** to **ie**; and **sc** sometimes changes **a** to **ea**, **ā** to **ēa**, **o** to **eo**, and **ō** to **ēo**. Examples: **gæf** (*gave*), **geaf**; **gǣfon** (*gave*, plur.), **gēafon**; **scęppan** (*create*), **scieppan**; **gefan** (*give*), **giefan**; **scacan** (*shake*), **sceacan**; **scādan**

(*separate*), **scēadan**; **scop** (*poet*), **sceop**; **scōh** (*shoe*), **scēoh**. Even **ēo** from **ū**: **scēor**, from **scūr**, *shower*.

In the following words, the **ge** represents original **j** (pron. *y*): **geoc**, *yoke* (orig. **joc**); **geond**, *through* (orig. **jond**); **geong**, *young* (orig. **jung**); **geoguð**, *youth* (orig. **juguð**); **gēomor**, *grief* (orig. **jōmor**); **gēa**, *yea* (orig. **jā**); **gēar**, *year* (orig. **jār**); **gē**, *ye* (orig. **jē**). Perhaps better **sceādan**, **geōmor**, etc.

The **i** found in the present stem of some weak verbs (**116**) stands for original **j** (pron. *y*), and, as **g** represents this **j** in the words just instanced, so it often appears in the endings of these weak verbs, sometimes alone, sometimes followed by **e**, sometimes in one of these two forms preceded by **i**. Thus **nęrian**, save, occurs also as **nęrgan**, **nęrigan**, **nęrigean**, etc.; the ind. pres. 1st sing. **nęrie** as **nęrge**, **nęrige**, etc.

Wherever in or just preceding the inflectional ending of a word, **c** or **g** is followed by **e** before another vowel, the **e** must be understood to indicate an original **j** (pron. *y*), and an alternative form without **e** also exists. Thus **sēcean** and **sēcan**, seek; **męnigeo** and **męnigo**, multitude. Similarly, the **i** and **g** in the inflectional endings of nouns like **hęre**, *army* (**44**. 2) represent original **j** (pron. *y*).

**19. y and ȳ for ie and īe.** — **y** and **ȳ** properly represent the **i**-umlaut of **u** and **ū**, but are also frequently found for **ie** and **īe**. Sometimes, again, the latter

are represented by **i** and **ī**. Hence, in looking for words containing these letters, it is never safe to confine the search to any one of the three. From **eald**, *old*, is formed by means of **i**-umlaut the noun **ieldu**, *age* (17); but the latter might occur in a text or glossary as **yldu**. Contrariwise, on finding **yldu** in a text or glossary, it would not be safe to conclude that the **y** represented the **i**-umlaut of **u**, since, as we have just seen, it really goes back to **ea** and **a**. Again, were the word to be found as **ildu**, it should not be inferred that the **i** is either original or derived from **e** (17), for the reason just adduced.

*Remember that* **y** *or* **i**, *short or long*, may *stand for* **ie**, *short or long.*

**20. The u- or o-umlaut.** — This umlaut is a change effected in the vowels **a**, **e**, or **i** by a **u** or **o** of the following syllable. By it **a** is converted to **ea**, and **e** or **i** to **eo** (sometimes **i** to **io**). Examples: **caru**, *care*, becomes **cearu**; **weruld**, *world*, becomes **weoruld**; **miluc**, *milk*, becomes **meoloc** or **mioloc**. The change of vowel is, however, not invariable in these circumstances, and, on the whole, may be regarded as exceptional.

The explanation of this phenomenon is that the vowel sound of the following syllable is anticipated, as it were. The vocal organs, while pronouncing the **a** (properly **æ**) of **caru** (**cæru**), are already shaping

themselves to pronounce the **u**; hence the result is **cæuru**, very nearly, which is further modified into **cearu**. For **weoruld** the explanation is similar, but easier.

**21. Breakings.** — Before **r** + consonant, **l** + consonant, and **h** + consonant or **h** final, **a** is regularly converted into **ea**, and **e** or **i** frequently into **eo**. This change is called *breaking*, because the one vowel is, as it were, *broken* into two. Examples: —

*a*) **a** to **ea**: **arm** (*arm*), **earm**; **ald** (*old*), **eald**; **ahta** (*eight*), **eahta**.

*b*) **e** or **i** to **eo** (**io** sometimes from **i**): **erðe** (*earth*), **eorðe**; **elh** (*elk*), **eolh**; **fehtan** (*fight*), **feohtan**; **Piht** (*Pict*), **Pioht, Peoht.**

It must be remembered that the sound of **e** in **ea** differs materially from that of the same letter in **eo** (**5**; cf. **20**).

The explanation of breaking lies in the fact that the vowels which experienced breaking were formed with a position of the vocal organs quite different from that concerned in the production of **r**, **l**, and **h**, as pronounced in Old English. These consonants, at the time when they caused breaking, were gutturals; the vowels that underwent breaking were palatals (strictly speaking, when we say that **a** was broken, we should rather say that it was æ). In the production of these consonants, the back part of the mouth

was chiefly concerned; in that of the vowels it was the forward part. Hence, in passing from the vowel position to that of the consonant, an intermediate vowel sound or glide was produced, akin in position and sound to the consonant which it preceded. Although these consonants have at present a pronunciation which cannot be called guttural, yet it is possible to pronounce a sentence like 'What ails you?' in so drawling a manner, especially as regards 'ails,' that this word shall have nearly the sound of *ā-uls*. The obscure *ŭh*-sound thus developed may be compared to the second element of the diphthong in **ea** and **eo**. Here may be adduced Shakespearian lines such as —

> Strikes his breast *hard* (hah-urd), and anon he casts.
> — Hen. VIII. 3. 2. 117.
>
> Look how he makes to Cæsar, *mark* (mah-urk) him.
> — Jul. Cæs. 3. 2. 18.
>
> My *lord* (law-urd), will it please you pass along.
> — Rich. III. 3. 1. 136.

In all these, metre seems to demand that the italicized words shall be pronounced as disyllabic (Abbott's *Shakespearian Grammar*, § 485).

**22. Ablaut.** — Ablaut (pron. *ahp'-lowt*) is a prehistoric relation existing between the vowels of different tense-stems derived from the same verbal root. Thus the relation of *i*, *a*, and *u*, in the Mod. Eng. *sing*, *sang*, *sung*, is an ablaut relation, and so is the relation of

*i*, *o*, *i* in the Mod. Eng. *drive*, *drove*, *driven*. In Old English the tense-stems of these verbs would be **sing-**, **sang**, **sung-**, **sung-** (104); **drīf-**, **drāf**, **drif-**, **drif-** (102). In the former, **i**, **a**, **u**, **u** stand in an ablaut relation; in the latter, **ī**, **ā**, **i**, **i**.

It must be observed that the verbal stems concerned sometimes appear in nouns and adjectives, as well as in verbs. Thus the vowel of the Mod. Eng. noun *song* stands in an ablaut relation with those of the tense-stems *sing* and *sung*. Again, in Old English, the **i** of the noun **bite**, *bite*, stands in an ablaut relation with the other vowels of the tense-stems of **bītan**, *bite*. The latter are **bīt-**, **bāt**, **bit-**, **bit-** (102), and hence the radical vowel of the noun is identical with that of the third and fourth stems.

*Ablaut is not to be confounded with umlaut. Umlaut admits of explanation; ablaut must, so far as Old English is concerned, be merely accepted as a fact.*

**23. Stress, and the vowels of unstressed syllables.** — The stressed syllable is the principal one, and usually the first one of the word, except in compounded verbs, and nouns or adjectives with the prefixes **be-**, **ge-**, and sometimes **for-**; these stress the root syllable. The laws relating to vowels hold only of stressed syllables. In unstressed syllables, especially in the second syllable of trisyllabic words, the vowel is liable to pass into a neutral sound, often represented by **e**, or to disappear

altogether. When the vowel disappears, the trisyllabic word of course becomes disyllabic: **ęngel**, *angel*, gen. **ęngles** (instead of **ęngeles**); **hēafod**, *head*, gen. **hēafdes** (instead of **hēafodes**). Syncope, as such disappearance is termed, is most apt to occur after a long *syllable* (4).

**24. Representation of Old English vowels in Modern English.** — The same Old English vowel letter is not always represented by the same Mod. Eng. letter, nor its sound by the same Mod. Eng. sound; yet there is a certain uniformity, differing in degree with different vowels, in the representation of both sound and letter. Some of the more regular correspondences are given in the subjoined table, though it must be understood that exceptions are numerous. The Mod. Eng. sound or letter that is first given is the commonest; the second is often comparatively rare. The figuration of the Mod. Eng. vowel sounds is that of Webster's Dictionary. For details, see Mayhew's *Synopsis of Old English Phonology*.

| | OE. Letters. | Mod. E. Letters. | Mod. E. Sounds. | Illustrations. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **a** | a | ā, ă | **nama**, name; **land**, land |
| But | **ag** | aw | ą | **haga**, haw |
| | **ā** | o, oa | ō; ô before **r** | **hām**, home; **ār**, oar |
| | **æ** | a | ă, ä | **glæd**, glad; **fæder**, father |
| But | **æg** | ai, ay | ā | **brægn**, brain; **dæg**, day |
| | **ǣ** | ea, ee, e | ē, ĕ | **dǣl**, deal; **sǣd**, seed; **flǣsc**, flesh |

| | OE. Letters. | Mod. E. Letters. | Mod. E. Sounds. | Illustrations. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **e, ę** | e, ea | ĕ, ē | **feðer**, feather; **twęlf**, twelve; **spere**, spear |
| But | **eg** | ai, ay, a | ā | **regn**, rain; **weg**, way; **ðegn**, thane |
| | **ē** | ee, e | ē (seldom ĕ) | **cwēn**, queen; **hēr**, here; (**blētsian**, bless) |
| | **i** | i | ĭ; ī before ht, nd, ld | **fisc**, fish; **miht**, might; **blind**, blind; **cild**, child |
| But | **ig** | i | ī | **nigon**, nine |
| | **ī** | i | ī, ĭ | **rīm**, rime; **wīsdōm**, wisdom |
| | **o, ǫ** | o, oa | ŏ, ō; ô before r | **bodig**, body; **lǫng**, long; **bolla**, bowl; **hord**, hoard |
| | **ō** | oo, o | o͝o, ŭ, o͝o | **hrōf**, roof; **ōðer**, other; **bōc**, book |
| But | **ōw** | ow | o | **blōwan**, blow |
| | **u** | u, o | ŭ, o͝o | **lufu**, love; **wulf**, wolf |
| But | **und** | ound | ound | **hund**, hound |
| | **ū** | ou, ow, u | ou, ŭ | **hlūd**, loud; **būr**, bower; **būtan**, but |
| | **y** | i, u, o | ĭ, û | **cyning**, king; **byrðen**, burthen; **wyrm**, worm |
| | **ȳ** | i | ī, ĭ | **brȳd**, bride; **fȳst**, fist |
| | **ea** | a | ă, ä, ą | **weaxan**, wax; **heard**, hard; **eall**, all |
| But | **eald** (Anglian **āld**) | old | ōld | **beald**, bold |
| | **ēa** | ea | ē, ĕ | **bēacen**, beacon; **dēad**, dead |
| But | **ēaw** | ew | ū | **dēaw**, dew |
| | **eo** | ea, e, u | ê, û | **eorðe**, earth; **beorg**, berg; **ceorl**, churl |
| But | **eor** | ar, ear | ar | **heorot**, hart; **heorte**, heart |
| | **ēo** | ee, ie, e | ē, ĕ | **dēop**, deep; **fēond**, fiend; **dēofol**, devil |
| But | **ēow** | ew | ū | **blēow**, blew |
| | **ie** | e, ie | ĕ, ē | **hierde**, herd; **gieldan**, yield |
| | **īe** | See **ē** | | |

**25. Influence of nasals.** — The nasals **m** and **n** change a preceding **a** to **ǫ**. Usage is not uniform; some texts have **a** in this position, and others **ǫ**.

*When a word cannot be found under* **a**, *look for it under* **ǫ**, *and conversely.*

**26. Influence of w.** — In cases where **e** or **i** has become **eo** or **io** (**20, 21**), a preceding **w** is apt to change **eo** to **o** or **u**, and **io** to **u**. For example, **weruld** (*world*) becomes **weoruld** through the influence of **u**-umlaut (**20**), and this may then become **woruld**. Similarly, **widuwe** (*widow*) becomes **wioduwe**, and then **wuduwe**. For the **o** and **u** thus produced, **y** is sometimes found.

*When* **o**, **u**, *or* **y** *immediately follows* **w**, *it may be suspected, though it must not be assumed, that the vowel was once* **eo** *or* **io**, *originally* **e** *or* **i**.

## Consonantal Loss and Change.

**27. Loss or vocalization of w.** — Some words ending in a long vowel or diphthong originally ended in **w**, and the **w** is still found in the *oblique* cases of these words. Thus, nom. **cnēo** (*knee*), gen. **cnēowes**, etc., and occasionally in the nominative, **cnēow** (**47.** 3).

At the end of a word, and following a short syllable which ends in a consonant, **u** often stands for original **w**, the latter having undergone vocalization in that position. When an inflectional syllable is added

beginning with a vowel, the **w** reappears. Thus, nom. **gearu** (*ready*), gen. **gearwes**, etc. (**57**. 5).

There is frequent loss of initial **w** in the negative forms of the verbs **wesan**, *be*, **witan**, *know*, **willan**, *will:* **næs**, *was not*, **nāt**, *knows not*, **nolde**, *would not*, etc. It also disappears in **nā(u)ht** for **nāwiht**, *naught*, **cuc** for **cwic**, *alive*, and a few other words.

**28. Loss or replacement of g.** — Before **d** and **n** (and before **ð** in the word **tīðian**, *grant*), **g** is often lost, the preceding vowel being lengthened by way of compensation: **mægden** and **mæden**, *maiden;* **ðegn** and **ðēn**, *thane*. Properly speaking, the palatal **g**, already in such cases pronounced almost like a vowel, becomes indistinguishable from **i** or **y** in pronunciation, and by this time its effect is simply to lengthen the vowel which precedes. In a similar manner, **ig** may be contracted into **ī**, sometimes shortened to **i**: **hungrig** and **hungri**, *hungry;* **ligeð** and **līð**, *lies* (from **licgan**); **stīgrāp** and **stīrāp**, *stirrup*. The above losses are *regular* only after palatal vowels (**10**).

After a guttural vowel (**10**), after **r**, or (especially in LWS.) before **-st** and **-ð**, endings respectively of the 2d and 3d sing. pres. ind., **g** frequently becomes **h**, occasionally **gh**: **genōg** and **genōh**, *enough;* **burg** and **burh**, *city;* **stīgð** and **stīhð**, *climbs*.

**29. Loss of h.** — Certain words ending in **h** lose the **h** before an inflectional ending beginning with a vowel,

at the same time lengthening the vowel of the stem, if short: **feorh**, *life*, gen. **fēores**; **feoh**, *property*, gen. **fēos**. There are besides a number of contract verbs (**101**) in which an original **h** has been lost before vowels (**100**); **gefēon**, *rejoice*, orig. **gefehan**.

The initial **h** of certain indefinite pronouns, and of the various forms of **habban**, *have*, is frequently lost after **ne**, *not:* **nāwðer**, **nāðer** (**27**) for **ne āhwæðer**, *neither;* **næfde**, *had not.*

**30. Loss of m and n.** — Before the spirants **f**, **s**, and **ð** there has been in some words the loss of an original **m** or **n**, with a lengthening of the preceding vowel: **ōsle**, *ousel*, orig. **amsala**; **ūs**, *us*, orig. **uns**. When the resulting vowel is **ō**, or its umlaut **ē** (**17**), the original vowel was **a** (**ǫ** before nasal, **25**): **gōs**, *goose*, orig. **gans**; **ēst**, *favor*, orig. **ansti**.

**31. Metathesis of r.** — In some words in which a vowel was originally preceded by **r**, the **r** has changed places with the vowel. Thus **burna**, *fountain, brook* (cf. Scottish *burn*), was originally **brun(n)a** (cf. Germ. *Brunnen*); **hors**, *horse*, orig. **hros** (cf. Germ. *Ross*).

**32. Metathesis of sc.** — After a vowel, **sc** frequently becomes **cs**, often represented by **hs** or **x** (**2**). Thus **āscian**, *ask* (cf. Germ. *(h)eischen*) becomes **ācsian**, **āhsian**, **āxian** (dial. Mod. Eng. *axe*).

**33. Change of d to t.**— When **d** either precedes or follows a surd (**8**) in the same word, it regularly becomes **t**. Thus from **bindan**, *bind*, the ind. pres. 2d sing. is formed by adding **-st** (though sometimes **-est**), thus, **bindst**; but, in accordance with this principle, **bindst** becomes **bintst**. So from **īecan**, *increase*, the ind. pret. 3d sing. is formed by adding **-de**, thus, **īecde**; but **īecde** becomes **īecte**.

**34. Changes of ð in conjunction with other dentals.** — Whenever **d** or **t** comes to stand immediately before **ð**, the combination becomes **tt**, which is sometimes simplified to **t** (**35**). Thus **bindeð**, ind. pres. 3d sing. of **bindan**, becomes **bindð** by elision of the **e** in an unstressed syllable (**23**); but **bindð** invariably appears as **bint**; **bīdð** and **bītð**, respectively from **bīdan**, *await*, and **bītan**, *bite*, both become **bītt** or **bīt**.

By a somewhat similar change, **sð** often becomes **st**. For **ðs** is usually found **ss**, which may be simplified to **s** (**35**).

*Suspect that* **t** *near the end of a verb may stand for* **d** *or* **ð**, *or be the result of contraction.*

**35. Gemination simplified.** — Double consonants are of frequent occurrence, especially before an inflectional syllable beginning with a vowel. Thus **swimman**, *swim*, **będdе**, *to a bed*, etc. But gemination is frequently simplified, or, in other words, the sec-

ond consonant is dropped, (*a*) at the end of a word, (*b*) before another consonant, (*c*) in certain other situations. Thus: —

(*a*) **mannes**, gen. sing., but **mann** or **man**, *man*, nom. sing.; (*b*) **ealles**, gen. sing. of **eal(l)**, *all*, but **ealne**, acc. sing. masc.; (*c*) **ōðer**, *other*, with gen. plur. ending **ōðerra**, but usually **ōðera**, **ōðra**.

**36. Gemination pointing to original j.** — In many words which contain a double consonant, especially those whose stem vowel is **ę**, the stem was originally followed by **j** (pron. *y*), and the consonant was not geminated, but single: **sęllan**, *give*, orig. **saljan**. This was always the case with words containing **cg**, which, it will be remembered, is the representative of **gg** (**11**): **sęcgan**, *say*, orig. **sagjan**; **hrycg**, *back*, orig. **hrugjo-**.

**37. Grammatical change.** — As between certain related words, there is an interchange of **ð** and **d**, **s** and **r**: inf. **cēosan**, *choose*, past part. **coren**; inf. **cweðan**, *say*, past part. **cweden** (cf. the noun **cwide**, *discourse*). This is technically known as grammatical change. Under similar circumstances, there is a like change between **h** and **g**, and **h** and **w**, but owing to a partial disappearance of the **h** (cf. **100**) this is less noticeable: **sliehð**, *strikes* (inf. **slēan**), **slōg**, *struck*; **siehð**, *sees* (inf. **sēon**), **sāwon** (*they*) *saw*.

# INFLECTION.

## Declension of Nouns.

**38. Gender of nouns.** — Nouns are either masculine, feminine, or neuter. Names of males are masculine, and those of females feminine, except **mægden, mæden** (**28**), *girl*, **wīf**, *wife*, and **bearn, cild**, *child*, which are neuter. The gender of most nouns must be learned from the dictionary; but all nouns ending in **-a** are masculine, and belong to the weak declension (**53**); all ending in **-dōm, -els, -ere, -hād**, and **-scipe**, and most in **-end**, with *names of persons* in **-ing** and **-ling**, are strong masculines; those ending in **-estre, -nes, -ræden, -ð(u)** (**-ðo**), **-ung**, most in **-u**, and a few *abstracts* in **-ing**, are strong feminines.

Compound nouns take the gender of their last component; thus **wīfman**, *woman*, is masculine, because **man(n)** is masculine.

**39. Strong and weak nouns.** — According to their declension, all nouns are either strong or weak. The nominative of weak nouns always ends in a vowel, either **-a** or **-e**, but not all nouns ending in **-e** are weak.

**40. Cases of nouns and adjectives.** — Old English has six cases, though in general only four are distinguished. These four are the nominative, genitive, dative, and accusative; the two additional are the vocative, the case of direct address, and the instrumental, which is virtually indistinguishable from the dative, except in adjectives.

The nominative is used as in English. The genitive is the case denoting possessor, source, or cause; its sign is *of*. The dative denotes the indirect object of an action; its sign is *to* or *for*. The accusative denotes the direct object; it has no sign. The instrumental denotes the means by which an action is performed; its sign is *by*.

The instrumental of nouns is included in the declensions under the dative.

**41. Uniform case endings.** — All nouns, whatever their declension, end in **-um** in the dative plural. The genitive plural always ends in **-a**, either appended directly to the stem, or with **-en-** (rarely **-r-**) interposed (**43.** 6); accordingly the genitive plural, to speak more strictly, always ends in **-a** or **-ena** (very rarely **-ra**).

Instead of **-um** is occasionally found **-un**, **-on**, or **-an**, and in later Old English these endings grow common.

**42. Strong masculine endings.** — All strong masculines, except umlaut masculines (**46**) and those in **-u** (**45**), take the following as regular endings (for exceptions

see **43.** 5–9; **44.** 4), where — represents the form of the nominative singular: —

| | Singular. | Plural. |
|---|---|---|
| N.V.A. | — | **-as** |
| G. | **-es** | **-a** |
| D. | **-e** | **-um** |

**43. Masculines ending in a consonant.** — The greater number of strong masculines are declined like **fisc**, *fish*: —

| | Singular. | Plural. |
|---|---|---|
| N.V.A. | **fisc** | **fiscas** |
| G. | **fisces** | **fisca** |
| D. | **fisce** | **fiscum** |

1. A very few words ending in **-cg** may insert **-e-** before the endings of the plural: **sęcgeas**, etc. (**18**).

2. If the radical vowel of the nominative is **æ** before a single consonant, this is changed in the plural to **a**: **dæg**, *day*, but plur. **dagas**, **daga**, **dagum**.

3. Nouns ending in **h** lose this consonant before a case ending, and in so doing lengthen the radical vowel or diphthong. Thus **fearh**, *swine*, but **fēares**, etc. (**29**). If the **h** is preceded by a vowel, the vowel of the ending is lost: **scōh**, *shoe*, but nom. plur. **scōs**, not **scōas**.

4. Disyllabic nouns generally lose the vowel of the second syllable before all endings, when the stem is long by nature or position (**4**, **23**), if the second syllable is not long by position. Otherwise the vowel of the

second syllable is regularly preserved. Examples are as follows: —

*a.* Stem long by nature, and second syllable short: **ēðel**, *country*, gen. **ēðles**, not **ēðeles**.

*b.* Stem long by position, and second syllable long by position: **hęngest**, *stallion*, dat. **hęngeste**, not **hęngste**.

*c.* Stem long by position (vowel before two consonants), and second syllable short: **dryhten**, *lord*, gen. **dryhtnes**, not **dryhtenes**.

*d.* Stem short by nature, and second syllable short: **heofon**, *heaven*, dat. **heofone**, not **heofne**.

Occasional exceptions are found: **dryhtenes**, **heofne**. The retention or loss of the vowel is in part dependent upon the date of the particular text.

5. In a few words there is an occasional gen. and dat. sing. and nom. plur. in **-a**: **feld**, *field*, **ford**, *ford*, **winter**, *winter*, **sumer**, *summer*, and a few others of rare occurrence.

6. Nouns in **-end**, originally present participles (**143**), take the gen. plur. in **-ra**, instead of **-a**, and the plur. nom. voc. acc. in **-e**, or without ending, as well as in **-as**, the latter being rare. Thus nom. plur. **hǣlend**, **hǣlende**, as well as **hǣlendas**; gen. **hǣlendra**.

7. A single word, **bearu**, *grove*, has the nom. sing. in **-u**, and takes **w** instead of the **-u** before all inflectional endings: nom. sing. **bearu**, gen. **bearwes**, etc. (**27**).

8. The noun **fæder**, *father*, frequently omits the terminations of the sing. gen. and dat.

9. **Hæleð**, *hero*, and **mōnað**, *month*, sometimes omit the termination of the nom. acc. plur.

**44. Masculines in -e.** — The declension of strong masculines in **-e** is almost identical with that of **fisc**. The sing. nom. acc. voc. takes **-e**; other exceptions will be noted below. **Ende**, *end*, is thus declined: —

| | Singular. | Plural. |
|---|---|---|
| N.V.A. | **ende** | **endas** |
| G. | **endes** | **enda** |
| D. | **ende** | **endum** |

1. Here belong important classes of nouns ending in **-ere (143)** and **-scipe**, besides some others. They are much less numerous, however, than those of the preceding declension.

2. The noun **here**, *army*, sometimes takes **-g-** or **-ig-** before the endings of the singular, and the same, or **-ige-**, before the endings of the plural: **her(i)ges**, etc. Two words sometimes have the gen. plur. in **-ig(e)a**, **-ia**: **wine**, *friend*, **Dene**, *Danes*, gen. plur. **winigea**, **Deniga**, **Denia (18)**.

3. Nouns ending in **-ce** may retain the **-e** before the endings of the plural: **lǣce**, *physician*, nom. plur. **lǣceas**, as well as **lǣcas (18)**.

4. A few masculine nouns in **-e** occasionally take the nom. acc. plur. in **-e**, instead of **-as**: **wine**, or

**winas**, *friend*. The following are found in the plural only: **lēode** (also **lēoda**), *people*, **ielde**, *men*, **ielfe**, *elves*, and the proper nouns **Ęngle**, *Angles*, **Seaxe**, *Saxons*, **Mierce**, *Mercians*.

**45. Masculines in -u.** — Here belong the words **sunu**, *son*, **wudu**, *wood*, **me(o)du**, *mead*, **magu**, *boy*, **bre(o)go**, *prince*, **heoru**, *sword*, **lagu**, *lake*, **si(o)du**, *custom*, **spitu**, *spit*. **Sunu** is thus declined: —

| | Singular. | Plural. |
|---|---|---|
| N.V.A. | **sunu** | **suna** |
| G. | **suna** | **suna** |
| D. | **suna** | **sunum** |

1. The ending of the nom. sing. **-u** (sometimes **-o**) is liable to intrude everywhere except in the dat. plur. and gen. sing. and plur.

2. Besides **sunu** and **wudu**, the nouns above given are scarcely found except in the nom. acc. sing.

3. In later Old English these words begin to assume the endings of **fisc** (**43**): gen. **sunes**, nom. plur. **sunas**, etc.

**46. Umlaut masculines.** — Here belong **fōt**, *foot*, **tōð**, *tooth*; **man(n)**, *man*; **fēond**, *enemy*, **frēond**, *friend*, (**142**); **brōðor**, *brother*. These take umlaut of the radical vowel (**17**) in the dat. sing. and nom. voc. acc. plur., and have no ending in those cases. **Fōt** is thus declined: —

| | Singular. | Plural. |
|---|---|---|
| N.V.A. | **fōt** | **fēt** |
| G. | **fōtes** | **fōta** |
| D. | **fēt (fōte)** | **fōtum** |

1. **Brōðor** is irregular, forming its nom. voc. acc. plur. as **brōðor** or **brōðru**, instead of **brēðer**.

2. Occasionally there is found a plur. **fōtas, tōðas,** instead of **fēt, tēð**.

3. **Fēond** and **frēond** usually have dat. sing. **fēonde, frēonde,** sometimes plur. **fēond, frēond,** or even **fēondas, frēondas.**

**47. Strong neuters.** — In general, the chief distinction between the declension of masculines and that of neuters is in the plur. nom. acc. Where the masculine has **-as**, the neuter, if its radical syllable be short, has **-u**, or sometimes **-o**; *if long, has no ending whatever* (cf. **23**, and especially its final sentence). When the *radical syllable is short*, the paradigm accordingly is (**hof**, *dwelling*): —

| | Singular. | Plural. |
|---|---|---|
| N.A. | **hof** | **hofu** |
| G. | **hofes** | **hofa** |
| D. | **hofe** | **hofum** |

With a *long radical syllable* (**4**), the paradigm is (**word**, *word*): —

| | Singular. | Plural. |
|---|---|---|
| N.A. | **word** | **word** |
| G. | **wordes** | **worda** |
| D. | **worde** | **wordum** |

1. Disyllables are sometimes without ending in the nom. acc. plur., and sometimes take **-u**: **wǣp(e)n** and **wǣpnu**, *weapons;* but usually **mægenu**, *forces*, **nīetenu**, *cattle*, **earfoðu**, *labors*, **wæt(e)ru**, *waters*, **hēafdu**, *heads*, **wundor**, *wonders*.

2. Occasionally the nom. acc. plur. takes **-o** or **-a** instead of **-u**.

3. **Trēo**, *tree*, and **cnēo**, *knee*, take **-w** before all case endings, and sometimes in the nom. sing.: **trēowes**, etc. (**27**). Nom. acc. plur. **trēowu**, **cnēowu**.

4. For a change in the radical vowel of the plural, see **43**. 2: **fæt**, *vessel*, but **fatu**, **fata**, **fatum**.

5. For the loss of final **h**, see **43**. 3: **feoh**, *money*, *fee*, gen. **fēos**.

6. For the loss (syncopation) of the vowel of the second syllable, see **43**. 4: **hēafod**, *head*, nom. plur. **hēafdu**, not (usually) **hēafodu**; **tungol**, *star*, nom. plur. **tunglu**, not **tungolu**; **wæter**, *water*, gen. **wæteres**, not (regularly) **wætres**. Syncopation is, however, less constant in the nom. acc. plur. of neuters, in cases corresponding to **43**. 4. *a*.

7. Neuters ending in **-en** and **-et** sometimes double the final consonant before a case ending: **ǣfen**, *even* (*-ing*), gen. **ǣfenes** or **ǣfennes**, etc. These nouns retain the **-e** of the second syllable.

**48. Neuters in -e.** — These are declined like **word**, except that the sing. nom. voc. acc. has **-e**, and the

plur. nom. voc. acc. has **-u**. Paradigm (**wīte**, *punishment*): —

| | Singular. | Plural. |
|---|---|---|
| N.V.A. | **wīte** | **wītu** |
| G. | **wītes** | **wīta** |
| D. | **wīte** | **wītum** |

1. If the **-e** of the nom. sing. is preceded by **c** or **g**, the endings of the plural *may* be preceded by **i** (or **e**): **rīcu** or **rīciu**, **rīca** or **rīcia**, etc. (**18**).

**49. Neuters in -u.** — These are declined like **bearu** (**43.** 7), except that they take **-u** in the plur. nom. acc., instead of **-as**. There are only half a dozen in all, and these are not of common occurrence: **bealu**, *evil*, gen. **bealwes**, etc.

**50. Irregular neuters.** — The three words **lamb**, *lamb*, **cealf**, *calf*, **ǣg**, *egg*, and sometimes **cild**, *child*, are declined regularly in the singular, but take **r** in the plural before the endings **-u**, **-a**, **-um**: **lamb**, gen. **lambes**, but nom. plur. **lambru**.

In LWS. the regular forms, without **r**, occur.

**51. Strong feminines.** — Feminine disyllables ending in **-u**, and having a short radical syllable, belong here; monosyllables with a long radical syllable, and most disyllables, discard the **-u** of the nom. sing. Abstracts, though long, follow *a*.

*a*) Paradigm of the short stems, **giefu**, *gift*: —

| | Singular. | Plural. |
|---|---|---|
| N.V. | **giefu, -o** | **giefa, -e** |
| G. | **giefe** | **giefa (-ena)** |
| D. | **giefe** | **giefum** |
| A. | **giefe** | **giefa, -e** |

Occasionally the ending **-u** or **-o** is found in the oblique cases of the singular and in the nom. acc. plural. **Duru**, *door*, has **-a** in the gen. dat. sing., and in the whole plural except the dative. Two or three nouns in **-u** take **-w** before the ending in the oblique cases: **beadu**, *battle*, gen. **beadwe**, etc.

*b*) Paradigm of the long stems and polysyllables, **glōf**, *glove*: —

| | Singular. | Plural. |
|---|---|---|
| N.V. | **glōf** | **glōfa, -e** |
| G. | **glōfe** | **glōfa** |
| D. | **glōfe** | **glōfum** |
| A. | **glōfe** | **glōfa, -e** |

1. A few nouns discard the **-e** of the acc. sing.: **dǣd**, *deed*, **tīd**, *time*, **woruld** (**20**, **26**), *world*.

2. Only rarely does the gen. plur. of long stems take **-(e)na**.

3. Disyllables in **-ung** often have **-a** instead of **e** in the dat. sing., and sometimes in the gen. acc. sing.: **leornung**, *learning*, dat. **leornunga**. The words **hand**, *hand*, **flōr**, *floor*, and **woruld**, *world*, occasionally make the same change.

4. Disyllables syncopate the vowel of the second

syllable according to **43.** 4: **sāwol**, *soul*, gen. **sāwle**, etc.

5. Polysyllables in **-nes**, **-en**, **-el**, and **-et** double the final consonant when a syllable is added, and retain the preceding **-e**: gen. dat. acc. sing. **ēaðmōdnesse**, *humility*, **byrðenne**, *burden*, etc.

**52. Umlaut feminines.** — These modify the root vowel by umlaut in the dat. sing. and nom. voc. acc. plur., and often in the gen. sing., that is, change **ā** to **ǣ**, **o** to **ę**, **ō** to **ē**, **u** to **y**, and **ū** to **ȳ**. The gen. sing., and occasionally the dat. sing., is sometimes formed regularly, without umlaut, and with the ending **-e**. Paradigm, (**gōs**, *goose*): —

| | Singular. | Plural. |
|---|---|---|
| N.V.A. | **gōs** | **gēs** |
| G. | **gēs**, **gōse** | **gōsa** |
| D. | **gēs** | **gōsum** |

The principal nouns which belong here are: **āc**, *oak*, **gāt**, *goat;* **bōc**, *book*, **brōc**, *trousers*, **gōs**, *goose*, **wlōh**, *fringe;* **burg**, *castle*, *city*, **furh**, *furrow*, **sulh**, *plough*, **turf**, *turf;* **cū**, *cow*, **grūt**, *grout*, *grits*, **lūs**, *louse*, **mūs**, *mouse*, **ðrūh**, *trough;* **ēa**, *river;* **niht**, *night*.

1. The dat. (gen.) sing. of **burg** is usually **byrig**, not **byrg**.

2. **Mōdor**, *mother*, and **dohtor**, *daughter*, are declined like **brōðor** (**46.** 1), except that **mōdor** has only the nom. acc. plur. **mōdru**, **-a**, and both may have an umlaut gen. sing. in LWS. (but usually **mōdor**, **dohtor**).

3. **Sweostor**, *sister*, is without umlaut in any case; it remains **sweostor** in every case except the gen. plur. **sweostra** and dat. plur. **sweostrum.**

**53. Weak nouns.** — Masculines end in **-a**, feminines and neuters in **-e**; but the neuters may be conveniently disregarded, only **ēage**, *eye*, and **ēare**, *ear*, belonging to this declension. Paradigms (**mōna**, *moon*, **tunge**, *tongue*): —

| | Masculine. | Feminine. |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. N.V. | **mōna** | **tunge** |
| G. D. A. | **mōnan** | **tungan** |
| Plur. N.V.A. | **mōnan** | **tungan** |
| G. | **mōnena** | **tungena** |
| D. | **mōnum** | **tungum** |

1. The number of feminines thus declined is comparatively small. The commonest are perhaps **eorðe**, *earth*, **heorte**, *heart*, **lufe**, *love*, **cirice**, *church*, **tunge**, *tongue*, **hearpe**, *harp*, **sunne**, *sun*, **nædre**, *viper*, and **ælmesse**, *alms*. The masculines are, on the contrary, very numerous.

2. The declension of the neuters **ēage** and **ēare** differs from that of the feminines only in the acc. sing., which is like the nom. Their gen. plur. is often **ēagna**, **ēarna.**

3. The weak feminine **heofone**, *heaven*, should be distinguished from the strong masculine **heofon**. Besides the weak **lufe**, there is also a strong **lufu**, *love* (**51.** *a*).

**54. Proper names.** — Native names are declined like common nouns, except that feminines ending in **-burg** take the dative in **-e** and are without umlaut. Foreign names are sometimes naturalized, and sometimes take their original case endings, but not always with entire consistency. The words **Cęnt**, **Cęrt**, **Ī**, **Tęnet**, and **Wiht** are indeclinable, except that **Wiht** has the gen. **Wihte.**

## Declension of Adjectives.

**55. Weak and strong adjectives.** — Adjectives are declined weak when in the comparative, and usually when in the superlative; when ordinals (except **ōðer**, *second*, **78**, **80**); when preceded by a demonstrative; when used as masculine or feminine nouns preceded by the definite article; in direct address; sometimes when preceded by a possessive pronoun; and exceptionally in poetry in place of the strong adjective. Otherwise adjectives are always used in the strong form.

**56. Strong declension of adjectives.** — Here it is necessary to distinguish between long monosyllables on the one hand, and short monosyllables (comparatively few) and disyllables on the other.

**57. Disyllables and short monosyllables.** — Paradigm, **glæd**, *glad*:—

| | Masculine. | Neuter. | Feminine. |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. N.V. | **glæd** | **glæd** | **gladu** |
| G. | **glades** | | *glœdre* |

| | Masculine. | Neuter. | Feminine. |
|---|---|---|---|
| D. | *gladum* | | *glædre* |
| A. | *glædne* | **glæd** | **glade** |
| I. | **glade** | | |
| Plur. N.V.A. | *glade* | **gladu, -e** | **glada, -e** |
| G. | | *glædra* | |
| D. | | **gladum** | |

1. Italicized words indicate differences from the noun declension; cf. these with the pronominal declensions (**81, 84, 85**).

2. When the radical vowel is æ, it is changed as in the paradigm. Otherwise it remains unchanged.

3. Disyllables take the same endings as in the paradigm, but frequently syncopate the vowel of the second syllable before an ending beginning with a vowel, as in **ēadig**, *blessed*, gen. **ēadges** (**23**; cf. **43**. 4), and sometimes conform the nom. sing. fem. to the masc. and neut., and the neut. plur. nom. voc. acc. to the sing.: **hālig**, *holy*, not **hāl(i)gu**.

4. For the ending **-u** sometimes occurs **-o**, and for **-um** the LWS. **-on, -an** (cf. **41**).

5. Adjectives ending in **-u** (**-o**) change the **u** to **w** before vowels (**27**): **gearu**, *ready*, gen. **gearwes**, etc.

**58. Long monosyllables.** — The only difference between the declension of the long and that of the short monosyllables is that the ending **-u** of the latter is dropped, and that the radical vowel always remains unchanged. Paradigm, **gōd**, *good*: —

| | Masculine. | Neuter. | Feminine. |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. N. | **gōd** | **gōd** | **gōd** |
| Plur. N. | **gōde** | **gōd** | **gōde, -a** |

**1.** Adjectives ending in **h** drop the **h** in disyllabic forms, and lengthen the radical vowel or diphthong (**29**): **ðweorh**, *transverse*, gen. **ðwēores**; but **hēah**, *high*, often assimilates the final **h** to a following consonant: **hēanne, hēarra**, etc. In LWS. the **h** is often changed to **g** before a vowel: **hēagum**, etc.

2. Words ending in a double consonant usually retain this only before a vowel (**35**).

**59. Adjectives in -e.** — These are quite numerous. They are declined like the short monosyllables, except that *they always retain their* **-e** *when no other ending is provided, but lose it before an ending.* Paradigm, **grēne**, *green*: —

| | Masculine. | Neuter. | Feminine. |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. N.V. | **grēne** | **grēne** | **grēnu** |
| G. | **grēnes** | | **grēnre** |
| Plur. N.V.A. | **grēne** | **grēnu, -e** | **grēna, -e** |

From an acc. masc. sing., like **grēnne, blīðne**, for example, it is therefore *not* safe to infer a dictionary form **grēn, blīð**.

*In consulting the lexicon, care should be taken to distinguish adjectives in* **-e** *from such as end in a consonant.*

**60. Weak declension of adjectives.** — This is the same as that of nouns, except that the gen. plur. is regularly

formed in **-ra** (only exceptionally **-a** or the regular weak ending **-ena**). Paradigm, **gōda**, *the good*: —

| | Masculine. | Neuter. | Feminine. |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. N.V. | **gōda** | **gōde** | **gōde** |
| G. | | **gōdan** | |
| D. | | **gōdan** | |
| A. | **gōdan** | **gōde** | **gōdan** |
| Plur. N.V.A. | | **gōdan** | |
| G. | | **gōdra** | |
| D. | | **gōdum** | |

1. In LWS. **-um** frequently becomes **-an.**

2. When, in consequence of contraction, too many **r**'s or **n**'s are brought together, one of them is rejected. Thus **gearu**, *ready*, forms a comparative **gearura.** This comparative, in turn, would form a gen. plur. **gearu-rara.** By contraction this would reduce to **gear(u)-r(a)ra**; but the three **r**'s are simplified to two, and the resulting gen. plur. stands as **gearra.**

**61. The present participle.** — The present participle in **-ende** is not to be confounded with the noun in **-end** (for which see **43.** 6). It is declined like **grēne** (**59**). When used in the predicate as nom. or acc. it is generally uninflected. The present participle, like the adjective, is also declined weak.

**62. The past participle.** — The past participle has the double declension of the adjective, both strong and weak. When used in the predicate it is generally indeclinable, or ends like the strong masculine.

## Comparison of Adjectives.

**63. Regular comparison.** — The comparative is formed by adding **-ra** to the stem of the positive, and the superlative by adding **-osta (-esta)**; with the latter cf. Greek **-ιστος**. The final **-a** represents the masculine termination of the weak adjective (**60**), and undergoes all the replacements of the weak declension. More rarely the superlative is found in **-ost (-est)**, which is then regarded as strong. A final **-e** of the positive is dropped in comparison (*e.g.* **ēaðe**, *easy*, comp. **īeðra**, not **īeðera**) and a radical **æ** becomes **a** in the superlative (*e.g.* **smæl**, *small*, superl. **smalost**, not **smælost**; cf. **43. 2**).

**64. Comparison without umlaut.** — This is the usual mode: —

| Positive. | Comparative. | Superlative. |
|---|---|---|
| **heard**, *hard* | **heardra** | **heardost, -esta** |
| **lēof**, *dear* | **lēofra** | **lēofost, -esta** |
| **rīce**, *powerful* | **rīcra** | **rīcost, -esta** |
| **smæl**, *small* | **smælra** | **smalost, -esta** |

**65. Comparison with umlaut.**—This is followed by a few adjectives. The superlative generally ends in **-esta**: —

| Positive. | Comparative. | Superlative. |
|---|---|---|
| **eald**, *old* | **ieldra** | **ieldesta** |
| **lang**, *long* | **lęngra** | **lęngesta** |
| **geong**, *young* | **giengra** | **giengesta** |
| **sceort**, *short* | **sciertra** | **sciertesta** |
| **hēah**, *high* | **hīehra (hīerra)** | **hīeh(e)sta** |
| **grēat**, *great* | **grīetra** | **grīetesta** |
| **ēaðe**, *easy* | **īeðra** | **īeðesta** |

1. For some of these, unumlauted forms are also found: **hēahra, hēahsta**, etc.

2. Syncope of **e** in the superlative occurs in LWS.: **lęngsta**, etc.; in **hīehsta** this is also EWS.

3. For **-ost** may occur **-ust**.

**66. Different stems in comparison.** — In the following the comparative and superlative are not formed from the same stem as the positive: —

| Positive. | Comparative. | Superlative. |
|---|---|---|
| **gōd**, *good* | **bęt(e)ra**<br>**sēlla, sēlra** | **bętst(a)**<br>**sēlest(a)** |
| **yfel**, *bad* | **wiersa** | **wier(re)st(a)** |
| **micel**, *great* | **māra** | **mǣst(a)** |
| **lȳtel**, *small* | **lǣssa** | **lǣst(a)** |

**67. Comparison defective.** — In four cases the positive is wanting as an adjective, but may be supplied as an adverb or preposition: —

| Positive. | Comparative. | Superlative. |
|---|---|---|
| (**feor**, *far*) | **fierra** | **fierrest(a)** |
| (**nēah**, *near*) | **nēarra** | **nīehst(a)** |
| (**ǣr**, *earlier*) | **ǣrra** | **ǣrest(a)** |
| (**fore**, *before*) | **furðra** | **fyrst(a)** |

**68. Superlatives in -ma.** — Besides the superlative in **-est**, there is one in **-ma** (cf. Lat. pri-*mus*). Two examples are found: **forma**, *the first;* **hindema**, *the hindmost.*

**69. Superlatives in -ma + -esta = -mest(a).** — These double superlatives, as they may be called, are chiefly

formed from adverbs and prepositions. The comparative is peculiar in being *generally* formed in **-erra**, instead of **-ra** : —

| Positive. | Comparative. | Superlative. |
|---|---|---|
| (**sīð**, *late*) | **sīðra** | **sīðemest** |
| (**læt**, *late*) | **lætra** | **lætemest** |
| (**inne**, *within*) | **innerra** | **innemest** |
| (**ūte**, *without*) | **ūterra, ȳterra** | **ūtemest, ȳtemest** |
| (**ufan**, *above*) | **uferra, yferra** | **ufemest, yfemest** |
| (**niðan**, *below*) | **niðerra** | **niðemest** |
| (**fore**, *before*) | **furðra** | **fyrmest** |
| (**æfter**, *after*) | **æfterra** | **æftemest** |
| (**mid**, *mid*) | | **midmest** |
| (**norð**, *northward*) | **norðerra, nyrðerra** | **norðmest** |
| (**sūð**, *southward*) | **sūðerra, sȳðerra** | **sūðmest** |
| (**ēast**, *eastward*) | **ēasterra** | **ēastmest** |
| (**west**, *westward*) | **westerra** | **westmest** |

## Formation and Comparison of Adverbs.

**70. Adverbs formed from adjectives.** — Adverbs are formed from adjectives by the addition of **-e**, **-lice**, and **-unga** or **-inga**. Examples are: **wīd**, *wide*, **wīde**, *widely;* **swīð**, *strong*, **swīðe**, *very;* **sōð**, *true*, **sōðlice**, *truly;* **eall**, *all*, **eallunga**, **eallinga**, *entirely*. Occasionally **-unga**, **-inga** is employed to form adverbs from other parts of speech.

**71. Adjectives in the genitive as adverbs.** — The ending **-es** of the gen. sing. neut. is employed to form a few adverbs from adjectives: **ealles**, *altogether:* **ðwēores** (58. 1), *perversely*, etc.

**72. Adjectives in the dative plural as adverbs.** — Examples are: **miclum**, *very;* **lȳtlum**, *little.*

**73. Adjectives in the accusative as adverbs.** — Examples are: **full**, *fully;* **genōg**, *enough.*

**74. Adverbs from nouns.** — From the genitive: **dæges**, *by day;* **nīedes**, *needs;* etc. From the instrumental: **sāre**, *sore*, etc. From the dative plural: **dropmælum**, *drop by drop*, etc. (cf. *piecemeal*).

**75. Adverbs of place.** — These are of three classes, according as they answer the question, *Where? Whither?* or *Whence?* Examples are: —

| Where? | Whither? | Whence? |
|---|---|---|
| **ðær** | **ðider** | **ðǫnan** |
| **hwær** | **hwider** | **hwǫnan** |
| **hēr** | **hider** | **heonan** |

**76. Comparison of adverbs.** — Adverbs from adjectival stems are regularly compared by adding **-or** for the comparative and **-ost** for the superlative. Example: **strangor**, *more strongly*, **strangost**, *most strongly* (cf. **65**).

**77. Irregular comparison of adverbs.** — A few adverbs have no termination in the comparative. They are always monosyllabic, and have usually undergone umlaut. Such are **bęt**, *better;* **mā**, **mæ**, *more;* **nēar**, *nearer:* etc.

## Numerals.

**78. Numerals.** — The numerals are as follows: —

| | Cardinal. | Ordinal. |
|---|---|---|
| 1 . . . | **ān** | **forma, æresta** |
| 2 . . . | **twēgen, twā (tū)** | **ōðer, æfterra** |
| 3 . . . | **ðrīe, ðrēo** | **ðridda** |
| 4 . . . | **fēower** | **fēorða** |
| 5 . . . | **fīf** | **fīfta** |
| 6 . . . | **siex** | **siexta** |
| 7 . . . | **seofon** | **seofoða** |
| 8 . . . | **eahta** | **eahtoða** |
| 9 . . . | **nigon** | **nigoða** |
| 10 . . . | **tīen** | **tēoða** |
| 11 . . . | **endlefan** | **endlefta** |
| 12 . . . | **twęlf** | **twęlfta** |
| 13 . . . | **ðrēotīene** | **ðrēotēoða** |
| 14 . . . | **fēowertīene** | **fēowertēoða** |
| 15 . . . | **fīftīene** | **fīftēoða** |
| 16 . . . | **siextīene** | **siextēoða** |
| 17 . . . | **seofontīene** | **seofontēoða** |
| 18 . . . | **eahtatīene** | **eahtatēoða** |
| 19 . . . | **nigontīene** | **nigontēoða** |
| 20 . . . | **twēntig** | **twēntigoða** |
| 21 . . . | **ān and twēntig** | **ān and twēntigoða** |
| 30 . . . | **ðrītig** | **ðrītigoða** |
| 40 . . . | **fēowertig** | **fēowertigoða** |
| 50 . . . | **fīftig** | **fīftigoða** |
| 60 . . . | **siextig** | **siextigoða** |
| 70 . . . | **hundseofontig** | **hundseofontigoða** |
| 80 . . . | **(hund)eahtatig** | **hundeahtigoða** |
| 90 . . . | **hundnigontig** | **hundnigontigoða** |
| 100 . . . | **hund, hundred, hundtēontig** | |
| 110 . . . | **hundendlefantig** | **hundendleftigoða** |
| 120 . . . | **hundtwęlftig** | **hundtwęlftigoða** |
| 200 . . . | **twā hund, tū hund** | |
| 1000 . . . | **ðūsend** | |

1. Other ordinals for 1 are **fyresta, fyrmesta.**

2. Another form of ordinal for 21 is **ān ēac twēntigum.**

3. **Endlefan** and **twęlf** probably stand for **ānlif** and **twalif** (representing **twālif**). The **-lif** may mean *left.* After counting on the fingers up to 10, *one left* (**ānlif**) would be 11; *two left* (**twālif**), 12. The final **-an** (**-on**) of **endlefan** may have been added after the analogy of **seofon, nigon,** etc.

4. Fractions are usually formed by the help of **dǣl,** *part:* **ðridda dǣl,** *one-third;* **seofoða dǣl,** *one-seventh.* For *one and a half* occurs **ōðer healf** (cf. Germ. *anderthalb*); so **ðridde healf,** *two and a half;* in other words, the OE. ordinal indicates the cardinal from which $\frac{1}{2}$ must be subtracted.

5. Interesting forms, which actually occur, are: 19, **ān lǣs twēntig**; 39, **ān lǣs fēowertig**; 59, **ānes wana siextig** (cf. Greek *ἑνὸς δέοντες εἴκοσι*); 450, **fīftig and fēower hund, fīfte healf hund**; 482, **fēower hund and twā and hundeahtatig**; 100,000, **ān hund ðūsenda**; 1,500,000, **fīftīene hund ðūsend.** Note also **fīftīena sum,** *one of fifteen,* i.e. *with fourteen companions.*

**79. Declension of cardinals.** — **Ān** is declined like **gōd** (**58**), but with acc. sometimes **ænne,** inst. **ǣne.** When declined weak, **āna,** it signifies *alone.* **Twēgen** is declined thus: —

| | Masculine | Neuter. | Feminine. |
|---|---|---|---|
| N.A. | **twēgen** | **twā, tū** | **twā** |
| G. | | **twēg(r)a** | |
| D. | | **twæm, twām** | |

So also is declined **bēgen**, *both*. **Ðrīe, ðrēo** is declined: —

| | Masculine. | Neuter. | Feminine. |
|---|---|---|---|
| N.A. | **ðrīe** | **ðrēo** | **ðrēo** |
| G. | | **ðrēora** | |
| D. | | **ðrīm** | |

The cardinals between 3 and 20 are usually indeclinable. Those ending in **-tig** are sometimes treated as neuter nouns (in which case they are followed by a partitive genitive), sometimes as adjectives, and are sometimes uninflected. **Hund** and **ðūsend** are sometimes undeclined, but there is also a plural of **hund**, nom. **hunde**, dat. **hundum**; and of **ðūsend**, nom. **ðūsendu**, gen. **-da, -dra**, dat. **-dum**. These numerals are always followed by the genitive.

**80. Declension of ordinals.** — All are declined like weak adjectives (**60**), except **ōðer**, *second*, which is strong.

## Pronouns.

**81. Personal pronouns.** —

| | First Person. | Second Person. |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. N. | **ic** | **ðū** |
| G. | **mīn** | **ðīn** |
| D. | **mē** | **ðē** |
| A. | **mē** | **ðē** |

| | First Person. | Second Person. |
|---|---|---|
| Dual N. | **wit** | **git** |
| G. | **uncer** | **incer** |
| D. | **unc** | **inc** |
| A. | **unc** | **inc** |
| Plur. N. | **wē** | **gē** |
| G. | **ūre** | **ēower** |
| D. | **ūs** | **ēow** |
| A. | **ūs** | **ēow** |

| | Third Person. | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Masculine. | Neuter. | Feminine. |
| Sing. N. | **hē** | **hit** | **hēo** |
| G. | **his** | | **hi(e)re** |
| D. | **him** | | **hi(e)re** |
| A. | **hi(e)ne** | **hit** | **hī(e)** |
| Plur. N.A. | | **hī(e)** | |
| G. | | **hi(e)ra, heora** | |
| D. | | **him** | |

1. Less common forms are: in the accusative, **mec, ðec, ūsic, ēowic**; **hī(e)** for **hēo**, and conversely. **Hīo** is frequent, parallel with **hēo**, and **ūser** is found for **ūre**.

**82. Reflexive pronouns.** — In place of the reflexive, which does not exist as an independent form, is used the personal pronoun (**81**).

**83. Possessive pronouns.** — Two sorts of possessives must be distinguished, the declinable and the indeclinable. All of these are identical in form with the genitive of the personal pronoun, except **sīn**, which is formed from a lost reflexive. The declinable pos-

sessives are **mīn**, *my*, **ðīn**, *thy*, **ūre**, *our*, **ēower**, *your*, **sīn**, *his*, and the seldom used **uncer**, *of us two*, and **incer**, *of you two*. These follow the strong declension of adjectives (**57**, **58**). The *indeclinables* are **his**, *his*, **hi(e)re**, *her*, and **hi(e)ra**, *their*, the genitives of the *third* personal pronoun.

**84. The demonstrative 'that.'** — The pronoun **se**, **sēo**, **ðæt**, is at once the equivalent of Mod. Eng. *that* and of the article. Like *that*, it is employed in a relative as well as a demonstrative sense, and frequently does duty for the third personal pronoun. The demonstrative pronouns have an instrumental case, as does the neuter of the interrogative **hwæt**.

| | Masculine. | Neuter | Feminine. |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. N. | **se** (emphatic **sē**) | **ðæt** | **sēo** |
| G. | **ðæs** | | **ðǣre** |
| D. | **ðǣm (ðām)** | | **ðǣre** |
| A. | **ðone** | **ðæt** | **ðā** |
| I. | **ðȳ, ðon** | | |
| Plur. N.A. | | **ðā** | |
| G. | | **ðāra (ðǣra)** | |
| D. | | **ðǣm (ðām)** | |

1. The *conjunction* **ðæt**, and the *adverb* **ðā** (= *there*, *then*, etc.), must not be confounded with the *pronoun*.

2. Parallel with **se**, **sēo**, is a rare **ðe**, **ðēo**, which eventually supplants the former.

3. **ÞǢm, ðām** becomes **ðan, ðon** in such words as **siððan**, *since* (= **sīð ðām**).

4. The forms of this pronoun should be carefully distinguished from those of the next.

**85. The demonstrative 'this.'** — Mod. Eng. *this* is represented by the demonstrative **ðes, ðēos, ðis.**

| | Masculine. | | Neuter. | Feminine. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. N. | **ðes** | | **ðis** | **ðēos** |
| G. | | **ðis(s)es** | | **ðisse** |
| D. | | **ðis(s)um** | | **ðisse** |
| A. | **ðisne** | | **ðis** | **ðās** |
| I. | | **ðȳs** | | |
| Plur. N.A. | | | **ðās** | |
| G. | | | **ðissa** | |
| D. | | | **ðis(s)um** | |

1. Alternative or occasional forms are nsf. **ðīos**; gsf. dsf. **ðis(se)re**; dat. **ðiosum (20).**

**86. Minor demonstratives.** — Less important demonstratives are **ilca**, *same*, which is declined weak, and **self**, *self*, which takes both declensions.

**87. Relative pronouns.** — The office of the relative is assumed:

*a*) by the demonstrative **se, sēo, ðæt,** the reference being rendered explicit by the case form.

*b*) by the demonstrative **se, sēo, ðæt,** with the particle **ðe** appended.

*c*) by the indeclinable **ðe,** the reference being rendered explicit by an appended personal pronoun in the proper case form

*d*) by the particle **ðe** alone, representing all numbers, genders, and cases, the reference being much less explicit.

Illustrations of each of these modes would be: —

*a*) **Se stān, ðone ðā wyrhtan āwurpon.**
(*The stone, which the builders rejected.*)

*b*) **Se stān, ðone ðe ðā wyrhtan āwurpon.**

*c*) **Se stān, ðe hine ðā wyrhtan āwurpon.**

*d*) **Se stān, ðe ðā wyrhtan āwurpon.**

**88. Interrogative pronouns.** — The most important is **hwā**, *who?* of both genders, with its neuter **hwæt**, *what? what sort of a?*

| | Masc. Fem. | | Neuter. |
|---|---|---|---|
| N. | **hwā** | | **hwæt** |
| G. | | **hwæs** | |
| D. | | **hwǣm (hwām)** | |
| A. | **hwone** | | **hwæt** |
| I. | | | **hwȳ, hwon** |

**Hwilc**, *which?* **hwæðer**, *which of two?* and **hūlic**, *of what sort?* are declined like strong adjectives (**57, 58**).

**89. Indefinite pronouns.** — The indefinites are: —

*a*) **ān**, **sum**, *a*, *a certain*, **ǣnig**, *any*, **nān**, **nǣnig**, *no*, *none*, **ǣlc**, **gehwilc**, *each*, **ǣgðer**, **āhwæðer**, *either*, **nāhwæðer**, *neither*, **ōðer**, *other*, **swilc**, *such*, are declined like strong adjectives.

*b*) **āwiht**, **ōht**, *anything*, and **nāwiht**, **nōht**, *nothing*, with the compounds of **-hwega** (**hwæthwega**, *anything*, etc.) are indeclinable.

*c*) **hwā**, *any one* (and its compounds) is declined like the interrogative.

*d*) Indefinite relatives are formed from the interrogatives by **swā-swā**: **swā-hwā-swā**, *whoever*, etc.

*e*) **man** (originally **mann**), *one* (cf. French *on*, Ger. *man*), is used only in the nom. sing.

## Verbs.

**90. Classification of verbs.** — Verbs are either strong (**92**) or weak (**96**); besides which there are two small classes of important verbs, called respectively preterite presents (**124** ff.) and anomalous (**137** ff.). Weak verbs are in general derivative; and the stem can usually be detected as existing in some other independent word, often a noun or adjective, or the pret. sing. tense-stem of a strong verb.

**91. The present stem.** — The present stem of a verb is what remains after cutting off the infinitive ending **-an** or **-ian** (in contract verbs, **-n**). The radical vowel is the vowel of this stem; and the consonant or consonants which terminate the stem are, when such exist, called stem-finals. The stem as obtained above is one of the four tense-stems of strong verbs, or of the three tense-stems of weak verbs.

**92. Tense-stems of strong verbs.** — Strong verbs change the radical vowel to form the different tense-stems, like

the verbs called irregular in Modern English. As in Modern English the verb *drive* has the preterit *drove* and past participle *driven*, so in Old English the same verb has the pret. sing. **drāf** and past participle **drifen**. However, instead of the three tense-stems of Modern English, there are four in Old English for strong verbs, the preterit being subdivided into preterit singular and preterit plural.

The four stems of **drīfan**, *drive*, are: —

| Present. | Pret. Sing. | Pret. Plur. | Past Part. |
|---|---|---|---|
| **drīf-** | **drāf** | **drif-** | **drif-** |

**93. Forms derived from each stem.** — From the present stem are formed the whole of the present indicative and optative, the imperative singular and plural, the infinitive, the gerund, and the present participle — in all seventeen forms.

From the pret. sing. stem are formed only the 1st and 3d persons singular — two forms.

From the pret. plur. stem are formed the whole pret. plur. of indicative and optative, the whole pret. sing. of the optative, and the 2d person singular indicative — ten forms.

From the past participial stem is formed only the past participle — one form.

**94. Commonest forms of the verb.** — From the present stem the form in commonest use is the ind. pres. 3d sing.; from the pret. sing. stem, the ind. pret. 3d sing.;

from the pret. plur. stem, the ind. pret. 3d plur. Umlaut (**17**) and contraction (**34**) are apt to obscure the origin of the first of these, but not of the other two. Thus from **standan**, *stand* — whose principal parts are **standan**, **stōd**, **stōdon**, **standen** — the ind. pret. 3d sing. is **stōd**, the ind. pret. 3d plur. **stōdon**, but the ind. pres. 3d sing. **stęnt** (instead of **standeð**).

**95. Conjugation of a strong verb.**—Types are: **bindan**, *bind;* (for contracts) **fōn**, *seize:* —

| | Indicative. | Optative. |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. Sing. 1. | **binde**; **fō** | **binde**; **fō** |
| 2. | **bind(e)st**, **bintst**; **fēhst** | **binde**; **fō** |
| 3. | **bind(e)ð**, **bint**; **fēhð** | **binde**; **fō** |
| Plur. | **bindað**, **binde**; **fōð** | **binden**; **fōn** |
| Pret. Sing. 1. | **band**; **fēng** | **bunde**; **fēnge** |
| 2. | **bunde**; **fēnge** | **bunde**; **fēnge** |
| 3. | **band**; **fēng** | **bunde**; **fēnge** |
| Plur. | **bundon**; **fēngon** | **bunden**; **fēngen** |
| Imper. Sing. | **bind**; **fōh** | Infin. **bindan**; **fōn** |
| Plur. | **bindað**, **binde**; **fōð** | Gerund **tō bindanne**; **tō fōnne** |
| Pres. Part. | **bindende**; **fōnde** | Past Part. **(ge)bunden**; **(ge)fangen** |

The 2d sing. pres. ind. is sometimes formed in **-sð**. The **ð** is derived from the **ðū** of the personal pronoun, the old ending having been **s**. This **s**, followed by the personal pronoun, became **sð**, which *should* regularly become **st** (**34**), but does not always.

Note. — The ind. and imper. (sometimes opt.) plur. **binde** is used when the verb is immediately followed by a pronoun as subject: **binde wē**, not **bindað wē**, *we bind, let us bind;* **binde gē**, not **bindað gē**, *bind ye;* similarly, **dō wē**, **nolde gē**.

**96. Conjugation of the weak verb.** — Weak verbs form the preterit by the addition to the present stem of **-de** for the singular (ind. pret. 2d sing. **-dest**), and **-don** (**-den**) for the plural. A few verbs take **-e** before the **-de**, and many take **-o**. The vowel of the present stem is never changed before **-ede** and **-ode**, but in some verbs is changed before **-de**; a list of the latter is given in **114**.

The past participle of weak verbs is formed by the addition of **-ed** (**-od, -d**).

The **-d** of the endings **-de**, etc., and **-ed**, is changed to **-t** after certain stem-finals (**33**), and is lost in other situations; for details see **113** and **114**. Certain stem-finals also undergo change before the same endings; for details see **114**.

**97. Classes of strong verbs.** — Under strong verbs are included two principal divisions, according as their tense-stems were originally formed in one manner or another. Strong verbs are accordingly divided into Ablaut Verbs and Reduplicating Verbs. This distinction is mainly historical, and for practical purposes need not be insisted on at the outset.

**98. Ablaut verbs.** — Of these there are six principal classes, for which see **102–107.**

**99. Vowels of the present stem.** — To facilitate the assignment of verbs to their proper classes, the follow-

ing table may be useful, in conjunction with **101–110**. The Ablaut Classes are distinguished by the Roman numerals, and the Reduplicating Verbs by Red.

| Short Radical Vowel. | Class. |
|---|---|
| **a** | VI, Red. |
| **æ** | VI |
| **ę** | VI |
| **e** + **r** or **l** (also **brecan**) | IV |
| **e** + any single cons. but **r** or **l** | V |
| **e** + two cons. | III |
| **i** followed by nasal | III, IV |
| **i** followed by non-nasal | III, V |
| **ǫ**, see **a** | |
| **u** in **cuman** | IV |
| **u** in other verbs | III |
| **ea** | VI, Red. |
| **eo** | III |
| **ie** | III, V, VI |

| Long Radical Vowel. | Class. |
|---|---|
| **ā** | Red. |
| **ǣ** | Red. |
| **ē** | Red. |
| **ī** | I |
| **ō** | Red. |
| **ū** | II |
| **ēa** | VI, Red. |
| **ēo** in contract verbs | I, II, V |
| **ēo** in other verbs | II |

**100. Contract verbs.** — Contract verbs are strong verbs whose stem-final was originally **h**. This **h** was lost before vowels (**29**), and the preceding vowel was then

amalgamated with the following. The resultant diphthong (or vowel) is **ēo** in the case of ten verbs, **ēa** in that of four, and **ō** in that of two. The **ō**-verbs belong to the Reduplicating Class, the **ēa**-verbs to the Sixth Ablaut Class, and the **ēo**-verbs to the First, Second, and Fifth Ablaut Classes.

**101. Contract verbs according to classes.** — Distributed according to classes, the contract verbs are as follows:—

I. **lēon** (orig. **līhan**), *lend;* **sēon**, *sift;* **tēon**, *censure;* **ðēon**, *thrive;* **wrēon**, *cover.*

II. **flēon** (orig. **flēohan**), *flee;* **tēon**, *draw.*

V. **gefēon** (orig. **gefehan**), *rejoice;* **plēon**, *venture;* **sēon**, *see.*

VI. **flēan** (orig. **flahan**), *flay;* **lēan**, *blame;* **slēan**, *strike;* **ðwēan**, *wash.*

Red. **fōn** (orig. **fanhan** > **fōhan**), *seize;* **hōn**, *hang.*

Of these the most important are **tēon**, *censure*, **ðēon**, *thrive*, **wrēon**, *cover;* **flēon**, *flee*, **tēon**, *draw;* **gefēon**, *rejoice*, **sēon**, *see;* **slēan**, *strike*, **ðwēan**, *wash;* **fōn**, *seize*, and **hōn**, *hang.*

**Tēon**, *draw* (II), should be carefully distinguished from **tēon**, *censure* (I); and likewise **sēon**, *see* (V), from **sēon**, *sift* (I). The principal parts of **tēon**, *draw*, are:—

**tēon** **tēah** **tugon** **(ge)togen**

of **tēon**, *censure*, are:—

**tēon** **tāh** **tigon** **(ge)tigen**

But there is a tendency on the part of contract verbs like the latter of these (I) to assume throughout the forms of the former (II).

**Đēon**, *thrive* (**102**), has past part. **ðigen** and **ðungen**.

The imp. sing. always ends in **h**, and has a long vowel in verbs of the First, Second, and Reduplicating Classes, a short vowel in the Fifth and Sixth. Examples: (I) **tēon**, *censure*, imp. **tīh**; (II) **tēon**, *draw*, imp. **tēoh**; (V) **sēon**, *see*, imp. **seoh**; (VI) **slēan**, *strike*, imp. **sleah**; (Red.) **fōn**, *seize*, imp. **fōh**.

**102. Strong verbs of the First Ablaut Class. —**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Stem vowels (normally) | **ī, ā, i, i** | | | |
| Typical verb | **drīfan**, *drive* | | | |
| Four stems | **drīfan** | **drāf** | **drifon** | **drifen** |

Like **drīfan** are conjugated all strong verbs with **ī** in the present stem. Here belongs any strong verb with **ā** in the first preterit stem, **i** in the second preterit stem, or **i** in the past participial stem. Among the more common are: **bīdan**, *remain;* **bītan**, *bite;* **rīdan**, *ride;* **(ā)rīsan**, *arise;* **scīnan**, *shine;* **slītan**, *tear;* **stīgan**, *ascend;* **swīcan**, *abandon;* **(ge)wītan**, *go;* **wrītan**, *write*.

Umlaut does not affect the vowel of the present stem (**94**).

The 2d and 3d sing. pres. ind. are thus formed (**33, 34**): —

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **d**-stems | **bīdan** | **bītst, bīt(t)** |
| **t**-stems | **bītan** | **bītst, bīt(t)** |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| s-stems | **rīsan** | **rīst, rīst (rīsð)** |
| ð-stems | **snīðan** | **snīst, snīð (ð)** |
| Contracts (101) | **wrēon** | **wrīhst, wrīhð** |
| Others are normal | **drīfan** | **drīfst, drīfð** |

The second preterit and past participial stems of the verbs **snīðan**, *cut*, **līðan**, *go*, and **scrīðan**, *proceed*, take **d** instead of **ð** (37): **snidon, sniden**, etc. Other verbs in **ð** retain the **ð**.

**103. Strong verbs of the Second Ablaut Class.** —

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Stem vowels | **ēo** or **ū**, **ēa**, **u**, **o** | | | |
| Typical verbs | **bēodan**, *offer;* **brūcan**, *enjoy* | | | |
| Four stems | **bēodan** | **bēad** | **budon** | **boden** |
| | **brūcan** | **brēac** | **brucon** | **brocen** |

Like **bēodan** are conjugated all strong verbs having **ēo** in the present stem, except some contracts, and like **brūcan** all having **ū**. Here belongs any strong verb having **ēa** in the first preterit stem. Among the more common are: **cēosan**, *choose;* **drēogan**, *endure;* **hrēosan**, *fall;* **(for)lēosan**, *lose;* **tēon**, *draw;* **būgan**, *bow.*

Stems in **s**, **ð**, and contract vowel (37): —

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **cēosan** | **cēas** | **curon** | **coren** |
| **sēoðan** | **sēað** | **sudon** | **soden** |
| **tēon (101)** | **tēah** | **tugon** | **togen** |

Like **cēosan** are formed stems in **s**; like **sēoðan**, **ābrēoðan**, *frustrate;* like **tēon**, **flēon**, *flee.*

Umlaut changes the **ēo** of the present to **īe** (or **ī**),

and **ū** of the present to **ȳ**, in the 2d and 3d sing. pres. ind.: **forlīest, brȳcð**.

The 2d and 3d sing. pres. ind. are thus formed (**33, 34**): —

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **d**-stems | **bēodan** | **bīetst, bīet(t)** |
| **t**-stems | **gēotan** | **gīetst, gīet(t)** |
| **s**-stems | **forlēosan** | **forlīest, forlīest (-sð)** |
| **g**-stems (**28**) | **drēogan** | **drīegst (-hst), drīegð (-hð)** |
| Contracts (**101**) | **tēon** | **tīehst, tīehð** |
| Others are normal | **crēopan** | **crīepst, crīepð** |

**104. Strong verbs of the Third Ablaut Class. —**

Stem vowels various, but all short

Typical verbs **bindan**, *bind;* **helpan**, *help;* **gieldan**, *yield;* **weorpan**, *throw;* **berstan**, *burst*

| Four stems | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **bindan** | **band** | **bundon** | **bunden** |
| | **helpan** | **healp** | **hulpon** | **holpen** |
| | **gieldan** | **geald** | **guldon** | **golden** |
| | **weorpan** | **wearp** | **wurpon** | **worpen** |
| | **berstan** | **bærst** | **burston** | **borsten** |

Like **bindan** are conjugated all strong verbs in **in** or **im** + consonant, besides **iernan**, *run*, **beornan**, *burn*, originally **rinnan**, **brinnan**.

Like **helpan** are conjugated all in **el** + consonant, besides **fēolan**, *reach*, which is irregular.

Like **gieldan** are conjugated all in **iel** + consonant.

Like **weorpan** are conjugated all in **eor** or **eoh** + consonant (**21.** *b*).

Like **berstan** are conjugated **ðerscan**, *thresh;* **bregdan**, *brandish;* **stregdan**, *strew;* besides **frignan**, *in-*

*quire*, which resembles it in all except the vowel of the present.

The stems of **weorðan**, *become*, are (37):—

| weorðan | wearð | wurdon | worden |
|---|---|---|---|

**Bregdan** and **frignan** may drop **g**, and lengthen the preceding vowel (28): **brǣd, frīnan.**

**Findan**, *find*, likewise forms its 3d sing. pret. ind. as **funde**, which is indeed the usual form.

Among the more common verbs are: **drincan**, *drink;* **findan**, *find;* **(on)ginnan**, *begin;* **winnan**, *strive;* **limpan**, *happen;* **belgan**, *be angry;* **hweorfan**, *turn;* **feohtan**, *fight.*

Umlaut changes the **eo** of the present to **ie** in the 2d and 3d sing. pres. ind.: **wierpð**. A similar change, though not due to precisely the same cause (17), is found in presents in **e**, which is converted to **i** or **ie**: **hilpst, bierst.**

The 2d and 3d sing. pres. ind. are thus formed (33, 34):—

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **d**-stems | **bindan** | **bintst, bint** |
| **t**-stems | **feohtan** | **fiehtst, fieht** |
| **st**-stems | **berstan** | **bierst, bierst** |
| **ð**-stems | **weorðan** | **wier(ð)st, wierð** |
| **nn**-stems | **winnan** | **winst, winð** (35, *b*) |
| Others are normal | **singan** | **singst, singð** |

The stems of **fēolan**, *reach*, are:—

| fēolan | fealh | fulgon (fǣlon) | folen |
|---|---|---|---|

Exceptional forms are the 3d sing. pres. ind. of **bregdan** and **stregdan**: **brītt, strēt(t)**.

**105. Strong verbs of the Fourth Ablaut Class.** —

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Stem vowels | **e** | **æ** | **ǣ** | **o** |
| | **i (u)** | **ō** | **ō** | **u** |
| Typical verb | **beran**, *bear* | | | |
| Four stems | **beran, bær, bǣron, boren** | | | |

Like **beran** are conjugated **teran**, *tear;* **scieran (18)**, *shear;* **cwelan**, *die;* **helan**, *conceal;* **stelan**, *steal;* **hwelan**, *roar;* **brecan**, *break.*

The two irregular verbs of this class are among the most important in the language: **niman**, *take*, and **cuman**, *come*. Their stems are: —

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **niman** | **nōm** | **nōmon** | **numen** |
| **cuman** | **c(w)ōm** | **c(w)ōmon** | **cumen (cymen)** |

Umlaut changes the **u** of **cuman** to **y** in the 2d and 3d sing. pres. ind.: **cymst, cymð**. A similar change, though not due to precisely the same cause (**17**), is found in the presents in **e**, which is changed to **i** or **ie**: **bi(e)rst, stilð**.

**106. Strong verbs of the Fifth Ablaut Class.** —

Stem vowels (normally) **e, æ, ǣ, e**

Typical verbs **sprecan**, *speak;* **cweðan**, *say;* **giefan**, *give;* **biddan**, *request;* **gefēon**, *rejoice*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Four stems | **sprecan** | **spræc** | **sprǣcon** | **sprecen** |
| | **cweðan** | **cwæð** | **cwǣdon (37)** | **cweden** |
| | **giefan (18)** | **geaf** | **gēafon** | **giefen** |

| Four stems | **biddan** | **bæd** | **bǣdon** | **beden** |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **gefēon (101)** | **gefeah** | **gefǣgon** | |

Like **sprecan** are conjugated **etan**, *eat;* **tredan**, *tread;* **metan**, *measure;* **wrecan**, *pursue;* and a few others.

Like **cweðan** is conjugated no other verb.

Like **giefan** is conjugated **gietan**, *get* (**18**).

Like **biddan** are conjugated **licgan**, *lie;* **sittan**, *sit.*

Like **gefēon** is conjugated **sēon**, *see*, except that its pret. plur. is **sāwon**, and past participle **sewen**, **segen.**

Umlaut, or a change analogous to it (**17**), converts the **e** of the present to **i** in the 2d and 3d sing. pres. ind.: **cwið**; in contracts we have **ie**, not **īe**, since the vowel of the present was originally short: **siehð.**

The 2d and 3d sing. pres. ind. are thus formed (**33, 34**): —

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **d**-stems | **tredan** | **tritst, trit(t)** |
| **t**-stems | **gietan** | **gietst, giet(t)** |
| **ð**-stems | **cweðan** | **cwist, cwið** |
| **g**-stems (**28**) | **licgan** | **ligst (līst), ligð (līð)** |
| Contracts (**101**) | **sēon** | **siehst, siehð** |
| Others are normal | **sprecan** | **spricst, spricð** |

The vowel of the pret. sing. is sometimes long in verbs in **et**: **ǣt, mǣt.** Imp. sing. **bide** (cf. **107**).

**107. Strong verbs of the Sixth Ablaut Class.** —

Stem vowels (normally) **a, ō, ō, a**

Typical verbs **faran**, *go;* **slēan**, *strike;* **standan**, *stand;* **hębban**, *raise*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Four stems | **faran** | **fōr** | **fōron** | **faren** |
| | **slēan** (101) | **slōg** | **slōgon** (37) | **slægen** (**slęgen**) |
| | **standan** | **stōd** | **stōdon** | **standen** |
| | **hębban** (11) | **hōf** | **hōfon** | **hafen** |

Like **faran** are conjugated **sacan**, *dispute*, **wacan**, *wake*, **tōsc(e)acan**, *depart*, and one or two others.

Like **slēan** are conjugated **lēan**, *blame*, **ðwēan**, *wash*.

Like **standan** is conjugated no other verb.

In the main like **hębban** are conjugated the following: —

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **hliehhan** (36), *laugh* | **hlōh** | **hlōgon** (37) | |
| **scieppan** (18), *create* | **scōp** (**scēop**) | **scōpon** (**scēopon**) | **sceapen** |
| **stæppan**, *step* | **stōp** | **stōpon** | **stapen** |
| **swęrian**, *swear* | **swōr** | **swōron** | **sworen** |

Umlaut changes the **a** of the present to **ę** (æ), and the **ēa** of the present (see **101**) to **ie** (not **īe**), in the 2d and 3d sing. pres. ind.: **stęnt**, **færst**, **sliehð**.

The 2d and 3d sing. pres. ind. are thus formed (**34**): —

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **d**-stems | **standan** | **stęntst**, **stęnt** |
| **b**-stems | **hębban** | **hęfst**, **hęfð** |
| Contracts (**101**) | **slēan** | **sliehst**, **sliehð** |
| Others are normal | **faran** | **færst**, **færð** |

The verbs like **hębban** are peculiar in having umlaut in the present stem, which causes them, in so far, to resemble the Weak Verbs of the First Class (**111**). Like **sęllan**, etc., they have the imp. sing. in **-e**: **hęfe**, **swęre**, etc. (cf. **117**). The umlaut is due to the fact that the stem of this group, unlike that of

most strong verbs, was followed by a **j** (**16**). Thus the inf. **stæppan** stands for original **stapjan**; were it not for the umlaut-causing **-j-**, the infinitive would have been **stapan**; and so in the other four verbs.

**108. Reduplicating verbs.** — Stem vowels various.

A peculiarity of this class — shared, however, by a very few verbs of the Sixth Ablaut Class (**107**) — is that the vowels of the first and fourth stems are identical (with two or three exceptions noted below), and that those of the second and third stems are likewise identical. The vowel (diphthong) of the preterit is sometimes **ēo**, less frequently **ē**.

**109. Reduplicating preterits in ēo.** — The present stem has **ea** (rarely **a**), **ā**, **ēa**, **ō**, or **ē**.

Typical verbs **feallan**, *fall;* **bannan**, *summon;* **cnāwan**, *know;* **hēawan**, *hew;* **flōwan**, *flow;* **wēpan**, *weep*

| Four stems | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **feallan** | **fēoll** | **fēollon** | **feallen** |
| | **bannan** | **bēonn** | **bēonnon** | **bannen** |
| | **cnāwan** | **cnēow** | **cnēowon** | **cnāwen** |
| | **hēawan** | **hēow** | **hēowon** | **hēawen** |
| | **flōwan** | **flēow** | **flēowon** | **flōwen** |
| | **wēpan** | **wēop** | **wēopon** | **wōpen** |

Like **feallan** are conjugated verbs in **eal** + consonant, besides **weaxan**, *grow* (originally of the Sixth Ablaut Class, **107**): **healdan**, *hold;* **wealdan**, *govern*, etc.

Like **bannan** (very rare) is conjugated **gangan**, *go* (but usually as **gān**, **141**).

Like **cnāwan** are conjugated verbs in **āw**, besides **swāpan**, *sweep*: — **blāwan**, *blow*; **sāwan**, *sow*, etc.

Like **hēawan** are conjugated verbs in **ēa**: **bēatan**, *beat*; **hlēapan**, *leap*.

Like **flōwan** are conjugated verbs in **ō**: **blōwan**, *bloom* (not to be confounded with **blāwan**, *blow*); **grōwan**, *grow*; **spōwan**, *thrive*; **rōwan**, *row*.

Like **wēpan** is conjugated no other common verb; in **wēpan** (orig. **wōpjan**) the stem vowel of the present is derived by umlaut from **ō**, the latter reappearing in the past participle. — Umlaut as in **94**.

**110. Reduplicating preterits in ē.** — The present stem has **ā**, **ǣ**, or **ō**. Umlaut as in **94**.

| Typical verbs | **lǣtan**, *let*; **hātan**, *call*; **fōn**, *seize* | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Four stems | **lǣtan** | **lēt** | **lēton** | **lǣten** |
| | **hātan** | **hēt** | **hēton** | **hāten** |
| | **fōn (101)** | **fēng** | **fēngon** | **fangen** |

Like **lǣtan** are conjugated **drǣdan**, *dread*; **rǣdan**, *consult*, *read* (usually weak); **slǣpan**, *sleep*.

Like **hātan** is conjugated **lācan**, *jump*; **scādan**, **scēadan** (18), *separate*.

Like **fōn** is conjugated **hōn**, *hang* (3d sing. **fēhð**, **hēhð**).

**111. Weak verbs of the First Class.** — The stem vowel of the present always has umlaut (except that **ēo** sometimes persists, *i.e.*, does not become **īe**). The infinitive ends in **-an** or **-ian**, the latter being infrequent.

**112. Weak infinitives in -an.** — These take the preterit either (**113, 114**) in **-de** (**-te**) or (**115**) in **-ede**, the past participle in **-ed** or in **-d** (**-t**).

**113. Weak preterits in -de (-te), with retention of the stem vowel.** — Here belong verbs whose stem vowel is long by nature (**4**), and a number in which the stem syllable is long by position as a result of gemination (**36**). The past participle is formed in **-ed**, contraction taking place in **t-** and **d-** stems. The infinitive always ends in **-an**. Simplified gemination by **35**.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Three stems | **hīeran**, *hear* | **hīerde** | **(ge)hīered** |
| | **fyllan**, *fill* | **fylde** (35) | **(ge)fylled** |
| | **cyssan**, *kiss* | **cyste** (33, 35) | **(ge)cyssed** |
| | **sęttan**, *set* | **sętte** (33) | **(ge)sętt** |
| | **sęndan**, *send* | **sęnde** | **(ge)sęnd(ed)** |
| | **lǣdan**, *lead* | **lǣdde** | **(ge)lǣd(ed)** |
| | **īecan**, *increase* | **īecte** (33) | **(ge)īeced** |
| | **ēhtan**, *persecute* | **ēhte** | **(ge)ēht** |
| | **mētan**, *find* | **mētte** | **(ge)mēt(t)** |
| | **gierwan**, *prepare* | **gierede** | **(ge)gier(w)ed** |

Like **hīeran** are conjugated all verbs not belonging to any of the following divisions.

Like **fyllan** are conjugated stems ending in a double consonant, excepting those like **cyssan** and **sętttan**, and under **114** and **115**.

Like **cyssan** are conjugated stems ending in **ff**, **pp**, and **ss**.

Like **sętttan** are conjugated stems ending in **tt** (imp. sing. **sęte**).

Like **sęndan** are conjugated stems ending in a consonant + **d**.

Like **lǣdan** are conjugated stems ending in a vowel + **d**.

Like **īecan** are conjugated stems ending in **c**, **p**, and **x**.

Like **ēhtan** are conjugated stems ending in a consonant + **t**.

Like **mētan** are conjugated stems ending in a vowel + **t**.

Like **gierwan** are conjugated stems ending in **rw** and **lw**. The forms of the present sometimes retain the **w**, sometimes not.

**114. Irregular preterits and past participles.** — Certain verbs, in other respects like those of the last paragraph, and whose stems end in **ll**, **cc**, **c** (**nc**, **rc**), or **g** (**cg**, **ng**), form their preterits and past participles from a stem without umlaut. In the case of the **ll**-, **cc**-, and simple **c**-verbs, to determine, from the present stem, what form the past stem will assume, find the original vowel corresponding to the umlaut vowel of the present, and consider what changes, if any, will be caused by breaking (**21**). The **l**-verbs take **-de** and **-d**, the **c**- and **g**-verbs **-te** and **-t**. The **c**- and **g**-verbs often insert **-e**- before the infinitive ending (**18**). Stems ending in **c** and **g** change these consonants to **h** before the **t** of the ending.

The list is as follows: —

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ll-verbs | **cwęllan**, *kill* | **cwealde** | **(ge)cweald** |
| | **dwęllan**, *deceive* | | |
| | **sęllan**, *give* | | |
| | **stęllan**, *place* | | |
| | **tęllan**, *count* | | |
| cc-verbs | **cwęcc(e)an**, *shake* | **cweahte** | **(ge)cweaht** |
| | **dręcc(e)an**, *vex* | | |
| | **lęcc(e)an**, *moisten* | | |
| | **ręcc(e)an**, *expound* | | |
| | **stręcc(e)an**, *stretch* | | |
| | **ðęcc(e)an**, *cover* | | |
| | **w(r)ęcc(e)an**, *wake* | | |
| | **læcc(e)an**, *seize* | **læhte** | **(ge)læht** |
| c-verbs | **rǣc(e)an**, *reach* | **rǣhte** | **(ge)rǣht** |
| | **tǣc(e)an**, *teach* | **tǣhte** | **(ge)tǣht** |
| | **rēc(e)an**, **recc(e)an**, *reck* | **rōhte** | **(ge)rōht** |
| | **sēc(e)an**, *seek* | **sōhte** | **(ge)sōht** |
| nc-verbs | **ðęnc(e)an**, *think* | **ðōhte** | **(ge)ðōht** |
| | **ðync(e)an**, *seem* | **ðūhte** | **(ge)ðūht** |
| rc-verb | **wyrc(e)an**, *work* | **worhte** | **(ge)worht** |
| cg-verb | **bycg(e)an**, *buy* | **bohte** | **(ge)boht** |
| ng-verb | **bringan**, *bring* | **brōhte** | **(ge)brōht** |

The preterit and past participle of **rǣc(e)an** and **tǣc(e)an** should properly have **ā**: **rāhte**, etc. This does, indeed, sometimes occur, but is much less common than the **æ**.

**115. Infinitives in -an, with preterit in -ede.** — Here belong two groups of verbs whose infinitives end in **-an** (exceptionally **-ian**).

(*a*) The first group comprises the following verbs with stems ending in a double consonant (cf. **11**);

**frȩmman**, *perform;* **grȩmman**, *provoke;* **trymman**, *confirm;* **ðȩnnan**, *extend;* **wȩnnan**, *accustom;* **dynnan**, **hlynnan**, *resound;* **cnyssan**, *beat;* **scȩððan**, *injure* (sometimes strong); **swȩbban**, *quiet;* **wȩcg(e)an**, *agitate;* **ðicg(e)an**, *receive* (sometimes strong). Occasionally these verbs take an infinitive in **-ian** (**116**).

(*b*) The second group comprises stems ending in a consonant + either **l**, **n**, or **r**. This group is somewhat irregular, occasionally having preterits like **hyngerde**, instead of the more regular **hyngrede**, **nȩmde** for **nȩmn(e)de**, *named*, and **ȩfnde** for **ȩfnede**, *performed.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Typical verbs | (*a*) **frȩmman**, *perform* | **frȩmede** | (ge)**frȩmed** |
| | (*b*) **hyngran**, *hunger* | **hyngrede** | (ge)**hyngred** |

Note. — **Lȩcg(e)an**, *lay*, is irregular in the preterit and past part.: **lȩgde** (**lēde**), (ge)**lȩgd** (**-lēd**), instead of **lȩgede**, (ge)**lȩged**.

**116. Infinitives in -ian with preterit in -ede.** — Here belong a few weak verbs of the First Class. They have a short stem ending in **r**, or occasionally in **l**, **m**, **n**, or one of the spirants. The vowel of the stem is usually **ȩ** (**ie**) or **y**. Examples are: **nȩrian**, *save;* **hȩrian**, *praise;* **byrian**, *pertain;* **hȩlian**, *conceal;* **trymian**, *confirm* (see **115.** *a*).

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Three stems | **nȩrian** | **nȩrede** | (ge)**nȩred** |

**117. Paradigms of the First Class.** — For the conjugation of weak verbs of the First Class we may

choose: **hīeran**, *hear* (113); **sęllan**, *give* (114, 36); **fręmman**, *perform* (115); **nęrian**, *save* (116).

PRESENT.

INDICATIVE.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. 1. | **hīere** | **sęlle** | **fręmme** | **nęrie** |
| 2. | **hīerst** (23) | **sęl(e)st** | **fręmest** | **nęrest** |
| 3. | **hīerð** | **sęl(e)ð** | **fręmeð** | **nęreð** |
| Plur. | **hīerað** | **sęllað** | **fręmmað** | **nęriað** |

OPTATIVE.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | **hīere** | **sęlle** | **fręmme** | **nęrie** |
| Plur. | **hīeren** | **sęllen** | **fręmmen** | **nęrien** |

IMPERATIVE.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | **hīer** (23) | **sęle** | **fręme** | **nęre** |
| Plur. | **hīerað** | **sęllað** | **fręmmað** | **nęriað** |

INFINITIVE.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **hīeran** | **sęllan** | **fręmman** | **nęrian** |

PARTICIPLE.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **hīerende** | **sęllende** | **fręmmende** | **nęriende** |

PRETERIT.

INDICATIVE.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. 1. | **hīerde** | **sealde** | **fręmede** | **nęrede** |
| 2. | **hīerdest** | **sealdest** | **fręmedest** | **nęredest** |
| 3. | **hīerde** | **sealde** | **fręmede** | **nęrede** |
| Plur. | **hīerdon** | **sealdon** | **fręmedon** | **nęredon** |

OPTATIVE.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | **hīerde** | **sealde** | **fręmede** | **nęrede** |
| Plur. | **hīerden** | **sealden** | **fręmeden** | **nęreden** |

PARTICIPLE.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | **hīered** | **seald** | **fręmed** | **nęred** |
| Plur. | **hīer(e)de** | **sealde** | **fręmede** | **nęrede** |

**118. Weak verbs of the Second Class.** — These are very numerous. Many are formed from nouns and adjectives (cf. **90**). The infinitive always ends in **-ian**, or its equivalent **-ig(e)an** (**18**). Though the **i** of an ending usually causes umlaut, it does not in these verbs, because of its comparatively late origin, the older termination having been **-ōjon** (that is, **-ō-yon**), which was incapable of causing umlaut, since it was **-ō-**, rather than **-j-** (that is, **-y-**), which immediately followed the stem.

Hence it is easy to distinguish verbs of this Class from verbs in **-ian** of the First Class (**116**):—

1. Of those verbs there are but few; of these, many.
2. Of those the vowels are always umlauted (usually **e** or **y**); of these, rarely, and only when the verb was formed from a noun or adjective whose vowel was already umlauted.
3. Of those the stem usually ends in **r**; of these, in any consonant or consonant combination.

**119. Paradigm of the Second Class.** — As a typical verb we may select **lufian**, *love*.

| | Present. | |
|---|---|---|
| Indicative. | Optative. | Imperative. |
| Sing. 1. **lufie** | | Sing. **lufa** |
| 2. **lufast** | **lufie** | Plur. **lufiaþ** |
| 3. **lufaþ** | | |
| Plur. **lufiaþ** | **lufien** | |
| Infin. **lufian** | | Part. **lufiende** |

| | Preterit. | |
|---|---|---|
| | Indicative. | Optative. |
| Sing. 1. | **lufode** | **lufode** |
| 2. | **lufodest** | |
| 3. | **lufode** | |
| Plur. | **lufedon, -odon** | **lufoden, -eden** |
| Part. | **(ge)lufod** | |

In the endings, **ig(e)** or **g** is frequently found for **i** (**18**).

Sometimes, instead of **-ode**, the ending is **-ade**, **-ude**, or even **-ede**; but **-ode** is normal.

**120. Weak verbs of the Third Class.** — These comprise **habban**, *have;* **libban** (**lifian**), *live;* **sęcg(e)an**, *say;* **hycg(e)an**, *think.* These are conjugated partly according to the First Class (**117**), and partly according to the Second (**119**).

**121. Conjugation of habban**, *have.* — **Habban**, *have;* **nabban**, *have not* (**29**).

| | Indicative. | | Optative. |
|---|---|---|---|
| Pres. Sing. 1. | **hæbbe** | | **hæbbe** |
| 2. | **hæfst (hafast)** | | **hæbbe** |
| 3. | **hæfð (hafað)** | | **hæbbe** |
| Plur. | **habbað (hæbbað)** | | **hæbben** |
| Pret. Sing. | **hæfde**, etc. | | **hæfde** |
| Plur. | **hæfdon** | | **hæfden** |
| Imper. Sing. | **hafa** | Infin. | **habban** |
| Plur. | **habbað** | | |
| Pres. Part. | **hæbbende** | Past Part. | **(ge)hæfd** |

| | Indicative. | | Optative. |
|---|---|---|---|
| Pres. Sing. 1. | **næbbe** | | **næbbe** |
| 2. | **næfst (nafast)** | | **næbbe** |
| 3. | **næfð (nafað)** | | **næbbe** |
| Plur. | **nabbað** | | **næbben** |
| Pret. Sing. | **næfde**, etc. | | **næfde** |
| Plur. | **næfdon** | | **næfden** |
| Imper. Sing. | **nafa** | Infin. | **nabban** |
| Plur. | **nabbað** | | |
| Pres. Part. | **næbbende** | Past Part. | **(ge)næfd** |

## 122. Conjugation of libban, *live.* —

| | Indicative. | | Optative. |
|---|---|---|---|
| Pres. Sing. 1. | **libbe** | | **libbe, lifie**, etc. |
| 2. | **leofast (20)** | | |
| 3. | **leofað** | | |
| Plur. | **libbað, lifiað** | | **libben, lifien** |
| Pret. Sing. | **lifde**, etc. | | **lifde** |
| Plur. | **lifdon** | | **lifden** |
| Imper. Sing. | **leofa (20)** | Infin. | **libban, lifian** |
| Plur. | **libbað, lifiað** | | |
| Pres. Part. | **libbende, lifiende** | Past Part. | **(ge)lifd** |

## 123. Conjugation of sęcg(e)an, *say.* —

| | Indicative. | | Optative. |
|---|---|---|---|
| Pres. Sing. 1. | **sęcge** | | **sęcge**, etc. |
| 2. | **sægst, sęgst, sagast** | | |
| 3. | **sægð, sęgð, sagað** | | |
| Plur. | **sęcg(e)að** | | **sęcgen** |
| Pret. Sing. | **sægde, sǣde (28)**, etc. | | **sægde, sǣde** |
| Plur. | **sægdon, sǣdon** | | **sægden, sǣden** |
| Imper. Sing. | **saga, sęge** | Infin. | **sęcg(e)an** |
| Plur. | **sęcg(e)að** | | |
| Pres. Part. | **sęcgende** | Past Part. | **(ge)sægd, (ge)sǣd** |

**124. Conjugation of hycg(e)an**, *think*. —

| | Indicative. | Optative. |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. Sing. 1. | **hycge** | **hycge**, etc. |
| 2. | **hygst**, **hogast** | |
| 3. | **hygð**, **hogað** | |
| Plur. | **hycg(e)að** | **hycgen** |
| Pret. Sing. | **hog(o)de**, etc. | **hog(o)de** |
| Plur. | **hog(o)don** | **hog(o)den** |
| Imper. Sing. | **hoga** | Infin. **hycg(e)an** |
| Plur. | **hycg(e)að** | |
| Pres. Part. | **hycgende** | Past Part. **(ge)hog(o)d** |

PRETERITIVE PRESENTS.

**125. Preteritive presents.** — A small group of verbs have strong preterits with present meaning (the old presents being lost), and form new weak preterits from these. They are: **witan**, *know;* **āgan**, *own;* **dugan**, *avail;* **unnan**, *grant;* **cunnan**, *know;* **ðurfan**, *need;* **durran** (?), *dare;* **sculan**, *shall;* **munan**, *intend;* **mugan** (?), *can;* **nugan** (?), *suffice;* **mōtan** (?), *may*.

**126. Conjugation of witan**, *know*. — Ind. pres. sing. 1. 3. **wāt**, 2. **wāst**; plur. **wi(e)ton**; pret. **wiste (wisse)**, etc. Opt. pres. **wi(e)te**, etc.; pret. **wiste (wisse)**, etc. Imper. **wite**. Infin. **wi(e)tan**. Pres. part. **witende**; past part. **(ge)witen**.

For **wi(e)tan**, etc., is found **wiotan**, etc.

Like **witan** is conjugated **nytan**, *not to know:* **nāt**, etc. Wherever, in the forms of **witan**, **i (ie, io)** occurs, **y** is here to be substituted.

**127. Conjugation of āgan**, *possess.* — Ind. pres. sing. 1. 3. **āh**, 2. **āhst**; plur. **āgon**; pret. **āhte**, etc. Opt. pres. **āge**, etc.; pret. **āhte**. Imper. **āge**. Infin. **āgan**. Pres. part. **āgende**; past part. **āgen**, *own* (*adj.*).

So **nāgan**, *not to possess.*

**128. Conjugation of dugan**, *avail.* — Ind. pres. sing. 1. 3. **dēah**; plur. **dugon**; pret. **dohte**, etc. Opt. pres. **dyge**, **duge**, etc. Infin. **dugan**. Pres. part. **dugende**.

**129. Conjugation of unnan**, *grant.* — Ind. pres. sing. 1. 3. **an(n)**; plur. **unnon**; pret. **ūðe**. Opt. pres. **unne**, etc.; pret. **ūðe**, etc. Imper. **unne**. Infin. **unnan**. Pres. part. **unnende**; past part. **(ge)unnen**.

**130. Conjugation of cunnan**, *know.* — Ind. pres. sing. 1. 3. **can(n)**, **canst**; plur. **cunnon**; pret. **cūðe**, etc. Opt. pres. **cunne**, etc.; pret. **cūðe**, **cȳðe**, etc. Infin. **cunnan**. Past part. **(ge)cunnen**, and **cūð** (*adj.*).

**131. Conjugation of ðurfan**, *need.* — Ind. pres. sing. 1. 3. **ðearf**, 2. **ðearft**; plur. **ðurfon**; pret. **ðorfte**, etc. Opt. pres. **ðyrfe**, **ðurfe**, etc.; pret. **ðorfte**, etc. Infin. **ðurfan**. Pres. part. **ðearfende**.

**132. Conjugation of durran**, *dare.* — Ind. pres. sing. 1. 3. **dearr**, 2. **dearst**; plur. **durron**; pret. **dorste**, etc. Opt. pres. **dyrre**, **durre**, etc.

**133. Conjugation of sculan,** *shall.* — Ind. pres. sing. 1. 3. **sceal,** 2. **scealt**; plur. **sculon**; pret. **sc(e)olde,** etc. Opt. pres. **scyle, scule,** etc. Infin. **sculan.**

**134. Conjugation of munan,** *intend.* — Ind. pres. sing. 1. 3. **man,** 2. **manst**; plur. **munon (munaþ)**; pret. **munde.** Opt. pres. **myne, mune,** etc. Imper. sing. **mun**; plur. **munaþ.** Infin. **munan.** Pres. part. **munende**; past part. **(ge)munen.**

**135. Conjugation of mugan,** *can.* — Ind. pres. sing. 1. 3. **mæg,** 2. **meaht**; plur. **magon**; pret. **meahte,** etc. Opt. pres. **mæge,** etc.

**136. Conjugation of nugan,** *suffice.* — Ind. pres. sing. 3. **neah**; plur. **nugon**; pret. **nohte,** etc. Opt. pres. **nuge,** etc.

**137. Conjugation of mōtan,** *may.* — Ind. pres. sing. 1. 3. **mōt,** 2. **mōst**; plur. **mōton**; pret. **mōste,** etc. Opt. pres. **mōte,** etc.

## ANOMALOUS VERBS.

**138. Conjugation of wesan, bēon,** *be.* —

| | Indicative. | Optative. |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. Sing. 1. | **eom**; **bēo** | **sīe**; **bēo,** etc. |
| 2. | **eart**; **bist** | |
| 3. | **is**; **biþ**; neg. **nis** | |
| Plur. | **sind, -t**; **sindon**; **bēoþ** | **sīen**; **bēon** |

| | Indicative. | Optative. |
|---|---|---|
| Pret. Sing. 1. | **wæs**; neg. **næs** | **wǣre**; neg. **nǣre** |
| | **wǣre**; neg. **nǣre** | **wǣre**; neg. **nǣre** |
| | **wæs**; neg. **næs** | **wǣre**; neg. **nǣre** |
| | **wǣron**; neg. **nǣron** | **wǣren**; neg. **nǣren** |
| Imper. Sing. | **wes**; **bēo** | Infin. **wesan**; **bēon** |
| Plur. | **wesaþ**; **bēoþ** | Pres. Part. **wesende**; **bēonde** |

## 139. Conjugation of willan, *will*. —

| | Indicative. | Optative. |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. Sing. 1. | **wil(l)e**; neg. **ne(l)le**, **ny(l)le** | **wille**, etc.; neg. **nelle**, **nylle**, etc. |
| 2. | **wilt**; neg. **nelt**, **nylt** | |
| 3. | **wil(l)e**; neg. **nel(l)e**, **nyl(l)e** | |
| Plur. | **willaþ**; neg. **nellaþ**, **nyllaþ** | **willen**; neg. **nellen**, **nyllen** |
| Pret. Sing. | **wolde**, etc.; neg. **nolde**, etc. | **wolde**; neg. **nolde** |
| Plur. | **woldon**; neg. **noldon** | **wolden**; neg. **nolden** |
| Imper. Plur. | neg. **nellaþ**, **nyllaþ** | Infin. **willan** |
| Pres. Part. | **willende** | |

## 140. Conjugation of dōn, *do*. —

| | Indicative. | Optative. |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. Sing. 1. | **dō** | **dō**, etc. |
| 2. | **dēst** | |
| 3. | **dēþ** | |
| Plur. | **dōþ** | **dōn** |
| Pret. Sing. | **dyde**, **dydest**, **dyde** | **dyde** |
| Plur. | **dydon** | **dyden** |
| Imper. Sing. | **dō** | Infin. **dōn** |
| Plur. | **dōþ** | |
| Pres. Part. | **dōnde** | Past Part. **(ge)dōn** |

**141. Conjugation of gān,** *go.* —

| | Indicative. | Optative. |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. Sing. 1. | **gā** | **gā**, etc. |
| 2. | **gǣst** | |
| 3. | **gǣð** | |
| Plur. | **gāð** | **gān** |
| Pret. Sing. | **ēode**, etc. | **ēode** |
| Plur. | **ēodon** | **ēoden** |
| Imper. Sing. | **gā** | Infin. **gān** |
| Plur. | **gāð** | |
| Pres. Part. | **gānde** | Past Part. **(ge)gān** |

# FORMATION OF WORDS.

**142. Prefixes.** — Many Old English prefixes are self-explanatory. Others, with their meanings, are as follows: —

**ā-** (1) = 'up,' 'out' (Ger. er-): **āfyllan**, *fill up*, **āscēotan**, *shoot out.*

(2) representing **on**: **āweg** = **on weg**, *away.*

(3) = 'any': **āhwǣr**, *anywhere.*

(4) practically meaningless: **ābīdan**, *await.*

**æf-**, see **of-**.

**ǣg-** = 'any,' 'each': **ǣghwā**, *any one.*

**æt-** (1) = 'at,' 'to' (Lat. ad-): **ætwītan**, *twit*, **ætgædere**, *together.*

(2) = 'from,' 'away': **ætwindan**, *escape from.*

**and-, ond-** is found as the prefix of a few nouns; for its meaning see **on-**.

**be-** (Ger. be-):

(1) = 'about': **besorgian**, *be anxious about.*

(2) makes an intransitive verb transitive: **behycgan**, *think about, consider.*

(3) privative: **beniman**, *take from, deprive*, **behēafdian**, *behead.*

(4) practically meaningless: **bebēodan**, *command.*

**ed-** (1) = 'counter-,' 're-' (Lat. re-): **edlēan**, *recompense.*

(2) occasionally for **æt-**: **edwītan**, *twit.*

**for-** (Ger. ver-, für-, vor-):

(1) = 'away,' 'up,' 'utterly,' 'very,' denoting destruction effected by the action of the simple verb: **fordōn**, *destroy.*

(2) negative: **forbēodan**, *forbid.*

(3) = 'falsely': **forswęrian**, *forswear.*

(4) = 'down upon': **forsēon**, *despise.*

(5) = 'in behalf of': **forstandan**, *stand up for.*

(6) = 'fore-': **forscēawian**, *foresee.*

**fore-** = 'fore-' (Lat. præ-): **foresēon**, *foresee, provide.*

**ge-** (Ger. ge-, Lat. con-):

(1) = 'together': **gefēra**, *companion.*

(2) = 'attain by' the action of the simple verb: thus, **winnan**, *fight*, but **gewinnan**, *gain by fighting, conquer.*

(3) usual sign of past participle, when the verb lacks any other prefix: **gegān**, *gone.*

(4) practically meaningless: **gebed**, *prayer.*

**mis-** = 'mis-': **miswęndan**, *pervert.*

**n-** (for **ne-**) = 'not': **nā** (= **ne** + **ā**, *not ever*), *not at all;* **nis**, *is not.*

**of-** (1) = 'off,' 'from' (Lat. de-, ab-, pro-, ex-): **offspring**, *offspring.*

(2) = 'upon': **ofsittan**, *sit upon, oppress.*

(3) denoting offence, injury, death (Lat. ob-): **ofðyncan**, *displease*, **ofstingan**, *stab to death.*

(4) = 'attain by' the action of the simple verb: **offaran**, *catch up with*, **ofāscian**, *learn by asking.*

(5) intensive: **ofhyngrod**, *very hungry.*

**ofer-** (1) = 'over': **oferbrǣdan**, *overspread.*

(2) negative: **ofergietan**, *forget.*

**on-** (1) = 'on,' 'of': **ondrincan**, *drink of.*

(2) = 'from,' 'out of': **onspringan**, *burst forth.*

(3) = 'un-': **onlūcan**, *unlock.*

(4) intensive: **onstyrian**, *agitate.*

**or-** = 'without': **orsorg**, *without anxiety*, **orwēne**, *without hope, desperate.*

**ōð-** = 'away' (Lat. ex-, ab-, de-): **ōðflēon**, *flee away.*

**tō-** (1) = 'to': **tōcyme**, *advent.*

(2) = 'asunder' (Ger. zer-, Lat. dis-): **tōteran**, *tear apart*, **tōcnāwan**, *discern.*

**un-** (1) = 'un-': **unforht**, *fearless*, **unrīm** (*unnumber*), *multitude.*

(2) = 'bad': **undǣd**, *ill deed.*

**wiðer-** (1) = 'again': **wiðertrod**, *return.*

(2) = 'against': **wiðersaca**, *adversary.*

**ymb-** = 'around' (Lat. circum-): **ymbgang**, *circuit*, **ymbsittan**, *besiege.*

**143. Suffixes of masculine nouns.** — The more important are **-end**, **-ere**, **-ing**, **-ling**, besides the originally independent words **-dōm**, **-hād**, and **-scipe**. The first four denote persons; the last three, qualities or abstractions. Besides these, there is a masculine suffix **-els**, denoting things.

**-end** (orig. **-ende**, forming present participles) = '-er,' '-or': **scieppend**, *creator*. Contract nouns with this ending are **fēond**, *enemy*, **frēond**, *friend*.

**-ere** = '-er': **hearpere**, *harper*, **bōcere**, *scribe*.

**-ing** (1) = 'son of': **Æðelwulfing**, *son of Athelwulf*, **Adaming**, *son of Adam*.

(2) more generally: **Cęnting**, *inhabitant of Kent*, **cyning**, *king*, **pęning**, *penny*. The **i** sometimes causes umlaut, sometimes not.

**-ling**: **geongling**, *youngling*, **hȳrling**, *hireling*.

**-dōm** (Ger. -thum) = '-dom,' '-ity,' '-ism,' '-ship,' '-acy': **Crīstendōm**, *Christianity*, **cynedōm**, *kingship*.

**-hād** (Ger. -heit, -keit) = '-hood,' '-head,' '-ity': **cildhād**, *childhood*, **mægdenhād**, *virginity*.

**-scipe** (Ger. -schaft) = '-ship,' '-hood,' '-ness,' '-ity': **frēondscipe**, *friendship*, **fēondscipe**, *enmity*.

**-els**: **byrgels**, *tomb*, **rǣdels**, *riddle*.

**144. Suffixes of feminine nouns.** — The chief are **-estre**, **-nes**, **-ð**, **-ðu** (**-ðo**), **-ung** (**-ing**), and the originally independent **-rǣden**.

**-estre** = '-tress': **lǣrestre**, *instructress*.

**-nes** (Ger. -nis) = '-ness,' '-ity,' forms abstracts from the present and past participial stems of verbs, but especially from adjectives: **ēhtnes**, *persecution*, **forsewennes**, *contempt*, **hālignes**, *holiness*.

**-ð, -ðu, -ðo** = '-th': **hælð**, *health*, **strengðu**, *strength*. This ending was originally **-iða**, the **-i** of which caused umlaut.

**-ung** (occasionally **-ing**) = '-ing,' '-ation,' forms nouns from the present stem of (usually weak) verbs: **blētsung**, *blessing*, **costung**, *temptation*.

**-rædden** = '-red,' '-ship,' '-ity': **hierdrædden**, *guardianship*, *guard*.

**145. Suffixes of neuter nouns.** — The two principal, **-lāc** and **-rīce**, were originally independent words: —

**-lāc** (Mod. Eng. -lock, -ledge): **brȳdlāc**, *wedding*.

**-rīce** = 'rule,' 'realm,' 'region': **biscoprīce**, *bishopric*, **heofonrīce**, *kingdom of heaven*.

**146. Adjective suffixes.** — The principal are **-en, -ig, -iht, -isc**, and **-ol**, besides the originally independent **-bære, -cund, -fæst, -feald, -full, -lēas, -lic, -mōd, -sum, -weard, -wende, -weorð, -wierðe**, and **-wīs**. The first four sometimes cause umlaut, sometimes not.

**-en** (Lat. -inus) = '-en': **līnen**, *linen*, **gylden**, *golden*.

**-ig** (Ger. -ig) = '-y': **ēadig**, *blessed*, **grædig**, *greedy*.

**-iht** (Ger. -icht) = '-y': **hrēodiht**, *reedy*, **stæniht, stāniht**, *stony*.

**-isc** (Ger. -isch) = '-ish': forms adjectives from common, but especially from proper nouns: **hæðenisc**, *heathenish*, **Ęnglisc**, *English*.

**-ol** (Lat. -ulus) = 'disposed to': **swicol**, *deceitful*.

**-bære** (Ger. -bar, Lat. -ferus, -fer, -ger): **cwealmbære**, *deadly*, **lustbære**, *agreeable*.

**-cund** = '-ly': **heofondcund**, *heavenly*.

**-fæst** (Ger. -fest) = 'possessing,' 'firm in': **stędefæst**, *possessing, or firm in, one's place, steadfast*, **ārfæst**, *merciful, pious*.

**-feald** (Ger. -falt) = '-fold': **fēowerfeald**, *fourfold*.

**-full** (Ger. -voll) = '-ful': **gelēaffull**, *faithful*, **synfull**, *sinful*.

**-lēas** (Ger. -los) = '-less': **ārlēas** (Ger. ehrlos), *infamous*.

**-lic** (Ger. -lich) = '-ly,' '-al': **cynelic**, *royal*, **eorðlic**, *terrestrial*.

**-mōd** (cf. Ger. -müthig) = '-minded': **ānmōd** (cf. Ger. einmüthig), *unanimous*, **ēaðmōd**, *humble*.

**-sum** (Ger. -sam) = '-full,' '-some,' '-able': **lufsum**, *lovable*, **wynsum**, *winsome*.

**-weard** (cf. Ger. -wärts) = '-ward': **hāmweard**, *homeward, on the way home*, **andweard**, *present*.

**-węnde** = '-ary': **hālwęnde**, *salutary*.

**-weorð, -wurð** = '-worthy': **ārweorð, ārwurð**, *venerable*.

**-wierðe, -wyrðe** (cf. Ger. -würdig) = '-worthy': **nytwierðe**, *useful*.

**-wīs** = '-wise': **gescēadwīs**, *intelligent*, **rihtwīs**, *righteous*.

**147. Composition.** — Compounds are numerous in Old English. In this respect it resembles German and Greek, while Modern English has allowed this power of forming compounds to fall into disuse, largely through the influence of Latin and French. For this reason it would often be easier to make an idiomatic translation into Old English from Greek than from Latin; in its plastic and pictorial quality a page of Old English poetry suggests Homer or Pindar rather than Virgil or Horace, and among Roman poets the earlier, such as Lucretius.

The relation of the first element of compounds to the second should always be noted. The first limits or defines the second, and for this reason takes the stress; but the precise relation of the two elements is now of one sort, now of another. Sometimes it may be expressed by a preposition, sometimes by the sign of a case, sometimes by an adjective: **gærs-hoppa**, **gærs-stapa**, *grasshopper*, *hopper in or through the grass*; **han-crēd**, *cock's-crowing*; **hēah-ęngel**, *high-angel*, *archangel*; **gim-stān**, *gem-stone*, *jewel*.

Although compounds should be studied with reference to the meaning and relation of their components, they should frequently be translated by a simple Modern English word. Thus **gærshoppa** may sometimes be translated by *locust*; **gimstān** should never be translated *gemstone*; and **hēahfæder** should always be rendered by *patriarch* or *father*.

# SYNTAX.

**148. Object of this sketch.** — The object of the present sketch is not to present a complete view of Old English syntax, even in outline, but rather to call attention to such peculiarities as are most likely to cause difficulty. Many constructions common to all the cultivated European languages, especially to the inflected ones, will either be passed over without notice or but briefly touched upon.

## Nouns.

**149. Subject.** — The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case. For that of an infinitive, see **169**.

**150. Predicate nominative.** — A predicate noun (or adjective), denoting the same person or thing as its subject, agrees with it in case. Examples: **ic eom Apollonius; ðæt ic gewurde wǣdla.**

**151. Apposition.** — A noun annexed to another noun, and denoting the same person or thing, agrees with it in case. Examples: **and wēnde ðæt hēo Diana wǣre, sēo gyden; Arcestrates** (gen.) **dohtor ðæs cyninges.**

Note **hīe sume** = *some of them.*

**152. Vocative.** — The vocative, which is identical in form with the nominative, is used in direct address. It may be preceded by an interjection, the second personal pronoun, or a possessive pronoun; this possessive pronoun, when followed by an adjective, usually takes before the latter the demonstrative pronoun **se**. Examples: **ðū sæ Neptune; mīn se lēofesta fæder.**

**153. Genitive with nouns.** — The genitive is distinctively an adnominal case; that is, its principal function is to limit the meaning of a noun. Its sign is *of*. It denotes various relations, not all of which can be strictly defined.

*a*) Relationship: **ūre ealra mōdor.**

*b*) Source: **sunnan and mōnan lēoman; ðære hearpan swēg; frȩmdra ðēoda ungeðwærnes.**

*c*) Subject. The noun in the genitive stands for the *author* of the action denoted by the noun upon which the genitive is dependent. Example: **ðīnra halgena earnungum.**

*d*) Object. This may be known by the possibility of turning the noun upon which it is dependent into a cognate verb, when the noun in the genitive will become the *object* of that verb; for example, in **Frēan ȩgesan, Frēan** is an obj. gen., because, if we substitute for the noun **ȩgesa**, *fear*, the verb *fear*, the noun *Lord* becomes the object of the verb. Examples: **ðæs dæges līehtinge; līfes tilungum; unscȩððigra beswīcend; lǣswe scēapa and nēata; hyht hǣle.**

*e*) Cause (denoted by *for*): **lēan ðissa swæsenda.**

*f*) Characteristic: **meregreotan ælces hīwes; trēowum missenlicra cynna; setl his mægenðrymnesse.** Here, perhaps, belongs: **werhādes and wīfhādes hē gescēop hīe.**

*g*) Specification of time: **ānes mōnðes fierst.**

*h*) Specification of place: **gārsecges īgland** (Latin influence).

*i*) Unclassified: **ðære nēowolnesse brādnes; ðæt mægen lufe; ðære spræce ende.**

**154. Partitive genitive.** — The genitive denotes the whole, with words denoting a part.

*a*) With nouns: **unrīm ceastra; fela gēara; lȳthwōn cwicera cynna.**

*b*) With pronouns: **manna ænigne; hiera nān; hwilc ēower; gumena gehwæne; hwæthwugu swilces; sē manna.** Note the peculiar **ānra gehwilc**, *each one*.

*c*) With numerals: **eahta fōta; fēower hund wintra.**

*d*) With superlatives: **bēacna beorhtost.** Similarly, with a cognate noun, to denote eminence: **dryhtna Dryhten.**

**155. Genitive with adjectives.** — The genitive is used to define an adjective with respect to the part or relation in which the quality is conceived. Such

adjectives are frequently akin to verbs which take the genitive (156), and sometimes correspond to Latin adjectives of inclination in *-ax*. They may be roughly classified as follows: —

*a*) Want: **dǣllēas mīnes rēnes; īdel and unnyt gōda** (154. *b*) **gehwilces.**

*b*) Fulness: **berende** (Lat. *ferax*) **missenlicra fugla.**

*c*) Desire: **ǣtes georn.**

*d*) Retentiveness: **fæsthafol** (Lat. *tenax*) **mīnra gōda.**

*e*) Knowledge: **wordes wīs.**

**156. Genitive with verbs.** — The genitive is used with many verbs, mostly such as denote mental action, but also with those of cessation and refusal, and some others. Frequently the underlying notion is a *partitive* one; that is, the object is conceived as affected *in part*.

*a*) Desire: **friðes wilnedon.**

*b*) Request: **biddende mīnra gōda.**

*c*) Rejoicing: **þæs se hlanca gefeah.**

*d*) Experiment: **wæda cunnedan.**

*e*) Use: **eardes brūcað.**

*f*) Care: **gīemden ðæs dæges.**

*g*) Supposition or belief: **nōhtes ęlles wēndon; ðæs gelīefan.**

*h*) Fear: **ne ondræd ðū ðē æniges ðinges.**

*i*) Granting: **āra unnan.**

*j*) Refusal: **tīðe forwierndest.**

*k*) Cessation: **geswāc his weorces.**

*l*) Awaiting: **ðæs wordes bād.**

*m*) Approaching: **cēoles nēosan.**

*n*) Producing: **gāsta strēonan.**

**157. Adverbial genitive.** — Certain adverbial relations may be expressed by the genitive (cf. **71**). Example: **hine gewęnde ðæs weges.**

1. The demonstrative **ðæt** is frequently used in the genitive in various adverbial senses. Thus of time, **ðæs** (**ðe**) = *from the time that, after, afterwards;* of manner, = *as far as, as;* of cause, = *for this, because;* etc.

**158. Genitive with prepositions.** — The genitive is occasionally used with certain prepositions, such as **wiðˇ**, **tō**, and **wana**. Examples: **wiðˇ ðæs fæstengeates; tō ðæs; ānes wana siextig** (**78.** 5).

**159. Genitive with other cases.** — Verbs which take a genitive denoting the thing, may also take a dative or accusative of the person.

*a*) With dative (including reflexives, **184**): **him** (**164.** *a*) **ne ūðe** (**156.** *i*) **God lęngran līfes; nolde gē mē** (dat.) **wæda tīðian** (**156.** *i*); **gē mē** (dat.) **ætes forwierndon** (**156.** *j*); **Apollonius**

**hiere** (164. *c*) **ðæs ðancode; ne ondræd** (156. *h*) **ðū ðē** (161. 1) **æniges ðinges.**

*b*) With accusative (including impersonals, 190): **ðē** (acc.) **ōhtes āxian; hine fultumes bædon; ðē twēonie ðære spræce; męrelīðendum** (161) **miltsa biddan wuldres Āldor** (acc.); **ðegnas ðearle gelyste** (190) **gārgewinnes.**

**160. Dative in general.** — The dative denotes the indirect object, usually the person *to* or *for* or *with reference to* whom something is done. When used with verbs (164), the general notion of the verb may often be regarded as implying some sort of *giving* (or its opposite), if this term be employed in its widest sense.

1. The dative is sometimes used for the instrumental (174): **cleopode micelre stefne.**

**161. Dative of benefit or interest.** — The sign of this dative is *for*. Examples: **scipu ēow eallum ic wyrce.** Perhaps also: **ðīnre eorðan ne rīnð.**

1. Akin to this is the *reflexive dative* (184): **ðæt hīe him** (*for themselves*) **wæpnu worhten.**

2. Similar, too, is the *dative of possession*, which, without much change in the sense, might be replaced by the genitive: **him fēollon tēaras of ðæm ēagum** (so Ger. *ihm fielen Thränen von den Augen*); **him męn feaht on lāst; wulfum tō willan.**

**162. Dative of deprivation.** — Some verbs of deprivation (cf. **177**) take the dative of the object removed, sometimes with an accusative of the person *from whom*. Examples: **hē hine unscrȳdde ðǣm healfan sciccelse; ðingum ongierede and genacodode.**

**163. Dative of resemblance or approach.** — This is self-explanatory.

*a*) With verbs: **geflit cymð ðǣm behealdendum.**

*b*) With adjectives (cf. **165**): **fugole gelīcost.**

**164. Dative with various verbs.** — Such are verbs of (**160**) —

*a*) Giving or imparting: **ðearfum dǣlan.**

*b*) Speaking: **hiere āreahte; him gecȳðan.**

*c*) Thanking: **Gode ðanciende.**

*d*) Promising: **behēt mīnum lārēowe.**

*e*) Serving and benefiting: **hē him ðēnode; frȩmme gehwilc ōðrum; him fēng God on fultum; manigum genyhtsumian.**

*f*) Obeying and following: **gehīersumian mīnum willan; ðe hiere folgode.**

*g*) Pitying: **gemiltsa mē.**

*h*) Requiting: **forgieldan ǣghwilcum.**

*i*) Ruling: **ðēodum racian.** Similarly, **ȳðum stilde.**

*j*) Receiving: **onfēng ðǣre wununge.**

*k*) Pleasing and suiting: **him eallum līcode**; **ðē gedafenað**.

*l*) Seeming: **mē ðyncð**.

*m*) Opposing: **worulde wiðsacan**.

*n*) Betraying or deserting: **swīcað ðē**.

*o*) Using (rare): **notað cræfte mīnum**.

**165. Dative with adjectives.** — The dative is chiefly employed with adjectives signifying *dear*, *generous*, *useful*, *obedient*, etc., and their opposites. Examples: **lidwērigum ēste**; **Gode ðone lēofan fæder** (*the father dear to God*); **behēfe ic eom cyninge**; **folcum fracoð**.

1. The dative of want or deprivation (cf. **162**) is also found here: **Gode orfeorme**.

**166. Dative with prepositions.** — The dative is by far the commonest case with prepositions. Examples would be superfluous.

1. After the preposition **on** (**in**), certain adjectives, like **mid** and **ufanweard**, agree with the following noun, instead of being treated like nouns governing it in the genitive, as are their counterparts in Mod. Eng. Examples: **on midre ðǣre sǣ** (so Lat. *in medio mari*, but Mod. Eng. *in the midst* of *the sea*); **on ðǣm fæstene ufanweardum**.

**167. Dative absolute.** — A noun and a participle, not involved in the main construction of the sentence,

may stand by themselves in the dative, and constitute an adverbial clause, most frequently of time. This construction is imitated from the Latin ablative absolute. Examples: **onfangenre his blētsunge; ðisum eallum ðus gedōnum.**

**168. Accusative after transitive verbs.** — The direct object of a transitive verb is put in the accusative. Examples: **hē swang ðone top; ealne norðdæl genōmon.**

1. A special case of the foregoing is the cognate accusative, in which the object is etymologically akin to the verb: **libbað hiera līf.**

**169. Subject accusative.** — The subject of an infinitive is put in the accusative. Examples: **geseah hē sumne fiscere gān; hē gehīerde ðone blissesang ūpāstīgan.**

**170. Accusative of extent.** — The accusative may denote extent of time or space. Example: **wæs se storm ealne ðone dæg swīðe micel and strang.**

**171. Accusative after impersonals.** — Impersonals (190) of appetite or passion govern an accusative of the person suffering. Example: **mē hyngrede.**

**172. Accusative after prepositions.** — Some prepositions always govern the accusative, others only under

certain circumstances. Those of the former class are **geond**, **ōð**, **ðurh**, and **ymb(e)**; of the latter, a large number that more frequently take the dative (**166**).

1. Of the second class, **on (in)** is perhaps the commonest representative, taking the *dative* when denoting *rest in*, the *accusative* when denoting *motion towards;* this distinction, however, is not invariably observed. Examples of accusative: **inēode on ðæt bæð; in ðæt mynster ēode.**

Exceptions to the rule are: **on ðone seofoðan dæg; mid ðone bisceop.**

**173. Two accusatives.** — Verbs signifying *to make*, *to name*, *to regard*, and the like, may take a predicate accusative besides the object accusative. Examples: **God hine** (obj. acc.) **geworhte wundorlicne and fægerne; God gecīegde ðā drȳgnesse** (obj. acc.) **eorðan; hwonne gesāwon wē ðē** (obj. acc.) **hungrigne?**

**174. Instrumental in general.** — The instrumental, which in form is sometimes (especially in the plural) indistinguishable from the dative (see **160.** 1), denotes *manner*, *means*, *instrument*, or *material*. Its sign is *by* or *with*. Examples: **geseah blīðum andwlitan; gestaðolade strangum mihtum; gefæstnade folmum; gefrætwade foldan scēatas leomum and lēafum.**

This case is more common in poetry than in prose, where its place is often taken by **mid** with the dative; even in poetry, the simple instrumental sometimes alternates with the dative accompanied by **mid**, *e.g.* (*Andreas*, 320) **sārcwide** occurs in the same construction as **mid oferhygdum.** Occasionally the instrumental is employed where Modern English would use an accusative: **mundum brugdon,** *they waved (with) their hands.*

The instrumental being one of the more difficult cases to master, a few of its regular combinations are separately appended:—

*a*) With verbs of journeying and transporting, where its sign may almost be regarded as *in:* **cēolum līðan; fæðmum fęrian; sīðe gesōhte.** So with **libban: drēamum lifdon.**

*b*) With verbs of speaking, to indicate voice or language (see also **160. 1**): **wordum cwæð; ondsweorodon gēncwidum.**

*c*) With past participles, generally preceding the latter (common in poetry): **sweordum gehēawen; hilde gesæged; dōme gedȳrsod.**

*d*) With adjectives (generally in poetry), to denote *in what respect*, or sometimes *instrumentality:* **feðerum hrēmig; ęcgum gecoste; mundum frēorig; synnum wunde.** These last two afford the metrical combinations exhibited in **217. 1**—among the commonest in Old English.

**175. Instrumental with prepositions.** — **Mid**, which frequently takes the dative, is sometimes found with the instrumental, especially in the Anglian dialect; so occasionally **for**. Examples: **mid ealle; mid micle sige; mid ðȳ rēadestan gōdwębbe; for hwȳ.**

**176. Adverbial instrumental.** — The instrumental may denote adverbial relations, especially *time when*. Examples: **sume dæge; ðȳ seofoðan dæge; ǣlce gēare; word stunde āhōf.**

1. It may also denote the *number of times:* **siextīene sīðum.**

2. The instrumental may denote *the way:* **ðȳ ilcan wege.**

**177. Instrumental of deprivation.** — Some verbs of deprivation may take an object *of which* in the instrumental (cf. **162**). Examples: **māðmum bedǣled; æhtum benæmde.**

**178. Instrumental of difference.** — The instrumental denotes the measure of difference. Examples: **micle lęngran; ðȳ bealdran; þon cymlīcor; stręngre eallum ðæm ærgedōnum.**

## Adjectives.

**179. Agreement of adjectives.** — Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case. This applies also to demonstrative, possessive, and indefinite pro-

nouns, and to participles, when used as adjectives. When used predicatively, however, participles may be uninflected.

**180. Strong and weak adjectives.** — For the distinction in the use of strong and weak adjectives, see **55.**

**181. Adjectives as nouns.** — An adjective may be used as a noun (see **55**). Examples: **ðā ymbsittendan; hwā giefð ðæm uncūðan līfes fultum.**

## Adverbs.

**182. Use of adverbs.** — Adverbs qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs.

**183. Two negatives.** — Two or more negatives strengthen the negation, instead of making an affirmative. Example: **ðīn nis nān wiht.**

## Pronouns.

**184. Reflexive pronouns.** — The reflexive pronoun (**82**), in the dative (**161. 1**; cf. **159**) or accusative, is used with certain verbs whose counterparts in Mod. Eng. would not necessarily require it.

*a*) Dative: **worhton him hōcas; bær him eaxe on handa; him land curon; gewāt him; far ðē; cierde wē ūs.**

*b*) Accusative: **hē gerȩste hine; ðæt trēow brǣt hit; bewȩnde hine; hine gemȩngde; ēow fȳsan.**

**185. Relative pronouns.** — For these see **87.**

## Verbs.

**186. Forms of the verb.** — Old English verbs are either transitive or intransitive. They have two voices, — active and passive; three moods, — indicative, optative, and imperative — besides the infinitive, gerund, and participles; and five tenses, — present, preterit, perfect, pluperfect, and future. The uses of these forms correspond, in general, to those of the same forms in other languages.

**187. Voices.** — The forms of the active voice are given in **95**; those of the passive are formed by adding the past participle to the appropriate tense of **wesan (bēon)**, *be*, or **weorðan**, *become.*

**188. Tenses.** — Only two independent tenses are distinguished by their stems, — the present and the preterit. The present may also be used for the future; the preterit, for any of the three past tenses. Otherwise the distinctions of tense are indicated by means of auxiliaries, as in Modern English: the future being formed by the infinitive with **sculan**, *shall* (**133**), and

**willan**, *will* (**139**); the perfect and pluperfect, by the past participles with the appropriate tenses of **habban**, *have* (**121**), in the case of transitive verbs, and of **wesan**, *be* (**138**), in the case of intransitives.

**189. Agreement.** — A finite verb agrees with its subject in number and person. Exceptions are: —

1. When the subject consists of two nouns denoting essentially the same thing, united by a conjunction, the verb in agreement may be in the singular: **sīe sibb and geðwærnes betweoh ūs.**

2. A collective noun may take a verb in the plural: **sēo cnēoris wāgon and lǣddon.**

3. A plural verb, with a predicate in the plural, may be introduced by a neuter singular: **ðæt wǣron ęngla gāstas; hit ðonne wǣron mīne wæteru.**

Note. — The subject is sometimes to be supplied (cf. **190**): **hēt ðæt lēoht Dæg.**

**190. Impersonals.** — Impersonal verbs are those whose subject is an implied **hit**, *it*. They are often transitive, taking an object in the dative or accusative (**164.** *k*, *l*; **171**). Examples: **mē ðyncð; mē hyngrede; swā gesǣlde īu; hū hyre æt beaduwe gespēow.** Sometimes they take two cases: **þegnas gelyste gārgewinnes** (**159.** *b*).

**191. Indicative.** — The indicative has the functions common to it in most languages.

**192. Optative in general.** — The optative, sometimes called the subjunctive, is used to express an action or state simply as conceived by the mind. It is employed either in independent sentences or in subordinate clauses. Of these subordinate clauses there are two principal kinds, — substantive or noun clauses, and adverbial clauses. Of these, the noun clauses, generally introduced by **ðæt**, are the more important. Whenever the conjunction **ðæt** can be translated *in order that* or *so that*, it introduces an adverbial clause; otherwise, a noun clause. Other adverbial clauses are those of *place*, *time*, and *manner*. Less frequent are *adjective clauses*, introduced by or implying a *relative pronoun*.

**193. Optative in independent clauses.** — Under this head falls the use of the optative (*a*) to express a command or an emphatic wish; (*b*) in doubtful questions implying a negative answer; and (*c*) in hypothetical sentences.

*a*) Command: **bēo nū lēoht; ādl ðē fornime; gān wē sēcean.**

*b*) Question: **hwæt ðonne mē frȩmede gedeorf mīn?**

*c*) Hypothesis: **sīe ðæt ðū sīe.**

**194. Optative in noun clauses.** — The noun clause takes the place either of the subject (or predicate nominative) or of the object of a principal clause.

The object clause is commonest after verbs of knowledge, affirmation, command, and desire, such as *know*, *say*, *order*, *wish*, etc.

*a*) Subject clause: **līcaþ þē þæt Apollonius þus heonan fare; wēn is þæt þū gemēte sumne.**

*b*) Object clause: **gewite hwæt se geonga mann sīe; ne mealite findan hwilc hiera forliden wære; ic þē bebēode þæt þū þæt nænigum męnn cȳþe; ic wȳsce þæt ic ęft forlidennesse gefare.**

Note. — Certainty is rendered by the indicative: **ic oncnāwe þæt þū eart wel gelæred.**

**195. Optative by attraction.** — This is a name given to the optative found in clauses following another optative. Examples: **sprytte** (**193.** *a*) **sēo eorðe trēow, ðæs sæd sīe on him selfum; wēn is ðæt ðū gemēte** (**194.** *a*) **sumne ðæt þē gemiltsie; ðæs-ðe ðū geare forwite** (**196.** *f*) **hwæm ðū gemiltsie; ðæt sum gestrēon ic mē begiete** (**196.** *f*), **ðanan ic mē āfēde.**

**196. Optative in adverbial clauses.** — These are clauses of place (*where*), of time (*before*, *until*, *when*, *while*), of manner (*as if*), conditional (*if*), concessive (*though*), final (*in order that*), and consecutive (*so that*). Hypothetical or indefinite character in some measure attaches to the optative in each.

*a*) Place: **ðæt ðū wer gecēose ðǣr ðū self wille.**

*b*) Time: **ǣr se dæg cume; bīd ōð-ðæt hē cume.**

*c*) Manner: **swilce hē cuma wǣre.**

*d*) Conditional: **gif ðū ne finde nænne, węnd ðonne hider ongēan; swā hit ðē ne mislīcie.** But sometimes indicative: **gif ðū mē gelīefst.**

*e*) Concessive: **ðēah ðū stille sīe.**

*f*) Final: **and geseṭte hīe on ðǣre heofonan, ðæt hīe scinen ofer eorðan.** So with **ðæs-ðe: ðæs-ðe ðū geare forwite.** Negative: **ðȳ-læs-ðe ðē twēonie.**

*g*) Consecutive: **ādl ðē fornime, ðæt ðū ne bēo hāl.**

**197. Optative in adjective clauses.** — Whenever a sentence introduced by an actual or virtual relative implies an element of doubt, it may take the optative. Examples: **gecēose ænne, hwilcne ðū wille** (**hwilcne** is a virtual relative); **swā-hwæt-swā ðū wille.**

**198. Imperative.** — The imperative is used in commands, sometimes with the second personal pronoun, sometimes without. Examples: **bēo blīðe mid ūs; wite ðū; gē ęfthwęrfað tō ciricean**

**199. Infinitive.** — The infinitive is construed as a neuter noun, the subject or object of a finite verb.

When the object, it may itself have a subject noun or pronoun in the accusative (**169**).

*a*) Subject (or pred. nom., **150**): **micel hīenð and sceamu hit is nellan.**

*b*) Object: **nellan wesan; hēt hyre ðīnenne hēafod onwrīðan.**

1. An object infinitive is sometimes used for purposes of specification. With verbs of motion this may often be translated by the present participle, occasionally by the infinitive of purpose (= *in order to*). Examples: **cōmon līðan; gewāt him gangan; fēran gāsta strēonan** (purpose).

**200. Gerund.** — The gerund may usually be translated by the Mod. Eng. infinitive, in a variety of senses. Examples: **cōmon mīnre dohtor tō biddanne; land swīðe feorr tō gesēceanne; ðā ēstas him beforan lęgde ðe hē him tō bēodanne hæfde.**

## Prepositions.

**201. Cases governed.** — For the cases governed by prepositions, see **158, 166, 172, 175.**

1. The preposition sometimes follows its object, or immediately precedes the verb, and at times is difficult to distinguish from an adverb, or a prefix of the verb. Examples: **ðe** (**87.** *c*) **ðū æfter āxodest; ðe ðū swā wel wiðgedēst.**

## Conjunctions.

**202. Correlatives.** — Some of the more common correlatives are the following: —

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *a*) | **ge** . . . . . **ge**, | *both* . . . . . | *and.* |
| *b*) | **ðe** . . . . . **ðe**, | *whether* . . . | *or.* |
| *c*) | **nē** . . . . . **nē**, | *neither* . . . . | *nor.* |
| *d*) | **ðā-ðā** . . . . . **ðā**<br>**ðā** . . . . . **ðā**<br>**ðonne** . . . . **ðonne** | *when* . . . . . | (*then*). |
| *e*) | **ðēah** . . . . . **ðēah**, | *though* . . . . | (*yet*). |
| *f*) | **swā-swā** . . . **swā**, | *so* . . . . . | *as.* |
| *g*) | **swā** . . . . . **swā**, | *the* . . . . . | *the.* |

# PROSODY.

**203. Old English verse stichic.** — Old English verse is rarely strophic, but almost without exception stichic; that is, consists of ungrouped lines, following each other as in Modern English blank verse.

**204. The line and the hemistich.** — The line of poetry consists of two hemistichs, separated by the cæsura. Example: —

**bord and brād swyrd, brūne helmas.**

The hemistich may be either normal or expanded. A normal hemistich contains two metrical feet. Example: —

**cēne under cumblum.**

An expanded hemistich contains three metrical feet. Example: —

**swīðmōd sinces āhte.**

**205. The foot.** — A metrical foot is a portion of a line containing one primary stress. The syllable receiving the primary stress may or may not be followed or preceded by one or more lighter or slurred syllables.

Of the lighter syllables following or preceding a primary stress, one may, under certain circumstances, receive a secondary stress (**23**). A syllable which receives neither primary nor secondary stress is called unstressed.

**206. Stressed and unstressed syllables.** — The primary stress nearly always falls upon a long syllable; this long syllable may, however, be represented by two syllables, of which the first is short, and the second so light as to admit of syncopation. The substitution of two such short syllables for a single long one is called resolution.

A long syllable is one which contains a long vowel or diphthong, or a short vowel followed by two consonants. A short syllable is one which contains a short vowel followed by a single consonant (**4**). Long and short syllables, when stressed, are represented in metrical schemes by the macron, —, and the breve, ⏑, respectively. Stressed syllables are indicated by the acute or grave accent, according as the stress is primary or secondary. Unstressed syllables, whether short or long, are represented by the oblique cross, ×.

The syllable which receives the primary stress is usually the root syllable of a word, while the lighter or slurred syllables comprise the terminations, enclitics, and proclitics; occasionally, however, the second element of a compound word is reckoned as a slurred syllable, though usually it takes a secondary stress.

**207. Classification of feet.** — The terms *iambic*, *trochaic*, etc., are used analogically, with reference to stress, and not, as in Greek and Latin prosody, with primary reference to quantity. This being understood, Old English metrical feet may be classified as follows: —

1. Monosyllabic: The monosyllabic foot regularly consists of a long syllable under the primary stress, ∠. This foot is never found except in conjunction with one of the dactylic type having a secondary stress (1. *h* to 1. *k*, **216**).

2. Disyllabic: The disyllabic foot may be either trochaic, ∠×, or iambic, ×∠. In the trochaic foot, the unstressed syllable may be replaced by a long syllable under the secondary stress. The dactyl formed by the resolution of the trochee may be called the light dactyl, to distinguish it from the heavy or normal dactyl, in which the first syllable is long.

3. Trisyllabic: The trisyllabic foot is either dactylic, ∠××, or anapæstic, ××∠. If dactylic, either the second or third syllable has in some cases secondary stress.

4. Polysyllabic: If tetrasyllabic, this foot resembles either a first pæon, ∠×××, or a fourth pæon, ×××∠. If it contains a greater number of syllables, it is still essentially dactylic or anapæstic in effect, ∠××..., or ...×××∠.

In any of the foregoing feet, resolution may take place, thus apparently increasing the number of typical syllables.

**208. Anacrusis.** — Before hemistichs beginning with a primary stress, one or more unstressed syllables may occur. These unstressed syllables constitute what is known as the anacrusis. It is rare at the beginning of the second hemistich, but more frequent before the first.

**209. Expanded hemistichs.** — These are formed by prefixing a foot of the form ∠×... (less frequently ∠, and rarely in the first hemistich ×∠) to a regular hemistich of two stresses. Expanded lines are employed in passages of peculiar elevation and solemnity, or expressive of unwonted agitation. The expanded hemistich has three stresses, instead of the normal two, since the prefixed portion differs from the anacrusis in having a primary stress. As a rule, the first and second stresses of the first hemistich, when expanded, take alliteration, while in the second hemistich the place of the alliterative syllable is unchanged, coinciding normally with the (new) second stress. Example: —

**bēaga and beorhtra māðma, hī þæt þǣre beorhtan idese.**

**210. Alliteration.** — Alliteration is a poetical ornament which is a distinctive feature of Old English verse. It consists in the employment of the same or similar sounds at the beginning of two or more syllables which receive the primary stress. The second hemistich contains one such alliterative syllable, as a rule that which

has the first primary stress; the first hemistich has regularly two, though frequently only one. The alliterative sound must be the same throughout, if consonantal; if vocalic, it is usually different in the three syllables. Examples are: —

*a*) ***g*rame *g*ūðfrecan, *g*āras sęndon.**
*b*) **on ðæt *d*ægred sylf, *d*ynedan scildas.**
*c*) ***ea*rn *æ*tes georn, *ū*rigfeðera.**

In expanded lines, the additional foot frequently takes alliteration, thus removing it from one of its normal positions.

**211. Alliteration in relation to stress.** — The accentual principles observed by Old English poets in their management of alliteration virtually reduce themselves to one: that the most important syllables of the most important words should receive primary stress. It must be borne in mind, however, that the stress is sometimes rhetorical, that is, depends not so much upon the intrinsic weight of the word as upon that which belongs to it in virtue of its relation to other words in the same sentence. For example, a preposition might be expected to have less intrinsic weight than a following noun, yet instances occur where the preposition alliterates.

One general rule is that if a noun and a verb are found in the same hemistich, it is the noun that alliterates.

**212. Difference between the two hemistichs.** — The first hemistich frequently differs from the second, not only in the number of its alliterative syllables, but also in that of the unstressed syllables admitted between two primary stresses, or in the form of anacrusis.

**213. Rime.** — Rime and various forms of assonance are occasionally employed by Old English poets, sometimes for the purpose of uniting more closely the two halves of the same line, less frequently to associate the second half of a line with the first or second half of the following line, rarely in formulas or compounds within the same hemistich.

**214. Masculine and feminine rime.** — Masculine or monosyllabic rime is perfect when the riming vowels are identical, and are followed by the same consonants or consonant combinations. Example (from *Bēowulf*): —

**ēode yrremōd: him of ēaġum stōd.**

Feminine or polysyllabic (usually disyllabic) rime is perfect when the first riming syllables are perfect masculine rimes and the following syllables are identical. Example: —

**scildburh scǣron, scēotend wǣron.**

There are also various sorts of imperfect rime.

**215. Kennings.** — A characteristic ornament of Old English, as well as of early Teutonic poetry in general,

are the kennings. This term, which is of Norse origin, designates those synonyms or periphrastic phrases which are employed to diversify the expression of a thought, or to avoid the repetition of the same word, usually a noun. Many of these are striking metaphors, but by no means all; some, though metaphorical in their origin, were undoubtedly so familiar to the poet and audience that their peculiar significance was overlooked, and they were regarded as stereotyped and convenient synonyms. Examples of kennings for God are: **ārfæst Cyning, mihtig Dryhten, Metod, Frēa ælmihtig.**

**216. Ordinary sequences of long and short syllables.**[1] — Before proceeding to examine the metrical constitution of the hemistich, it is desirable to consider the ordinary sequences of long and short syllables in Old English, and particularly in Old English poetry.

1. Long syllables followed by short or slurred syllables. A long stressed syllable may be followed: —

*a*) by a derivative or inflectional syllable: **scūras** ∠×

*b*) by a monosyllabic proclitic: **ęft tō** ∠×

*c*) by a monosyllabic prefix: **mōd ā(réted)** ∠×

*d*) by a derivative or inflectional syllable + a monosyllabic prefix or proclitic: **cēnra tō** ∠××

*e*) by a disyllabic proclitic or prefix: **fȳnd ofer(wunnen)** ∠××

[1] This section is designed only for reference.

*f*) by a monosyllabic proclitic + a monosyllabic prefix: **forð on ge(rihte)** ⟋××

*g*) by two monosyllabic words: **him ðā se** ⟋××

*h*) by two syllables, derivative or inflectional: **mōdigre** ⟋⏑×

*i*) by the second element of a compound word, with or without a derivative syllable interposed: —

(*a*) **scīrmæled** ⟋⏑×

(*β*) **hildelēoð** ⟋×⏑

*j*) by a disyllabic word, with the stress upon its second syllable: **nēar ætstōp** (*Bēow.*) ⟋×⏑

*k*) by a derivative or inflectional syllable + a monosyllabic word: **ēaðe mæg** ⟋×⏑

2. Long syllables preceded by short or slurred syllables. A long stressed syllable may be preceded: —

*a*) by a monosyllabic prefix: **gefēoll** ×⟋

*b*) by a monosyllabic proclitic: **ðurh mīn(e)** ×⟋

*c*) by a derivative or inflectional syllable: **(frym)ða God** ×⟋

*d*) by a derivative or inflectional ending + a monosyllabic prefix or proclitic: **(hlanc)a gefeah** ××⟋

*e*) by a disyllabic ending: **(lār)ena gōd** (*Bēow.*) ××⟋

*f*) by a disyllabic proclitic: **syððan frymð(e)** ××⟋

*g*) by two monosyllabic words: **ðā ðe hwīl(e)** ××⟋

3. Long syllables followed by long or stressed syllables. In addition to the cases instanced under 1. *h* and *i*, which belong under the head of secondary stress,

stressed syllables proper are here to be considered. A long syllable may be followed: —

*a*) by a monosyllabic word: **brād swyrd** ⏑⏑(⏑–)

*b*) when a monosyllable, by the first syllable of a disyllabic word: **dōm āg(on)** ⏑⏑(⏑–)

*c*) when a monosyllable, by the first syllable of a trisyllabic word: **sang hild(elēoð)** ⏑⏑(⏑–)

*d*) when the second syllable of a disyllabic word, by the first syllable of a disyllabic word: **(ge)gān hæfd(on)** ⏑⏑(⏑–)

*e*) when the first syllable of a polysyllabic word (often a compound), by the second syllable of the same word: **nīðheard, burhlēod(um)** ⏑⏑(⏑–)

4. Short stressed syllables followed by short or slurred syllables. A short, stressed syllable may be followed: —

*a*) by a single unstressed syllable, forming with it two metrical syllables: **cyning** ⏑×

*b*) by an unstressed syllable, forming with it the metrical equivalent of a single long syllable, and capable of being substituted for the latter in every position: **æðe(le)** ⏑×(=⏑)

Compounds are metrically regarded, for the most part, as composed of two independent words, but their length, taken in connection with the invariability of their typical forms, restricts the employment of certain compounds to particular metrical schemes. Thus, compounds like **hildenǣdran** are adapted to hemistichs of the trochaic

type, ∠× | ∠× ; those like **burhlēodum** to the type ∠ | ∠ × ×.

**217. Constitution of the hemistich.** — There are five normal types of the hemistich, which may be called respectively (cf. **207**) the 1) trochaic (dactylic), 2) the iambic (anapæstic), 3) the iambic-trochaic, 4) the monosyllabic-bacchic (or -cretic), and the 5) bacchic-monosyllabic. Types 4 and 5 occasionally become trochaic-bacchic and bacchic-trochaic respectively.

Every hemistich ends either in a stressed syllable, or in a stressed syllable followed by a single short syllable (exceptionally by two short syllables, as in **216.** 4. *b*).

Occasionally a greater number of unstressed syllables than three occur together, but without destroying the character of the verse as belonging to one of the foregoing types.

**218. Constitution of the various types.** — 1. The first or trochaic (dactylic) type is formed by the union of two feet like those found in 1. *a* to 1. *g* above. Thus: —

| | |
|---|---|
| **biddan wylle** | ∠× | ∠× |
| **cwicera cynna** | ◡ ∠× | ∠× |
| **ealde ge geonge** | ∠× × | ∠× |

With anacrusis (**208**): —

| | |
|---|---|
| **oððe sundoryrfes** | × × | ∠× | ∠× |

Occasionally, by the introduction of two consecutive long syllables, as in 3. *e*, there occur hemistichs of these forms: —

| | |
|---|---|
| **scildburh scæron** | ⌿ ⌾ \| ⌿ × |
| **helmas and hupseax** | ⌿ × × \| ⌿ ⌾ |

A short stressed syllable is rare: —

| | |
|---|---|
| **ārfæst cyning** | ⌿ × \| ⍀ × |

2. The second or iambic (anapæstic) type is formed by the union of two feet like those found in 2. *a* to 2. *g* above. Thus: —

| | |
|---|---|
| **se hȳhsta dæl** | × ⌿ \| × ⌿ |
| **beraþ linde forð** | × × ⌿ \| × ⌿ |
| **nū ic gumena gehwæne** | × × ⍀ ⍩ \| × × ⍀ ⍩ |

With extra unstressed syllables in the *first* foot (**207.** 4): —

| | |
|---|---|
| **þæt hē in þæt būrgeteld** | × × × × ⌿ \| × ⌿ |

3. The third or iambic-trochaic type is formed by the union of two feet like those found in 1. *a* to 1. *g* and 2. *a* to 2. *g* respectively. Thus: —

| | |
|---|---|
| **and cǫmpwīge** | × ⌿ \| ⌿ × |
| **and gē dōm āgon** | × × ⌿ \| ⌿ × |
| **on ðām sigewǫnge** | × × ⍀ ⍩ \| ⌿ × |

Rarely a short stressed syllable: —

| | |
|---|---|
| **of hornbogan** | × ⌿ \| ⍀ × |
| **æt ðām æscplegan** | × × ⌿ \| ⍀ × |

With extra unstressed syllables in the *first* foot: —

| | |
|---|---|
| **þe hīe ofercuman mihton** | × × × × ⍀ ⍩ \| ⌿ × |

It will be observed that where two long syllables meet in the middle of the hemistich there is such a sequence as in 3. *a* to 3. *e*.

4. The fourth or monosyllabic-bacchic type is formed by the union of a monosyllabic foot with such as are found in 1. *h* and 1. *i* (*a*). Thus: —

**mægð mōdigre** ⟋ | ⟋ ⟍ ×
**hæleð higerōfe** ◡ ⟋ | ◡ ⟋ ⟍ ×

Similarly, the monosyllabic-cretic takes groups like 1. *i* (*β*), 1. *j*, and 1. *k* for the second foot: —

**sang hildelēoð** ⟋ | ⟋ × ⟍

An example of the trochaic-bacchic type (found only in first hemistichs) is: —

**stōpon styrnmōde** ⟋ × | ⟋ ⟍ ×

Where two long syllables belonging to different feet come together in the pure type, we have various cases under 3, the one above being under *c*.

5. The fifth or bacchic-monosyllabic type is formed by the union of such feet as are found in 1. *h* and 1. *i* (*a*) with a monosyllabic foot. Thus: —

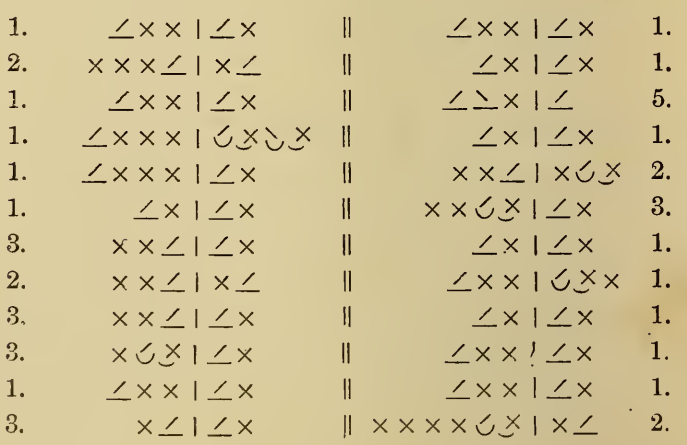
**scīrmǣled swyrd** ⟋ ⟍ × | ⟋
**sigerōfe hæleð** ◡ ⟋ ⟍ × | ◡ ⟋

**219. Frequency of the various types.** — The relative frequency of the various types is indicated by their order in the last paragraph, though Types 2 and 3 are not far from equal. Thus, in the poem of *Judith*, the percentages are, in round numbers, as follows, not counting expanded lines, which mostly belong to Type 1 (**209**): —

| | First Hemistich. | Second Hemistich. |
|---|---|---|
| Type 1 . . . . . | 47 | 47 |
| Type 2 . . . . . | 14 | 26 |
| Type 3 . . . . . | 19 | 19 |
| Type 4 . . . . . | 15 | 5 |
| Type 5 . . . . . | 5 | 3 |

**220. A specimen of scansion.** — The following passage (*Judith* 164–175), accompanied by the scheme of its scansion, will serve to illustrate the metrical principles contained in the foregoing paragraphs: —

**ðrēatum and ðrymmum þrungon and urnon**
**ongēan ðā þēodnes mægð þūsendmælum,**
**ealde ge geonge; æghwylcum wearð**
**męn on ðære medobyrig mōd ārēted,**
**syððan hīe ongēaton þæt wæs Iūdith cumen**
**ęft tō ēðle, and ðā ofostlīce**
**hīe mid ēaðmēdum in forlēton.**
**þā sēo glēawe hēt, golde gefrætewod,**
**hyre ðīnenne þancolmōde**
**þæs hęrewæðan hēafod onwrīðan,**
**and hyt tō bēhðe blōdig ætȳwan**
**þām burhlēodum, hū hyre æt beaduwe gespēow.**



# READER.

# I.

## THE CREATION OF THE WORLD.

(Ælfric's Translation of Genesis, I.–II. 3.)

[In the earlier pages, references will be made to the forms of words as they occur in the Vocabulary, whenever there might be difficulty in discovering the latter. Other references are self-explanatory.

The student should by all means be familiar, before beginning this first selection, with the declension of the third personal pronoun (**81**), the demonstrative **se** (**84**), the first seven ordinals (**78**), the conjugation of **wesan** (**138**) and **weorðan** (**95**, **104**), the prepositions **æfter, bufan, fram, ofer, on, tō**, and **under,** the particle **ðe** (**87.** *d*), and the distinction between the two **ðā**'s (**84.** 1) and the two **ðæt**'s.]

On anginne gescēop[1] God[2] heofonan[3] and eorðan. Sēo[4] eorðe sōðlice[5] wæs[6] īdlu and æmtigu; and ðīestru[7] wæron[6] ofer[8] ðære[4] nēowolnesse[9] brādnesse[10]; and Godes gāst wæs[6] gefęred[11] ofer wæteru.[12] God cwæð[13] ðā, "Geweorðe[14] lēoht"; and lēoht wearð[15] geworht.[16] God geseah[17] ðā ðæt hit[18] gōd

[1] See **gescieppan**, and **18.**

[2] The order is probably determined by the Latin: *creavit Deus.*

[3] **53.** 3.

[4] See **se.**

[5] Lat. *autem.*

[6] See **wesan.**

[7] Plural, like Lat. *tenebræ.*

[8] Governs **brādnesse.**

[9] Genitive, dependent on **brādnesse** (**153.** *i*).

[10] See **166.**

[11] **wæs gefęred** = Lat. *ferebatur.* See **gefęrian.**

[12] See **wæter**, and **47.** 1, 6.

[13] See **cweðan.**

[14] See **geweorðan**, and **193.** *a.*

[15] See **weorðan.**

[16] **Wearð geworht** = *facta est.* See **gewyrcean.**

[17] See **gesēon.**

[18] See **hē.**

wæs[1]; and hē gedǣlde[2] ðæt[3] lēoht fram ðǣm[3] ðīestrum.[4] And hēt[5] ðæt[3] lēoht Dæg, and ðā[3] ðīestru[4] Niht. Ðā wæs[1] geworden[6] ǣfen and morgen ān dæg.[7]

God cwæð[8] ðā ęft,[9] "Geweorðe[10] nū fæstnes tōmiddes ðǣm[3] wæterum,[11] and tōtwǣme[12] ðā[3] wætéru[11] fram ðǣm wæterum." And God geworhte ðā fæstnesse, and tōtwǣmde ðā wæteru ðe[13] wǣron under ðǣre fæstnesse fram ðǣm ðe[13] wǣron bufan ðǣre fæstnesse; hit wæs ðā swā gedōn.[14] And God hēt ðā fæstnesse Heofonan.[15] And wæs ðā geworden ǣfen and morgen ōðer[16] dæg.

God ðā sōðlice[17] cwæð, "Bēon[18] gegāderode[19] ðā wæteru ðe[13] sind[1] under ðǣre heofonan, and ætēowie[20] drȳgnes[21]"; hit wæs ðā swā gedōn. And God gecīegde[22] ðā drȳgnesse Eorðan[23]; and ðǣra[3] wætera gegaderunga[24] hē hēt Sǣs[25]; God geseah ðā ðæt hit gōd[26] wæs. And cwæð,[27] "Sprytte[28] sēo eorðe grōwende[29] gærs,[30] and sǣd wyrcende,[31] and æppel-

[1] See **wesan**. [2] See **gedǣlan**.
[3] See **se**. [4] See p. 123, note 7.
[5] See **hātan**, and **189**, note.
[6] **Wæs geworden** = *factum est*. See **geweorðan**.
[7] Lat. *dies unus*.
[8] See **cweðan**.
[9] Lat. *quoque*.
[10] See **geweorðan**, and **193**. *a*.
[11] See **wæter**, and **47**. 1, 6.
[12] See **tōtwǣman**.
[13] See **87**. *d*.
[14] Past part. of **gedōn**.
[15] See **173**.
[16] Lat. *secundus*.
[17] Lat. *vero*.
[18] See **193**. *a*.
[19] See **gegaderian**, and **62**.
[20] See **ætēowian**.
[21] Lat. *arida*, Gr. *ξηρά*.
[22] See **gecīegan**.
[23] See **173**.
[24] Acc. plur.
[25] Acc. plur.; see **sǣ**.
[26] See **4**.
[27] Cf. Mod. Eng. *quoth*.
[28] See **spryttan**, and **193**. *a*. Lat. *germinet*.
[29] See **grōwan**, and **61**.
[30] See **31**.
[31] See **wyrcean**, and **61**. **Grōwende gærs and sǣd wyrcende** = *herbam virentem et facientem semen*.

bǣre[1] trēow, wǣstm[2] wyrcende æfter his cynne,[3] ðæs sǣd sīe[4] on him[5] selfum[6] ofer eorðan"; hit wæs ðā swā gedōn. And sēo eorðe forðātēah[7] grōwende wyrt and sǣd berende[8] be hiere[9] cynne, and trēow wǣstm wyrcende, and gehwilc[10] sǣd[11] hæbbende æfter his hīwe[12]; God geseah ðā ðæt hit gōd wæs. And wæs geworden æfen and męrgen[13] se ðridda[14] dæg.

God cwæð ðā sōðlice,[15] "Bēon nū lēoht on[16] ðǣre heofonan[17] fæstnesse, and tōdǣlen[18] dæg and niht, and bēon tō[13] tācnum,[19] and tō tīdum,[20] and tō dagum,[21] and tō gēarum.[22] And hīe scīnen[23] on ðǣre heofonan fæstnesse, and ālīehten ðā eorðan"; hit wæs ðā swā geworden. And God geworhte twā[24] miclu[25] lēoht; ðæt māre[26] lēoht tō ðæs dæges līehtinge,[27] and ðæt lǣsse lēoht tō ðǣre niht[28] līehtinge; and steorran hē geworhte. And gesęttе[29] hīe on ðǣre heofonan,

[1] Lat. *pomiferum*, Gr. κάρπιμον. See **146**.

[2] Acc. sing., after **wyrcende**.

[3] See **cynn**.

[4] See **195**.

[5] Dat. sing.

[6] See **self**.

[7] Lat. *protulit*.

[8] Agrees with **wyrt**. See **beran**.

[9] Why **hiere**, instead of **his**?

[10] Nom. sing.

[11] Acc. sing.

[12] Lat. *speciem*. See **hiw**.

[13] Note the different form, — **męrgen** instead of **morgen**.

[14] See **78**.

[15] Lat. *autem*.

[16] See **166**.

[17] Gen. sing.

[18] See **tōdǣlan**.

[19] See **tācen**, and **24**.

[20] See **tīd**, and **24**.

[21] See **dæg**, and **24**.

[22] See **gēar**, and **24**.

[23] See **193**. *a*. Write the opt. pret. plur. of this verb.

[24] See **twēgen**.

[25] See **micel**.

[26] See **66**.

[27] What is the relation of the stem-vowel to that of **lēoht**?

[28] For **niht**, instead of **nieht**, see **19**. See **153**. *d*.

[29] See **gesęttan**, and **189**, note.

ðæt hīe scinen[1] ofer eorðan, and gīemden ðæs dæges[2] and ðǣre niht, and tōdǣlden lēoht and ðīestru; God geseah ðā ðæt hit gōd wæs. And wæs geworden ǣfen and męrgen se fēorða[3] dæg.

God cwæð ēac swilce,[4] "Tēon nū ðā wæteru forð[5] swimmendu cynn cucu[6] on līfe,[7] and flēogendu[8] cynn ofer eorðan under ðǣre heofonan fæstnesse." And God gescēop ðā[9] ðā miclan hwalas,[10] and eall libbendu fisccynn and styriendlicu,[11] ðe[12] ðā[13] wæteru tugon[14] forð[15] on hiera hīwum, and eall flēogendu cynn æfter hiera cynne; God geseah ðā ðæt hit gōd wæs. And blētsode[16] hīe, ðus cweðende,[17] "Weaxað,[18] and bēoð gemanigfielde,[19] and gefyllað[20] ðǣre sǣ wæteru, and ðā fuglas bēon[21] gemanigfielde ofer eorðan." And ðā wæs geworden ǣfen and męrgen se fīfta dæg.

God cwæð ēac swilce, "Lǣde[22] sēo eorðe forð[23] cucu nīetenu[24] on hiera cynne, and crēopendu[25] cynn and dēor æfter hiera hīwum"; hit wæs ðā swā geworden. And God geworhte ðǣre eorðan dēor æfter hiera hīwum, and ðā nīetenu and eall crēopendu cynn on hierà cynne; God geseah ðā ðæt hit gōd

[1] Opt. pret. = Lat. *lucerent.* What would be the opt. pres. ?
[2] See **156.** *f.*
[3] See **78.**
[4] **Ēac swilce** = *etiam.*
[5] *Producant* = **tēon . . . forð.**
[6] See **cucu.**
[7] See **līf.**
[8] See **flēogan**, and **61.**
[9] Adverb; see **84.** 1.
[10] See **hwæl.**
[11] Lat. *motabilem.*
[12] Acc.
[13] Nom. plur.
[14] See **tēon.**
[15] **Tugon forð** = *produxerunt.*
[16] See **blētsian**, and **33.**
[17] See **cweðan.**
[18] See **weaxan**, and **24.**
[19] Past part. in nom. plur.
[20] See **gefyllan.**
[21] See **193.** *a.*
[22] See **lǣdan.**
[23] **Lǣde . . . forð** = *producat.*
[24] See **nīeten.**
[25] See **crēopan.**

wæs. And cwæð, "Uton[1] wyrcean mann tō andlīcnesse and tō ūrre[2] gelīcnesse, and hē sīe[3] ofer ðā fiscas,[4] and ofer ðā fuglas, and ofer ðā dēor, and ofer ealle gesceafta,[5] and ofer eall ðā crēopendan ðe styriað[6] ofer eorðan." God gescēop ðā mann tō his andlīcnesse, tō Godes andlīcnesse hē gescēop hine; werhādes[7] and wīfhādes hē gescēop hīe.

And God hīe blētsode, and cwæð, "Weaxað, and bēoð gemanigfielde, and gefyllað ðā eorðan and gewieldað[8] hīe, and habbað[9] on ēowrum[10] gewealde ðære sǣ fiscas, and ðære lyfte fuglas, and eall nīetenu ðe styriað ofer eorðan." God cwæð ðā, "Efne ic forgeaf[11] ēow[12] eall gærs and wyrta sǣd[13] berenda ofer eorðan, and eall trēowu, ðā-ðe[13a] habbað sǣd on him selfum hiera āgnes cynnes, ðæt hīe bēon ēow[14] tō męte; and eallum nīetenum and eallum fugolcynne and eallum ðǣm ðe styriað on eorðan, on ðǣm-ðe[15] is libbende[16] līf,[17] ðæt hīe hæbben him tō[18] gereordianne"; hit wæs ðā swā gedōn. And God geseah eall ðā ðing[19] ðe hē geworhte, and hīe wǣron swīðe gōd. Wæs[20] ðā geworden ǣfen and męrgen se siexta dæg.

[1] = *Let us.*

[2] See **83.** **Ūrre** properly belongs to both nouns; Lat. *ad imaginem et similitudinem nostram.*

[3] See **wesan.**

[4] See **fisc.**

[5] See **gesceaft.**

[6] See **styrian.**

[7] See **153.** *f.*

[8] What is the relation of the stem diphthong to that of **geweald**?

[9] See **habban.**

[10] See **83.**

[11] See **forgiefan.**

[12] See **ðū**, and **164.** *a.*

[13] See **24.** [13a] See **87.** *b.*

[14] See **161.** 2. Auth. Vers.: 'to you it shall be for meat.'

[15] = *whom.*

[16] See **libban.**

[17] **Libbende līf** = *anima viva.*

[18] See **gereordian**, and **200.**

[19] Acc. plur. Why like the singular?

[20] See **189.** 1.

Eornostlice[1] ðā wǣron fullfręmede[2] heofonas and eorðe and eall hiera frætwung.[3] And God ðā gefylde[4] on ðone seofoðan dæg[5] his weorc[6] ðe hē geworhte, and hē geręste[7] hine[8] on ðone seofoðan dæg fram eallum ðǣm weorce ðe hē gefręmede. And God geblētsode ðone seofoðan dæg and hine gehālgode,[9] for-ðon-ðe hē on ðone dæg geswāc[10] his weorces[11] ðe hē gescēop[12] tō wyrceanne.[13]

[1] Lat. *igitur*.

[2] See **fullfręmman**. Lat. *perfecti*.

[3] Lat. *ornatus*, Gr. κόσμος; *array*, or *splendid array*, would perhaps express the original sense.

[4] Lat. *complevit*.

[5] Acc. where we should expect dat.; Lat. *die septimo*. See **172**. 1.

[6] Sing., as the Latin shows.

[7] See **geręstan**. Why but one **t** in the preterit?

[8] See **184**. *b*.

[9] See **gehālgian**. From **hālig**; for loss of **i** see **23**. The root is **hāl**; after umlaut of the stem vowel, what would this syllable become, and in what words is it found?

[10] See **geswīcan**.

[11] **His weorces** = *ab omni opere suo*. See **156**. *k*.

[12] **gescēop tō wyrceanne** = *creavit ut faceret*; Marg. of Auth Vers., 'created to make.' See **200**

[13] **Wyrc-** not umlaut of **weorc-**. The relation here is an ablaut one (**22**): **werc** and **wurc** (**worc**); cf. Gr. ἔργον and ὄργανον.

## II.

## TRADES AND OCCUPATIONS.

(From Ælfric's Colloquy, probably prepared, like his Grammar, for the instruction of English youths in Latin. There are two MSS. — one in the British Museum, the other at Oxford. The Oxford MS. has the rubric: *Hanc sententiam Latini sermonis olim Alfricus abbas composuit, qui meus fuit magister, sed tamen ego, Ælfric Bata, multas postea huic addidi appendices.* This is virtually Ælfric Bata's sole title to fame. The Old English, like the Latin, is probably of the late tenth century.)

### *The Merchant and his Merchandise.*

*Teacher.* Hwæt sægst[1] ðū, mangere[2]?

*Merchant.* Ic sęcge ðæt behēfe[3] ic eom ge[4] cyninge[5] and ealdormannum,[6] and weligum, and eallum folce.

[1] See **123**.

[2] Lat. *mercator.* Other Old English terms for *merchant* are **cīepa** and **cīepmann**. From a collateral form of the latter, **cēapmann,** without umlaut, is derived Mod. Eng. *chapman.* How is *chap-* related to *cheap?* See the *New English Dictionary* (*New Eng. Dict.*) under these words.

[3] Lat. *utilis.* Cf. the Mod. Eng. noun *behoof.*

[4] **ge . . . and** = Lat. *et . . . et.*

[5] Carlyle (*Sartor Resartus*, Bk. 3, Chap. 7) has the following: "*König* (King), anciently *Könning,* means Ken-ning (Cunning), or which is the same thing, Canning. Ever must the Sovereign of Mankind be fitly entitled King." On the other hand Gummere (*Germanic Origins*, p. 270): "At the head of the family we found, of course, the father; and at the head of the state we naturally look for the king. The word 'king' means the child or son of the tribe, its representative or even creation; man of race, man of rank. Gradually the king ceases to be re-

[6] Lat. *ducibus.*

*Teacher.* And hū?

*Merchant.* Ic āstīge mīn scip mid hlæstum[1] mīnum, and rōwe[2] ofer sælice[3] dælas,[4] and cīepe[5] mīn ðing, and bycge ðing[6] dēorwierðu,[6] ðā on ðisum lande ne bēoð āçennede, and ic hit tōgelæde[7] ēow hider mid miclum plihte[8] ofer sæ, and hwīlum forlidennesse ic ðolie mid lyre ealra ðinga mīnra, unēaðe[9] cwic[9] ætberstende.[9]

*Teacher.* Hwilc ðing gelætst ðū ūs?

*Merchant.* Pællas[10] and sīdan,[11] dēorwierðe gimmas and gold, seldcūð[12] rēaf,[13] and wyrtgemang,[14] wīn and ęle, elpes[15] bān[15] and mæsling,[16] ær[17] and tin, swefel and glæs, and ðyllices[18] fela.

garded as a creation of his race; his ancestry is pushed back to the gods, and his right is quite above all sanctions of popular choice or approval." Which of these views is confirmed by etymology?

[1] Lat. *mercibus.*

[2] Lat. *navigo.*

[3] Lat. *marinas.*

[4] Lat. *partes.*

[5] Lat. *vendo.*

[6] Lat. *res pretiosas.*

[7] Lat. *adduco.*

[8] Lat. *periculo.* Mod. Eng. form of **pliht**?

[9] Lat. *vix vivus evadens.* Note the love for alliteration, even in the Latin.

[10] Lat. *purpurum.* Cf. Spenser (*F. Q.* 2. 9. 37): "In a long *purple pall.*"

[11] Lat. *sericum.* From this Latin word (indicating what country?) comes OE. **seol(o)c**. What Mod. Eng. word from the latter (or the equivalent Old Norse (ON.) *silki*)? Cf. Skeat's *Principles of English Etymology* (I.), p. 440 (Skeat, *Prin.*). Other words in which Eng. *l* = Lat. *r* (through OE.) are *plum* = Lat. *prunus; purple* = Lat. *purpura; turtle* = Lat. *turtur.*

[12] Lat. *varias,* but this looks like a mistake. *Varius* usually = **mis(sen)lic** or **manigfeald**.

[13] Lat. *vestes.*

[14] Lat. *pigmenta.* Translate, *spice.*

[15] Lat. *ebur.*

[16] Lat. *aurichalcum.*

[17] Lat. *aes.*

[18] See **154**. *a.*

*Teacher.* Wilt[1] ðū sęllan ðing ðīn hēr eall[2] swā[2] ðū hīe gebohtest ðǣr?

*Merchant.* Ic nelle. Hwæt ðonne mē frȩmede[3] gedeorf[4] mīn? Ac ic wille hīe cīepan hēr luflicor[5] ðonne ic gebycge ðǣr, ðæt[6] sum gestrēon[7] mē[8] ic begiete,[9] ðanan ic mē āfēde,[10] and mīn wīf, and mīnne sunu.

## *The Choice of Occupations.*

*Teacher.* Hwæt sægst ðū, wīsa? Hwilc cræft[11] ðē is[12] geðūht[13] betweox ðās furðra[14] wesan?

*Counsellor.* Ic sęcge ðē, mē is[15] geðūht[15] Godes ðēowdōm[16] betweoh ðās cræftas ealdorscipe[17] healdan, swā-swā hit is[12] gerǣd on godspelle, "Fyrmest sēceað rīce Godes, and rihtwīsnesse[18] his, and ðās ðing eall bēoð tōgeīecte[19] ēow."

*Teacher.* And hwilc ðē is[12] geðūht betweox woruldcræftas[20] healdan ealdordōm?[17]

*Counsellor.* Eorðtilð,[21] for-ðām se ierðling[22] ūs ealle fēt.[23]

[1] See **139**.

[2] = *just as.*

[3] See **193**. *b*.

[4] Lat. *labor.*

[5] Lat. *carius.* Possibly miswritten for **lēoflicor**. A literal translation, not regarding the sense; **dēorra** or **dīerra**, from **dēore** or **dīere**, *dear*, would be more normal.

[6] See **84**. 1.

[7] Lat. *lucrum.* Acc. sing.

[8] See **161**. 1.

[9] Lat. *adquiram.* See **196**. *f*.

[10] See **195**.

[11] Lat. *ars.*

[12] Conjectural; not in the MSS.

[13] See **ðyncean**.

[14] Lat. *prior.* Nom. sing.

[15] Lat. *videtur.*

[16] See **143** and **149**.

[17] Lat. *primatum.*

[18] See **144**.

[19] Lat. *adjicientur.* See **tōgeīecan**, and **62**.

[20] Lat. *artes seculares.* MS. **cræftas woruld**.

[21] Lat. *agricultura.* See **147**.

[22] Lat. *arator.*

[23] See **fēdan**.

*Se smið sægð:*

Hwanan ðǣm ierðlinge sulhscear[1] oððe culter,[2] ðe nā gāde[3] hæfð būtan of cræfte mīnum? Hwanan fiscere[4] angel, oððe scēowyrhtan ǣl, oððe sēamere nǣdl? Nis hit of mīnum geweorce?

*Se geðeahtend[5] andswarað:*

Sōð, witodlice, sægst ðū[6]; ac eallum ūs lēofre is wīcian[7] mid ðǣm ierðlinge ðonne mid ðē, for-ðām se ierðling sęleð ūs hlāf[8] and dręnc. Ðū, hwæt sęlest ðū[6] ūs on smiððan ðīnre būtan īserne[9] fȳrspearcan,[9] and swēginga[10] bēatendra[11] slęcgea[12] and blāwendra bęlga?

*Se trēowwyrhta[13] sægð:*

Hwilc ēower[14] ne notað[15] cræfte[16] mīnum — ðonne hūs,[17] and mislicu fatu, and scipu ēow[18] eallum ic wyrce[19]?

*Se smið*[20] *andwyrt:*

Ēalā trēowwyrhta, for[21] hwȳ[21] swā spricst ðū, ðonne[22]

[1] MS. **sylanscear.**

[2] Lat. *culter.*

[3] See **24.**

[4] See **161.**

[5] Lat. *consiliarius.*

[6] Not in MS.

[7] Lat. *hospitari;* see **199.** *a.*

[8] Lat. *panem.* **Brēad,** which is found in Old English, scarcely has any other sense than that of 1) *fragment,* 2) *broken bread.* Later it acquires its modern meaning. See *New Eng. Dict.,* s.v. *bread.*

[9] Lat. *ferreas scintillas.*

[10] Lat. *sonitus.*

[11] Lat. *tundentium.*

[12] Lat. *malleorum.*

[13] Lat. *lignarius.* See **147.**

[14] See **154.** *b.*

[15] Lat. *utitur.*

[16] See **164.** *o.*

[17] Lat. *domos.*

[18] See **161.**

[19] Lat. *fabrico.*

[20] Lat. *ferrarius.* MS. **golsmið** (*sic*).

[21] Lat. *cur;* see **175.**

[22] Lat. *cum.* Other temporal conjunctions used to denote cause are **nū** and **ðā.** Has Mod. Eng. any similar idiom?

ne furðum[1] ān ðȳrel būtan cræfte mīnum ðū ne[2] meaht[3] dōn[4]?

*Se geðeahtend sægð:*

Ēalā, gefēran[5] and gōde wyrhtan! Uton tōweorpan hwætlicor[6] ðās gęflitu,[7] and sīe[8] sibb and geðwærnes[9] betweoh ūs, and fręmme[10] ānra[11] gehwilc[11] ōðrum[12] on cræfte his, and geðwærien[13] simle mid ðæm ierðlinge, ðær[14] wē bigleofan[15] ūs, and fōdor horsum ūrum habbað. And ðis geðeaht ic sęlle eallum wyrhtum, ðæt ānra[16] gehwilc cræft his geornlice begange,[17] for-ðām sē, ðe cræft[18] his forlæt, hē[19] bið forlæten fram ðæm cræfte. Swā-hwæðer[20] ðū sīe — swā[21] mæsseprēost,[22] swā munuc,[23] swā ceorl,[24] swā cęmpa[25] — begā[26] ðē selfne on ðisum, and bēo ðæt ðū eart; for-ðām micel hīenð[27] and sceamu hit is męnn nellan[28] wesan ðæt hē is and ðæt hē wesan sceal.[29]

[1] Lat. *saltem.*

[2] See **183.**

[3] Lat. *vales.*

[4] Lat. *facere.*

[5] Lat. *socii;* see **152.**

[6] Lat. *citius;* used almost in the sense of the positive; see **76.**

[7] Lat. *contentiones.*

[8] See **189.** 1.

[9] Lat. *concordia.*

[10] Lat. *prosit.*

[11] Lat. *unusquisque.* MS. **urum gehwylcum.**

[12] See **160.**

[13] Lat. *conveniamus.*

[14] Lat. *ubi.*

[15] Lat. *victum.*

[16] See **154.** *b.*

[17] See **194.** *b.*

[18] Acc. sing.

[19] Lat. *ipse.*

[20] Lat. *sive.*

[21] **Swā . . . swā** = Lat. *sive . . . seu.*

[22] Lat. *sacerdos.*

[23] Lat. *monachus*, from which the OE. word is derived. For the **u** cf. OE. **munt** = Lat. *montem.*

[24] Lat. *laicus.*

[25] Lat. *miles.*

[26] MS. **bega oþþe behwyrf.** Lat. *exerce.*

[27] Lat. *damnum.*

[28] MS. **nelle.** See **199.** *a.*

[29] Lat. *debet.*

## III.

## THE DAY OF JUDGMENT.

(From Ælfric's Homilies, vol. 2, pp. 106–108; being a paraphrase of Matt. 25:31–46.)

Witodlice[1] Mannes Bearn cymð[2] on his mægenðrymme, and ealle ęnglas[3] samod mid him tō ðǣm miclan[4] dōme.[5] Ðonne sitt[6] hē on ðǣm setle his mægenðrymnesse,[7] and bēoð gegaderode ætforan him ealle ðēoda,[8] and hē tōscǣt[9] hīe on twā, swā-swā scēaphierde[10] tōscǣt scēap[11] fram gātum.[12] Ðonne gelōgað hē ðā scēap on his swīðran[13] hand, and ðā gāt[14] on his winstran. Ðonne cwið[15] se Cyning Crīst tō ðǣm ðe on his swīðran hand standað, "Cumað gē blētsode[16] mīnes Fæder,[17] and geāgniað ðæt

[1] Lat. *autem*.

[2] See **cuman**.

[3] See **ęngel**. What is the history of this word before it entered Old English?

[4] See **55**.

[5] In what modern compound does this meaning of **dōm** persist?

[6] See **sittan**.

[7] See **153**. *f*.

[8] Nom. plur.

[9] See **tōscēadan**. Account for the vowel **ǣ**.

[10] In compound words, the vowel of the first syllable is apt to be shortened in Mod. Eng., the more general principle being that shortening is apt to occur before an accumulation of consonants. Besides **scēaphierde**, *shepherd*, note *e.g.* **wīsdōm**, *wisdom*.

[11] Plural; account for the form.

[12] See **24**.

[13] See **swīð**.

[14] See **52**.

[15] See **cweðan**. What is the ind. pret. 3d sing.?

[16] Past part. in nom. plur.

[17] See **43**. 8.

rīce[1] ðe ēow[2] gegearcod wæs fram frymðe middangeardes. Mē[3] hyngrede,[4] and gē mē gereordedon; mē[3] ðyrste, and gē mē[5] scęncton; ic wæs cuma,[6] and gē mē underfēngon[7] on ēowrum giesthūsum; ic wæs nacod, and gē mē scrȳddon[8]; ic wæs geuntrumod, and gē mē genēosedon; ic wæs on cwearterne, and gē cōmon tō mē and mē gefrēfredon.[9]" Ðonne andswariað ðā rihtwīsan[10] Crīste[11] and cweðað, "Dryhten, hwonne gesāwe[12] wē ðē hungrigne, and wē ðē gereordedon? oððe ðurstigne, and wē ðē scęncton? oððe hwonne wǣre ðū cuma,[13] and wē ðē underfēngon? oððe hwonne gesāwe[13a] wē ðē untrumne oððe on cwearterne, and wē ðē genēosedon?" Ðonne andwyrt se Cyning ðǣm rihtwīsum ðisum wordum,[14] "Sōð[15] ic ēow sęcge, swā[16] lange swā[17] gē dydon ānum, ðisum lǣstan,[18] on mīnum

[1] Still found as the last syllable of *bishopric*.

[2] See **81**.

[3] See **190**.

[4] What is the relation of the stem-vowel to that of **hungrig**? See **90**.

[5] Dat.

[6] Lat. *hospes*.

[7] See **underfōn**.

[8] What peculiar senses has the verb *shroud* in Spenser, Shakespeare, or Milton? What form would **scrȳdan** most naturally assume in Mod. Eng. (**24**)? How can the Mod. Eng. form of the verb *shroud* be accounted for?

[9] What is the relation of the stem-vowel to that of **frōfor**? See **90**.

[10] Nom. plur. See **181**.

[11] Dat.

[12] See **gesēon**.

[13] See **150**. [13a] See **95**, note.

[14] See **174**. *b*.

[15] Lat. *amen*, Eng. *verily*.

[16] = *so*.

[17] = *as*. Notice this early use of *so long as* (= Lat. *quamdiu*) in the sense of *inasmuch as*.

[18] The WS. translation of the Gospel has **ānum of ðisum mīnum lǣstum gebrōðrum**, which is much more literal. In Ælfric's version we must understand **lǣstan** to be in apposition with **ānum**. See **66**.

naman, gē hit dydon mē selfum.[1]" Đonne cwið hē ęft tō ðǣm synfullum, ðe on his winstran healfe standað, "Gewītað fram mē, gē āwiergdan, intō ðǣm ēcean fȳre, ðe is gegearcod ðǣm dēofle[2] and his āwiergdum gāstum. Mē hyngrede, and gē mē ǣtes[3] forwierndon; mē ðyrste, and gē mē drincan ne sealdon; ic wæs cuma, and gē mē underfōn noldon; ic wæs nacod, nolde[4] gē mē wǣda[5] tīðian[6]; ic wæs untrum and on cwearterne, nolde[4] gē mē genēosian." Đonne andswariað[7] ðā unrihtwīsan mānfullan,[8] "Lā lēof, hwonne gesāwe[4] wē ðē hungrigne,[9] oððe ðurstigne, oððe cuman, oððe nacodne, oððe geuntrumodne, oððe on cwearterne, and wē ðē noldon ðēnian[6]"? Đonne andwyrt se Cyning him, and cwið, "Sōð ic ēow sęcge, swā lange swā gē forwierndon ānum of ðisum lȳtlum, and noldon[10] him on mīnum naman tīðian, swā lange[11] gē mē selfum his[3] forwierndon." Đonne farað ðā uncystgan[12] and ðā unrihtwīsan intō ēcre cwicsūsle, mid dēofle and his āwiergdum ęnglum; and ðā rihtwīsan gecierrað fram ðǣm dōme intō ðǣm ēcean līfe.

[1] **Not** = *myself;* **self** agrees with **mē**. The Latin has no original here for **self**; Ælfric adds it to strengthen the expression.

[2] See **161**.

[3] See **159**.

[4] See **95**, note.

[5] See **159**. What is the Mod. Eng. form of this word?

[6] See **28**; **164**. *e*.

[7] How is the **and-** of this word related to the *anti-* of Eng. *antiphon?*

[8] See **4**.

[9] See **173**.

[10] See **139**.

[11] Correlative with the **swā lange swā** of the preceding clause.

[12] See **55**; **57**. 3; **181**.

# IV.

## BEDE'S DESCRIPTION OF BRITAIN.

(Eccl. Hist., Bk. I., Chap. I.)

[Ælfric testifies to a translation of Bede's History having been made by Alfred, and so does William of Malmesbury; besides, the MS. of the Cambridge University Library twice has this couplet,—

Historicus quondam fecit me Beda latinum,
Ælfred rex Saxo transtulit ille pius.

On the other hand, it has such undoubted Anglian peculiarities that it has been suggested (by Miller, its latest editor) that "the version may have been executed by Mercian scholars under orders from the king," and that it was possibly made at Lichfield.

The distinction between English idiom and imitation of the Latin should be remarked, wherever possible. Moberly's edition of the Ecclesiastical History, which contains scholarly and interesting notes, may profitably be compared.]

Breoton[1] is gārsecges[2] īgland, ðæt wæs īu gēara Albion hāten. . . . Hit is welig—ðis īgland—on wæstmum and on þrēowum missenlicra cynna,[3] and hit is gescrēpe on læswe scēapa[4] and nēata[5]; and on sumum stōwum wīngeardas

Britannia oceani insula, cui quondam Albion nomen fuit. . . . Opima frugibus atque arboribus insula, et alendis apta pecoribus ac jumentis; vineas etiam quibusdam in locis germinans: sed et avium ferax terra marique gene-

[1] Moberly says: "This description of Britain is pieced from the accounts of Plinius, Solinus, Orosius, Dio Cassius, and Gildas."

[2] See **153**. *h*.

[3] See **153**. *f*.

[4] See **153**. *d*.

[5] What Mod. Eng. word represents this? What OE. noun-stem contains the umlaut of this one?

grōwað. Swilce ēac ðēos eorðe is berende missenlicra fugla[1] and sæwihta. . . . And hēr bēoð oft fangene[1a] sēolas, and hranas, and męreswīn; and hēr bēoð oft numene[2] missenlicra[3] cynna weolocscielle[4] and muscule, and on ðæm bēoð oft gemētte[5] ðā bętstan[6] meregreotan[7] ælces hīwes. And hēr bēoð swīðe genyhtsume weolocas, of ðæm bið geworht se weolocrēada tęlg, ðone ne mæg sunne blæcan[8] nē ne regn[9] wierdan; ac, swā hē bið ieldra,[10] swā hē fægerra bið. Hit hæfð[11] ēac — ðis land — sealtsēaðas; and hit hæfð hāt wæter, and hāt baðu,[12] ælcre ielde[13] and hāde, ðurh tōdæleda stōwa,[14] gescrēpe.

ris diversi. . . . Capiuntur autem sæpissime et vituli marini, et delphines, necnon et ballenæ: exceptis variorum generibus conchyliorum; in quibus sunt et musculæ, quibus inclusam sæpe margaritam, omnis quidem coloris optimam inveniunt. . . . Sunt et cochleæ satis superque abundantes, quibus tinctura coccinei coloris conficitur, cujus rubor pulcherrimus nullo unquam solis ardore, nulla valet pluviarum injuria pallescere; sed quo vetustior est, eo solet esse venustior. Habet fontes salinarum, habet et fontes calidos, et ex eis fluvios balnearum calidarum, omni ætati et sexui, per distincta loca, juxta suum cui-

[1] This genitive after a present participle is exceptional; cf. the Latin for an explanation (**155**).

[1a] See **fōn**. [2] See **niman**.

[3] See p. 130, n. 12. [4] Nom. plur.

[5] From what noun is the stem of **mētan** derived? See **14**.

[6] See **66**.

[7] This word is adapted from the Latin, but simulates a compound of **męre**, *sea*, and **grēot**, *earth, gravel*.

[8] From what adjective is **blæcan** derived (**17**)?

[9] To what might **regn** contract (**28**)?

[10] See **65**.

[11] See **121**.

[12] See **bæð**.

[13] Governed by **gescrēpe**. See **165**.

[14] What does *-stow* mean in a proper name like *Chepstow*?

Swilce hit is ēac berende[1] on węcga ōrum — āres and īsernes, lēades and seolfres. Hēr bið ēac gemētt gagates; sē stān bið blæc gimm; gif man[2] hine on fȳr dēð,[3] ðonne flēoð ðǣr næddran[4] onweg.[5] Wæs ðis īgland[6] ēac geweorðod mid ðǣm æðelestum ceastrum[7] — ānes wana ðrītigum[8] — ðā-ðe[9] wǣron mid weallum,[10] and torrum,[10] and geatum, and ðǣm trumestum locum getimbrede, būtan ōðrum lǣssan[11] unrīme ceastra.

And for-ðām-ðe ðis īgland under ðǣm selfum norðdǣle middangeardes nīehst līð,[12] and lēohte niht on sumera

que modum accommodos. . . . Quæ etiam venis metallorum, æris, ferri, et plumbi et argenti fæcunda, gignit et lapidem gagatem plurimum optimumque: est autem nigrogemmeus et ardens igni admotus, incensus serpentes fugat. . . . Erat et civitatibus quondam viginti et octo nobilissimis insignita, præter castella innumera, quæ et ipsa muris, turribus, portis, ac seris erant instructa firmissimis

Et quia prope sub ipso septentrionali vertice mundi jacet, lucidas æstate noctes habet; ita ut, medio sæpe tempore

[1] Cf. the construction of this word with that above, p. 138, l. 1.

[2] See **89.** *e.* [3] See **140.**

[4] How did **næddre** become **adder**? Cf. OE. **nafogār**, Mod. Eng. *auger*. See Skeat, *Prin.*, p. 216.

[5] There is a parallel form, **āweg**, already in OE. The **ā-** is a contraction of **on**. Mention other Mod. Eng. words in which the *a-* represents *on*.

[6] How does the Mod. Eng. *island* acquire its *s*? See Skeat, *Prin.*, p. 380, and note 3, next page.

[7] From Lat. *castra*. Cf. the *-caster*, *-chester*, of Lancaster, Winchester, etc. Some of the more important of these cities were York, Colchester, Winchester, Canterbury, and Chester (see Moberly, p. 7).

[8] Cf. **78.** 5; **158.** The number does not correspond to the Latin.

[9] Does this relative have the same antecedent as in the Latin?

[10] **Weall** is from Lat. *vallum*; **torr**, from Lat. *turris*.

[11] Agrees with **unrīme**.

[12] See **licgan**, and **28.**

hæfð — swā ðæt oft on midre niht geflit cymð[1] ðǣm behealdendum, hwæðer hit sīe ðe[2] ǣfenglōmung, ðe on morgen dagung — is on ðǣm sweotol, ðæt ðis īgland[3] hæfð micle[4] lęngran dagas on sumera,[5] and swā ēac niht[6] on wintra,[5] ðonne ðā sūðdǣlas middangeardes.[7]

noctis in quæstionem veniat intuentibus, utrum crepusculum adhuc permaneat vespertinum, an jam advenerit matutinum . . . : unde etiam plurimæ longitudinis habet dies æstate, sicut et noctes contra in bruma.

[1] See **cuman**.

[2] Lat. *utrum* . . . *an* = **ðe** . . . **ðe** (**202.** *b*).

[3] **Īg-** represents **īe-**, the umlaut of **ēa**, *water*. **Ēa** goes back to the same Indo-European root as Lat. *aqua*.

[4] See **178**.

[5] See **43.** 5.

[6] **Niht** belongs under **52.** It has already experienced umlaut in the nominative, and hence does not change in the acc. plur.

[7] This last clause is supplied by the translator.

## V.

## ÆTHELWALD CALMS THE SEA.[1]

(Bede, Eccl. Hist., Bk. V., Chap. I.)

Ic cōm mid twæm[2] ōðrum brōðrum tō Farne,[3] ðæm īglande. Wolde ic sprecan mid ðone[4] ārwierðan fæder Æðelwald. Mid-ðȳ ic ðā wæs mid his gesprece wel gerētt,[5] and mē blētsunge bæd, and wē hām[6] hwurfon,[7] ðā wē ðā wæron on midre[8] ðære sæ, ðā[9] wæs samninga heofones smyltnes tōsliten, ðære-ðe[10] wē ær lidon[11] ūt; and swā micel winter[12] ūs onhrēas,[13] and swā rēðe storm cōm, ðæt wē nē mid segle nē mid rōwnesse āwiht framgān[14] meahton, nē wē ūs nōhtes[15] ęlles wēndon nefne

[1] This story was related by Abbot Guthfrith to Bede. Æthelwald succeeded Cuthbert as the hermit of Farne, dwelling there from 687 to 699, when he died.

[2] See **79.**

[3] Two miles from Bamborough. One of the islands of the group was the scene of Grace Darling's heroism in 1858. That inhabited by Æthelwald was the largest.

[4] The acc. with **mid** is exceptional (**172.** 1).

[5] See **113.**

[6] Acc. sing. as adv.; Lat. *domum.*

[7] Lat. *rediremus.*

[8] See **166.** i.

[9] To **ūt** = *interrupta est serenitas qua vehebamur.*

[10] Translate *in* (or *with*) *which.* The Latin shows that the preposition is to be understood.

[11] See **līðan**, and **37.**

[12] Lat. *hiems*, but no doubt in the sense of *tempest.*

[13] See **onhrēosan.** What is the ind. pret. plur.?

[14] Lat. *proficere.*

[15] See **156.** *g.*

dēaðes[1] selfes. Mid-ðȳ wē ðā swīðe lange wið ðǣm winde and wið ðǣm sǣ hōlunga[2] campedon and wunnon,[3] ðā æt nīehstan lōcedon wē on bæcling, hwæðer wēn[4] wǣre[4] ðæt wē ǣnge[5] ðinga[5] furðum ðæt īgland gesēcean[6] meahton, ðæt wē ǣr ūt of gangende[7] wǣron.[7] Cierde[8] wē ūs ðider wē cierdon, gemētton[9] wē ūs ǣghwanan gelīce[10] storme[10] foresęttе and foretȳnde, and nǣnigne hyht[11] hǣle[12] in ūs tō[13] lāfe[13] standan.[13] Ðā wæs æfter langum fæce ðæt wē ūre gesihð feorr[14] ūpāhōfon, ðā gesāwon wē in Farne, ðǣm īglande, Gode[15] ðone lēofan fæder Æðelwald of his dīegelnessum[16] ūtgangende,[17] ðæt[18] hē[18] wolde[18] ūrne sīðfæt scēawian, and gesēon hwæt ūs gelumpe,[19] for-ðon hē gehīerde ðæt gebrec ðǣra storma and ðæs weallendes sǣs.[20] Mid-ðȳ hē ðā ūs ēac scēawode, and geseah in gewinne and in ormōdnesse[21] gesęttе bēon,[22] ðā bīegde hē his

[1] See **156.** *g.*

[2] Lat. *frustra.*

[3] See **winnan.**

[4] Lat. *forte.*

[5] Lat. *aliquo conamine.* For **ǣnige** see **174**; for **ðinga** see **154.** *b.*

[6] Lat. *repetere.*

[7] Lat. *egressi eramus.* The pres. part. with the verb is sometimes used in OE. to denote the simple past, as here, and not the progressive.

[8] See **95,** note.

[9] To **foretȳnde** = Lat. *invenimus nos undiqueversum pari tempestate præclusos.*

[10] See **174.**

[11] Acc. sing., the subj. of **standan.**

[12] See **153.** *d.*

[13] Lat. *restare.*

[14] Translate, *from a distance.*

[15] Governed by **lēofan**; = *amantissimum Deo.* See **165.**

[16] Lat. *latibulis.*

[17] Translates the Latin past part., *egressum.*

[18] Translate, *that he might, in order to, to.* The Latin has the infinitive.

[19] See **194.** *b.*

[20] Lat. *fragore procellarum ac ferventis oceani.*

[21] Lat. *desperatione.*

[22] Supply **ūs** as subject acc. (**169**).

cnēowu tō Fæder ūres Dryhtnes Hælendes Crīstes, and wæs[1] gebiddende[1] for ūrre hæle and for ūrum līfe. And mid-ðȳ hē ðā ðæt gebed gefylde,[2] hē ðā samod ætgædere ge ðone āðundnan[3] sæ gesmylte ge ðone storm gestilde, tō[4] ðon[4] ðætte[4] ðurh[5] eall[5] sēo rēðnes ðæs stormes wæs[1] blinnende,[1] and gesyndge[6] windas ðurh ðone smyltestan sæ ūs æt lande gebrōhton. Mid-ðȳ wē ðā ūp cōmon tō lande, and ūre scip ēac[7] swilce[7] fram ðæm ȳðum ūp ābæron, ðā sōna se ilca storm ęft hwearf and cōm,[8] se-ðe for[9] ūrum[9] intingan[9] medmicel fæc[10] gestilde, and ealne ðone[11] dæg[10] swīðe micel and strang wæs, ðætte[12] męnn sweotollice ongietan meahton ðætte se medmicla fierst ðære stilnesse, ðe ðær becōm, tō[13] bēnum[13] ðæs Godes[14] weres[15] for intingan ūrre hæle[16] heofonlice[17] forgiefen[18] wæs.

[1] See above, p. 142, n. 7.

[2] Lat. *compleret*.

[3] Lat. *tumida*.

[4] Lat. *adeo ut*, nearly = *so that*.

[5] Lat. *per omnia*, = *entirely*.

[6] Lat. *secundi*. What letter (sound) has been lost from the OE. form?

[7] Lat. *quoque*.

[8] Supply **ęft**. Latin has only one verb, *rediit*.

[9] Lat. *nostri gratia*.

[10] See **170**.

[11] Lat. *illo*. Translate, *that*.

[12] From **ðæt-ðe** (**34**).

[13] Lat. *ad preces*. Cf. the Mod. Eng. phrase, 'bootless bene.'

[14] Dependent on **weres**.

[15] Dependent on **bēnum**.

[16] Lat. *evasionis*.

[17] Lat. *cœlitus* = *from heaven*.

[18] Not *forgiven*, but *given*.

## VI.

# THE INVASION OF BRITAIN BY THE PICTS AND SCOTS.

(Bede, Eccl. Hist., Bk. I., Chaps. XI., XII.)

Of ðǣre tīde[1] Romane blunnon[2] rīcsian on Breotone. Hæfdon hīe Breotona rīce fēower hund wintra,[3] and, ðæs fīftan, hundseofontig,[4] ðæs-ðe[5] Gaius, ōðre naman Julius, se cāsere,[6] ðæt ilce īgland gesōhte. And ceastra, and torras,[7] and strǣta,[8] and brycga on hiera rīce geworhte wǣron, ðā wē tō-dæg scēawian magon. Eardodon Bryttas binnan ðǣm dīce[9] tō sūðdǣle, ðe wē gemyngodon ðæt Severus,[10] se cāsere, hēt ðwīeres ofer ðæt īgland[11] gedīcian.

[1] Lat. *ex quo tempore* = Eng. *from this time forth.*

[2] See **blinnan.**

[3] See **154.** *c.*

[4] So the Latin: *post annos ferme quadringentos septuaginta.* But the best calculations make this to have been about sixty years earlier.

[5] Lat. *ex quo* = Eng. *from the time that.*

[6] Lat. *Gaius Julius Cæsar.*

[7] Lat. *farus*, for *pharos*, from Pharos, the name of an island near Alexandria in Egypt. The lighthouse built on this island gave its name to other lighthouses (cf. Fr. *phare*). Here watch-towers are meant.

[8] Lat. *stratæ.* Are the two words connected? See Skeat, *Prin.*, pp. 68, 432.

[9] Lat. *intra vallum.* Mod. Eng. *ditch* is Southern English; *dike* probably Northern. Cf. Eng. *church* with Scotch *kirk.*

[10] This wall was between the Friths of Forth and Clyde (see

[11] Lat. *trans insulam.*

Đā[1] ongunnon twā ðēoda, Pihtas[2] norðan, and Scottas westan, hīe onwinnan, and hiera āhta niman and hęrgian; and hīe fela gēara iermdon and hīendon. Đā, on ðære unstilnesse, onsęndon hīe ærendwrecan[3] tō Rome mid gewritum[4] and wēpendre bēne; him fultumes[5] bædon, and him gehēton ēaðmōde hīernesse and singāle underðēodnesse,[6] gif hīe him gefultumoden ðæt hīe meahten

Moberly's Bede, p. 16), but Bede, following Orosius, is no doubt thinking of that between the Tyne and the Solway Frith, which was built by Hadrian (A.D. 120). Severus' wall was built A.D. 207–210.

[1] "[This account] is pieced together as an abridgment of Gildas, xi.–xvi.; but the turgidity of his style is chastened, and his faulty grammar in several places corrected" (Moberly, pp. 26, 27).

[2] On the Picts the last edition of *Chambers' Encyclopædia* remarks: "Four hypotheses have been formed in regard to the language and origin of the Picts. The first, started by Pinkerton and put by Sir Walter Scott into the mouth of the 'Antiquary,' is that they were Teutons, speaking a Gothic dialect; the second, maintained by Dr. Skene, is that they were Gaelic-speaking Celts; . . . the third, due to Professor Rhys, is that the Picts were non-Aryans, whose language was overlaid by loans from Welsh and Irish; and the fourth, held by two of the most eminent Celtic scholars of the day, Professor Windisch and Dr. Whitley Stokes, is that they were Celts, but more nearly allied to the Cymry than to the Gael. . . . The conclusion to which we come is that the Picts, whatever traces they show of a non-Aryan racial element, . . . spoke a Celtic language belonging to a branch of Celtic allied to the Cymric, . . . and that this dialect of the Gallo-Cymric stock was a wave of Celtic speech from the continent previous to the Gaulish which held England when Cæsar entered Britain."

[3] Lat. *legatos*.

[4] Lat. *epistolis*.

[5] See **156**. *b*.

[6] This pair of phrases renders *subjectionem continuam*. What parallel to the use of such synonymous terms may be found in the English Prayer-Book? How is it to be accounted for?

hiera fīend[1] oferwinnan. Đā[2] onsęndon[3] hīe him micelne hęre tō fultume, and, sōna ðæs-ðe hīe on ðis īgland cōmon, ðā campedon hīe[4] wið hiera fēondum, and him micel wæl ongeslōgon, and of hiera[5] gemærum ādrifon and āflīemdon[6]; and lærdon ðæt hīe fæsten[7] worhten him[8] tō gebeorge wið hiera fēondum; and swā, mid micle sige,[9] hām fōron.[10]

Đā[11] ðæt ðā ongēaton ðā ærran gewinnan,[12] ðæt se Romanisca hęre wæs onweg gewiten, ðā cōmon hīe sōna mid sciphęre on hiera landgemæru, and slōgon[13] ealle and cwealdon[13] ðæt hīe gemētton, and swā-swā rīpe ierðe[14] fortrædon and fornōmon, and hīe mid ealle[15] foriermdon. And hīe ðā ęft sęndon ærendwrecan tō Rome, and wēpendre stefne him fultumes bædon,[16] ðæt[17] se[17] earma ēðel mid ealle[15] ne fordilgod ne wære, nē se nama ðære Romaniscan ðēode,[18] se-ðe mid him swā lange scēan[19] beorhte,[19] fram fręmdra

[1] See **46.**

[2] This may be anywhere between A.D. 388 and 420. See Moberly, p. 27.

[3] This clause translates *Quibus mox legio destinatur armata.* Note the use of the active for the passive, which also appears in other sentences of the context.

[4] The legionaries, apparently.

[5] Of the Britons; Lat. *sociorum finibus.*

[6] Lat. *expulit.* See above, p. 145, n. 6.

[7] Lat. *murum.*

[8] See **184.** *a.*

[9] Lat. *triumpho.* See **175.**

[10] A passage of the Latin is here omitted in the translation, describing the construction of the (earthen) wall, between the Friths of Forth and of Clyde.

[11] These three **ðā**'s respectively = *when*, *then*, and *the.*

[12] Lat. *inimici.*

[13] Lat. *cœdunt.* See above, p. 145, n. 6.

[14] Lat. *segetem.*

[15] **Mid ealle** = *completely.* See **175.**

[16] Lat. *implorantes.*

[17] MS. **ðæt.**

[18] Lat. *provinciæ.*

[19] Lat. *claruerat.* Is the Old English to be translated as perfect or as pluperfect? See **scīnan (18)**

ðēoda[1] ungeðwærnesse[2] fornumen and fordilgod bēon sċeolde. Đā wæs ęft hęre[3] hider sęnd,[4] se wæs cumende on ungewēnedre[5] tīde, on hærfeste. And hīe sōna wiþ hiera fēondum gefuhton, and sige hæfdon, and ealle ðā, ðe ðone[6] dēaþ[6] beswīcian[6] meahton, ofer ðone sæ norð āflīemdon, ðā-ðe ær, ælce gēare,[7] ofer ðone sæ hlōðedon and hęrgedon. Đā gesægdon Romane on ān[8] Bryttum ðæt hīe nō mā ne meahten for hiera gescieldnesse[9] swā ȝewinnfullicum[10] fierdum[11] swęncte[12] bēon.[12] Ac hīe manedon[13] and[13] lærdon[13] ðæt hīe him wæpnu worhten,[14] and mōdes stręngðe nōmen,[15] ðæt hīe campoden and wiðstōden hiera fēondum.[16] And hīe him ðā ēac tō ræde and tō frōfre fundon ðæt hīe gemænelice fæsten geworhten him tō gescieldnesse — stænenne weall rihtre[17] stīge[17] fram ēastsæ ōð westsæ, ðær Severus,[18] se cāsere, īu hēt dīcian and eorðweall gewyrcean; ðone man[19] nū tō-dæg scēawian mæg, eahta fōta[20] brādne, and twęlf fōta[20] hēahne.[21] Swilce ēac on ðæs sæs wearðe tō sūð-

[1] See **153.** *c.*

[2] Lat. *improbitate.*

[3] Lat. *legio.*

[4] Past part.; see **113.**

[5] Lat. *inopinata.*

[6] Lat. *evadere*, not *mortem evadere.*

[7] See **176.**

[8] **On ān** = *at once;* it is the Mod. Eng. *anon*, which see in the *New Eng. Dict.*

[9] Lat. *defensionem.*

[10] Lat. *laboriosis.*

[11] Lat. *expeditionibus.*

[12] Lat. *fatigari.*

[13] Lat. *monent.* See above, p. 145, n. 6.

[14] See **194.** *b.* [15] See **niman.**

[16] The translation here is very free, as is much of this selection.

[17] Lat. *recto tramite;* see **160.** 1; **176.** 2.

[18] This is wrong; it is Hadrian's wall that is meant. See p. 144, n. 10, and an article in the *Quarterly Review* for January, 1860.

[19] See **89.** *e.* [20] See **154.** *c.*

[21] A comparison of this sen-

dǣle, ðanan ðe hīe[1] sciphęre[2] on becōm, torras timbredon tō gebeorge[3] ðæs sǣs. Ðā, sōna ðæs-ðe ðis fæsten geworht wæs, ðā sealdon hīe him bȳsena[4] maniga hū hīe him wǣpnu wyrcean sceolden, and hiera fēondum wiðstandan[5]; and hīe ðā grētton, and him cȳðdon ðæt hīe nǣfre mā hīe sēcean woldon; and hīe sigefæste ofer sǣ fērdon. Ðā[7] ðæt ðā Pihtas and Scottas geāxedon, ðæt hīe hām gewitene wǣron, and ēac ðæt hīe hider nō[8] ęft mā hīe sēcean ne[8] woldon, ðā wǣron hīe ðȳ[9] bealdran gewordene, and sōna ealne norðdǣl ðises īglandes ōð ðone weall genōmon[10] and[10] gesętton.[10] Wið ðisum stōd on ðǣm fæstene ufanweardum[11] se earga[12] fēða[13] Brytta, and ðǣr forhtiendre[14] heortan[14] wunode dæges[15] and nihtes.[15] Ðā sōhton hiera gewinnan him searwu, and worhton him hōcas, and mid ðǣm tugon hīe earmlice[16] ādūn of ðǣm wealle; and hīe wǣron sōna dēade swā hīe eorðan gesōhton.[17] Hīe ðā forlēton ðone weall and hiera byrig,[18] and flugon[19] onweg;

tence with the original will show the translator's power and freedom.

[1] Acc. plur.; the Britons.

[2] Nom. sing.; of the enemy. The Latin is different.

[3] Lat. *prospectum.*

[4] Lat. *monita.*

[5] Free translation.

[6] From this point to the end of the sentence = Lat. *et valedicunt sociis tanquam ultra non reversuri. Quibus ad sua remeantibus.* Probably A.D. 418.

[7] From here to **woldon** = Lat. *cognita Scotti Pictique reditus denegatione.*

[8] See **183.** [10] Lat. *capessunt,*

[9] See **178.** [11] See **166. 1.**

[12] Lat. *segnis.*

[13] Lat. *acies.*

[14] Lat. *trementi corde.* See **160. 1.**

[15] See **74.** **Nihtes** is formed on the model of **dæges,** though from a feminine **niht.**

[16] Lat. *miserrime.*

[17] The whole sentence is very free. [18] Acc. plur. (**52**).

[19] See **flēon.**

and hiera gewinnan hīe ēhton and slōgon,[1] and on wæl fieldon. Wæs ðis gefeoht wælgrimre and stręngre eallum[2] ðæm ærgedōnum.[3] For-ðon swā-swā scēap[4] fram wulfum[5] and[5] wildēorum[5] bēoð fornumene, swā ðā earman ceasterwaran tōslitene[6] and[6] fornumene[6] wǣron[6] fram hiera fēondum, and hiera æhtum[7] benæmde, and tō hungre gesętte.

[1] See **slēan.**
[2] See **178.**
[3] Lat. *prioribus.*
[4] See **47.** What is the modern plural?
[5] Lat. *feris.*
[6] Lat. *discerpuntur.*
[7] See **177.**

## VII.

## THE PASSING OF CHAD.[1]

(Bede, Eccl. Hist., Bk. IV., Chap. III.)

Cōm[2] hē[3] mid Æðelðrȳðe[4] of Ēastęnglum; and hē wæs hiere ðegna,[5] and hūses,[5] and hiere gefērscipes,[5] ofer eall ealdormann. Ðā Godes gelēafa ðā wēox, and hāt wæs, ðā

[1] Chad, Bishop of Lichfield, died March 2, 672. See the *Dict. Nat. Biog.*

[2] In 660.

[3] Ōwini. An interesting memorial of him was discovered, at the end of the last century, in the village of Haddenham, near Ely. It is a stone which appears to have formed the base of a cross, and on one of its sides is the following inscription: —

✠ LVCEM . TVAM . OVINO
DA . DEVS . ET . REQVIĒ
AMEN.

This is, according to Palgrave, perhaps one of the most venerable monuments of Saxon antiquity. It long served as a horse-block, but is now in the south aisle of Ely Cathedral. Dean Merivale of Ely has suggested that the words are meant for a pentameter line (the *m* in *lucem* being elided even before a consonant). For further particulars, see Mayor and Lumby's ed. of Bede, p. 429, and Bright's *Early English Church History*, p. 230.

[4] St. Etheldred, or Audrey (died 679), whose choice of the island of Ely as the site of a monastery led to the erection of the present cathedral. She was the daughter of Anna, king (not queen) of the East Anglians. What is the etymology of our modern word *tawdry?*

[5] Dependent on **ealdormann**.

ðōhte hē ðæt hē sceolde worulde[1] wiðsacan, and ðæt unāswundenlice swā gedyde; and hine middangeardes ðingum tō ðon ongierede[2] and[2] genacodode[2] ðæt hē ēall forlēt ðā-ðe hē hæfde, nefne his ānfealdne gegierelan, and cōm tō Læstinga īe, tō ðæm mynstre[3] ðæs ārwierðan bisceopes.[4] Bær him[5] æxe and adesan on handa; tācnode in[6] ðon ðæt hē nālæs tō īdelnesse, swā sume ōðre, ac tō gewinne, in ðæt[7] mynster ēode; and ðæt selfe ēac swilce mid dædum gecȳðde. And, for-ðon-ðe hē lȳt genyhtsumode in smēaunge and in leornunge hāligra gewrita, hē ðȳ[8] mā mid his handum wann, and[9] worhte ðā ðing ðe nīedðearflicu wæron. Ðæs[10] is tō tācne, ðæt hē mid ðone bisceop in ðæm foresprecenum wīcum[11] for his ārwierðnesse and for his geornfulnesse[12] betweoh ðā brōðor wæs hæfd. Ðonne[13] hīe inne[14] hiera leornunge

[1] See **26**. The word is originally a compound, from **wer**, *man*, and a hypothetical **ald**, *age* (cf. the adj. **eald**, *old*). From *age of man* to *generation* = *the people living at one time*, *mankind;* and from this to *inhabited earth*, the transitions are not violent. The similar changes in the meaning of the Lat. *sæculum* and Gr. κόσμος, especially in Biblical usage, will be found suggestive.

[2] Lat. *exuit;* two words for one. See **162**.

[3] From what Latin word? Has it the same meaning in 'York Minster'?

[4] From what Latin (Greek) word?

[5] See **184**. *a*.

[6] Translate, *by*.

[7] Why the accusative?

[8] What is the form of this word in Mod. Eng.? Wherein does it differ from the other Mod. Eng. word of the same form?

[9] This clause added by the translator.

[10] Dependent on **tācne**.

[11] Lat. *mansione*.

[12] The double phrase translates *pro suæ reverentia devotionis*.

[13] = *When*.

[14] Adverb; contrasted with **ūte**, next line.

and hiera bēcrædinge[1] beēodon, ðonne wæs hē ūte wyrcende, swā-hwæt-swā ðearf gesegen[2] wæs.[2]

Ðā hē ðā sume[3] dæge[3] hwæthwugu swilces[4] ūte dyde, and his gefēran tō byrig tō ciricean ēodon, swā hīe gelōmlice dydon, and se bisceop, āna in ðǣre ciricean,[5] oððe in bēcrædinge oððe in gebedum geornfull wæs, ðā gehīerde hē sęmninga, swā-swā hē ęft æfter ðon sægde, ðā swētestan stefne[6] and ðā fægerestan, singendra and blissiendra,[7] of heofonum ōð eorðan āstīgan. Ðā stefne[8] and ðone sang[8] hē cwæð ðæt hē ærest gehīerde fram ēastsūðdæle heofones, ðæt is fram hēanesse ðǣre winterlican sunnan ūpganges; and ðanan tō him styccemælum[9] nēalǣcton, ōð-ðæt hē[9a] becōm tō ðæcean[10] ðǣre ciricean ðe[11] se bisceop in wæs; and, ingangende, eall[12] gefylde, and in ymbhwyrfte ymbsealde. And hē ðā geornlice his mōd[13] āðęnede[13] in ðā ðing ðe hē gehīerde. Ðā gehīerde hē ęft swā-swā[14] healfre tīde fæce,[15] of hrōfe ðǣre ilcan ciricean ūpāstīgan ðone ilcan blissesang,[16] and, ðȳ ilcan wege[17] ðe hē ær cōm, ūp ōð heofonas mid unāsęcgendre[18] swētnesse ęfthweorfan.[19]

[1] MS. **becrædon.**

[2] Lat. *videbantur.*

[3] See **176.** [4] See **154.** *b.*

[5] Lat. *oratorio loci.* The monks had gone to the church. Cf. below, p. 153, l. 7.

[6] See **169.** For this word see Chaucer, *Knight's Tale* 1704.

[7] Lat. *vocem suavissimam cantantium atque lætantium.* What adjective is concealed in **bliss-** (see **34**)?

[8] Acc. after **gehīerde.**

[9] See **72.** [9a] **Se sang.**

[10] Lat. *tectum*, for which l. 17 has **hrōf.**

[11] Governed by **in.**

[12] Acc. sing.

[13] Lat. *animum intenderet.*

[14] Lat. *quasi.* [15] See **176.**

[16] Lat. *lætitiæ canticum.* See **169.** [17] See **176.** 2.

[18] Lat. *ineffabili.*

[19] Lat. *reverti.*

Đā wunode hē ðǣr sum[1] fæc[1] tīde,[1] wundriende and wafiende; and mid behygdigum mōde ðōhte and smēade hwæt ðā ðing bēon sceolden. Đā ontȳnde se bisceop ðæt ēagðȳrel[2] ðǣre ciricean, and mid his handa slōg tācen, swā-swā his gewuna wæs gif hwilc mann ūte wǣre, ðæt hē in tō him ēode. Đā ēode hē sōna in tō him. Cwæð hē, se bisceop, him tō[3]: "Gang hraðe tō ciricean,[4] and hāt[5] ūre seofon brōðor hider tō mē cuman; and ðū ēac swilce mid wes.[6]" Đā hīe ðā tō him cōmon, ðā manode hē hīe ǣrest ðæt hīe betwēonan him ðæt mægen[7] lufe[8] and sibbe,[8] and betwēon[9] eallum Godes mannum geornlice hēolden; and ēac swilce ðā gesetennesse ðæs regollican ðēodscipes,[10] ðe hīe fram him geleornodon, and on him gesāwon, oððe in ðǣra forðgelēoredra fædra dǣdum oððe godcundum gemete, ðæt hīe ðā ungewērgedre[11] geornfulnesse[11] fylgden and lǣsten.[12] Æfter ðon hē underðīedde,[13] and him sægde ðæt se dæg swīðe nēah stōde his forðfōre,[14] and ðus cwæð: "Se lēofa[15] cuma and se lufiendlica,[15] se-ðe gewunode ūre brōðor nēosian, sē cōm swilce

[1] Lat. *aliquantulum horæ* (**170**).

[2] In what Mod. Eng. word is a disguised form of **-ðȳrel** to be found? What is the etymology of *window?*

[3] See **201.** 1.

[4] What is the etymology of *church?* From what language is it originally derived?

[5] See **hātan.**

[6] Imper. sing. When followed by the adj. **hǣl**, what Mod. Eng. word does it give rise to?

[7] Lat. *virtutem.*

[8] See **153.** *i.*

[9] Lat. *ad* = *toward*, rather than *among.*

[10] Lat. *instituta disciplinæ regularis.*

[11] See **174**; **160.** 1.

[12] How is this related to the Mod. Eng. verb *last*, and to the German *leisten?*

[13] Lat. *subjunxit.*

[14] Dependent on **dæg.**

[15] Lat. *amabilis.*

tō-dæg tō mē, and mē of worulde cīegde and laðode. For-ðon gē ðonne nū ęfthweorfað[1] tō ciricean, and biddað[1] ūre brōðor ðæt hīe mīne forðfōre mid hiera gebedum and bēnum Dryhtne bebēoden[2]; and swilce ēac hiera selfra forðfōre, ðǣre tīd is uncūð,[3] ðæt hīe gemynen[4] mid wæccenum and gebedum and mid gōdum[5] forecuman.[6]

Mid-ðȳ hē ðā ðās word, and ðises gemetes manigu, tō him sprecende wæs, and hīe, onfangenre[7] his blētsunge,[7] swīðe unrōte fram him ēodon, ðā hwearf sē[8] āna[8] ęft[9] in tō him se-ðe ðone heofonlican sang gehīerde, and hine ēaðmōdlice on eorðan āstreahte fore ðone bisceop, and ðus cwæð: "Mīn fæder, mōt[10] ic ðē ōhtes[11] āxian"? Cwæð hē: "Āxa ðæs[11] ðū wille." Ðā cwæð hē: "Ic ðē lā hālsie and bidde for Godes lufe ðæt ðū mē geseęcge[12] hwæt se sang wǣre blissiendra ðe[13] ic gehīerde, of heofonum cumendra[14] ofer ðās ciricean,[15] and, æfter tīde,[16] ęfthweorfendra tō heofonum." Andswarode hē, se bisceop: "Gif ðū sanges stefne gehīerde, and ðū heofonlic weorod ongēate ofer ūs ēac cuman, ic ðē bebēode on Dryhtnes naman ðæt ðū ðæt nǣnigum męnn

[1] Here are two independent verbs, where the Latin has *revertentes . . . dicite.*

[2] Lat. *commendent.*

[3] What change of meaning in the modern word *uncouth?* How related to the ancient meaning?

[4] See **134.**

[5] According to the Latin, **weorcum** should be supplied.

[6] Dependent on **gemynen.**

[7] See **167.**

[8] Lat. *ipse solus*, meaning Ōwini.

[9] Belongs with **hwearf**; **hwearf . . . ęft** = Lat. *rediit.*

[10] See **137.**

[11] See **156.**

[12] See **194.** *b.*

[13] Refers to **sang.**

[14] Belongs to **blissiendra.**

[15] Lat. *oratorium.* See above, p. 152, n. 5.

[16] Lat. *tempus.*

cȳðe[1] nē[1] sęcge[1] ǣr mīnre forðfōre. Ic ðē sōðlice sęcge ðætte ðæt wǣron[2] ęngla gāstas ðe ðǣr cōmon, ðā mē tō ðǣm heofonlicum mēdum cīegdon and laðedon ðā ic simle lufode and wilnode. And, æfter seofon dagum, hīe ęfthweorfende[3] and cumende[3] mē gehēton, and mē ðonne mid him lǣdan woldon."

Ðæt wæs swā sōðlice mid dǣde gefylled swā him tō[4] cweden wæs. Ðā wæs hē sōna gehrinen līchamlicre[5] untrymnesse,[5] and sēo[6] dæghwǣmlice wēox and hęfigode; and ðā, ðȳ seofoðan dæge,[7] swā him gehāten wæs, æfterðon-ðe his forðfōre getrymede[8] mid onfangennesse ðæs Dryhtenlican līchaman and blōdes, [ðætte[9]] sēo hālge sāwl wæs onlīesed fram ðæs līchaman hęfignessum,[10] and mid ęngla lāttēowdōme[11] and gefērscipe, swā riht[12] is tō gelīefanne, ðā ēcean gefēan and ðā heofonlican ēadignesse[13] gestāh and gesōhte. Is ðæt hwilc[14] wundor ðēahðe hē ðone dæg his dēaðes, oððe mā,[15] ðone Dryhtnes dæg, blīðe gesāwe, ðone hē simle sorgiende bād ōð-ðæt hē cōme?

[1] Lat. *dicas.*

[2] See **189**. 3.

[3] These translate the Lat. future part. *redituros.* Supply *would be* in translation, or *would* with the finite verb. The future participle of the following clause, *adducturos*, is translated by a finite verb.

[4] Governs **him**, or may be regarded as belonging to the following verb (**201**. 1).

[5] See **174**; **160**. 1.

[6] Dem. pron. Translate by *that.*

[7] See **176**.

[8] Supply **hē** as the subject.

[9] The MS. has **ðætte**, but the sense does not require it.

[10] Lat. *ergastulo.*

[11] See **33** (**lād-**).

[12] Lat. *fas.*

[13] Acc. plur.

[14] Translate, *any.*

[15] Lat. *potius.*

## VIII.

## THE DANGERS OF GREATNESS.

(From Wulfstan's Homilies, No. 49.)

[Wulfstan — also known by his Latinized name, Lupus — was Bishop of Worcester and Archbishop of York from 1002 to 1023. This homily is one of those attributed to him, but, according to Napier, with insufficient reason, as a portion of it is found in the Blickling Homilies, the manuscript of which bears the date of 971.]

Æghwilc hēah ār, hēr on worulde, bið mid frēcnessum[1] ymbseald[2]; efne swā[3] ðā woruldgeðyngða bēoð māran, swā ðā frēcnessa bēoð swīðran. Swā wē magon, be ðǣm, ðā bȳsena oncnāwan and ongietan.[4] Ðæt trēow, ðonne, ðe wiext[5] on ðǣm wudubearwe, ðæt[6] hit hlīfað ūp ofer eall ðā ōðru trēowu and brǣt[6a] hit,[7] ðonne sęmninga storm[8] gestęnt, and se stranga wind,[9] ðonne[10] bið hit swīðlicor gewǣged and geswęnged ðonne se ōðer wudu.[11] Swā bið ēac gelīce be ðǣm hēaclifum and torrum,[12] ðonne hīe

[1] See **144.** [2] See **114.**

[3] **Swā . . . māran, swā . . . swīðran** = *the greater, the fiercer.* Note the tendency to antithesis.

[4] Observe the redundancy.

[5] See **weaxan.** [6] = *so that.*

[6a] See **brǣdan (34).**

[7] See **184.** *b.*

[8] Note the alliteration.

[9] Second subject of **gestęnt.**

[10] Frequently the second correlative, in such pairs as **ðonne . . . ðonne, ðā . . . ðā,** need not be translated; it is frequently followed by an inverted order, as here, the verb preceding its subject. See **202.**

[11] **Se ōðer wudu** = *the rest of the forest*, not *the other wood.*

[12] Probably here = *crag.*

hlīfiað feorr ūp ofer ðā ōðre[1] eorðan, hīe ðonne sęmninga feallan onginnað,[2] and full ðearlice hrēosan[3] tō eorðan. Swilce[4] ēac be ðǣm hēagum[5] muntum and dūnum,[6] ðāðe hēah standað ofer ealne middangeard, ðā-hwæðre wīte habbað ðæs ealdordōmes, ðæt hīe bēoð geneahhe mid heofonfȳre[7] geðrēadę and geðræste, and mid līegum ge-

[1] See p. 156, n. 12.

[2] This resembles the use of *gin* in Chaucer, almost as an auxiliary tense-sign, like *do* in Mod. Eng., the latter not being thus used in OE. In Chaucer it usually occurs as the preterit *gan*, *e.g.* in the *Clerk's Tale*, 392: "til the sonne gan descende." See Lounsbury's *History of the English Language*. An interesting parallel is to be found in New Testament Greek, as, for example, Acts 1. 1: "The former treatise I made, O Theophilus, concerning all that Jesus *began* (ἤρξατο) both to do and to teach." According to Thayer, however (*Greek-English Lexicon of the New Testament*), there is in its employment always a sense of *beginning*, in its proper meaning.

[3] Dependent, like **feallan**, on **onginnað**. Give the ind. pret. plur.

[4] It would be interesting to know from what literary source these illustrations are ultimately derived. They remind one of Shakespeare (*Rich. III.*, 1. 3. 259–260):—

They that stand high have many blasts to shake them;
And if they fall, they dash themselves to pieces.

Cf. also *3 Hen. VI.*, 5. 2. 11–15. No doubt many Elizabethan parallels could be found; I have noted in Chapman, *Byron's Conspiracy*, Act 3, Scene 1 (p. 232 of Shepherd's ed.), and *Byron's Tragedy*, Act 5, Scene 1 (*Ib.*, p. 272). Perhaps the Elizabethans may have derived them from Seneca; cf. the Chorus in Act 4 of the *Hippolytus*, vv. 1123–1143; *Hercules Furens* 201; *Œdipus* 8–11. Seneca may have caught a suggestion from Sophocles, though the parallel is somewhat remote; see the latter's *Antigone*, vv. 712–717, and Horace, *C.* II. 10.

[5] See **58**. 1.

[6] Redundant. What is **dūn** in Mod. Eng. (**24**)? Whence is the adverb *down* derived?

[7] Note the poetical term.

slægene. Swā ðā hēan mihta[1] hēr on worulde hrēosað, and feallað,[2] and tō lore weorðað, and ðisse[3] worulde[3] welan weorðað tō sorge, and ðās eorðlican wundor weorðað tō nāhte.[4]

Ðēah wē ðisse worulde wlęnca[5] tilien[6] swīðe, and in wuldre[5] scīnen[6] swīðe; ðēah wē ūs gescierpen[6] mid ðȳ rēadestan gōdwębbe,[5] and gefrætwien[6] mid[7] ðȳ beorhtestan golde,[5] and mid[7] ðæm dēorwierðestum gimmum[5] ūtan ymbhōn[6]; hwæðre[8] wē sculon on nearonesse ęnde[9] gebīdan. Ðēah-ðe ðā mihtigestan and ðā rīcestan hāten[6] him[10] ręste gewyrcean of marmanstāne,[11] and mid goldfrætwum and mid gimcynnum eall āstæned, and mid seolfrenum rūwum and gōdwębbe eall oferwrigen, and mid dēorwierðum wyrtgemęngnessum eall gestrēd,[12] and mid goldlēafum gestrēowod ymbūtan, hwæðre[8] sē bitera dēað ðæt tōdælð eall. Ðonne bið sēo glęng āgoten,[13] and se ðrym tōbrocen, and ðā gimmas tōglidene, and ðæt gold tōsceacen, and ðā līchaman tōhrorene[14] and tō dūste[15] gewordene.

[1] This suggests Seneca (*Œdipus*, Act 1, v. 11): —

Imperia sic excelsa Fortunæ objacent.

[2] Pleonastic.

[3] Genitive, dependent on **welan.**

[4] Cf. Mod. Eng. *come to naught.*

[5] Note the alliteration.

[6] In what mood and tense are these verbs, and why?

[7] **Mid** governs both the dative and the instrumental (**175**).

[8] This word might be omitted in translation; see p. 156, n. 10.

[9] Object of **gebīdan.**

[10] See **184.** *a.*

[11] Which part of this word is native, and which foreign?

[12] An instance of a strong verb (**104**; cf. **28**) which has already become weak in OE.

[13] Note the parallelism and the enumeration.

[14] From what verb (**37**)?

[15] See **24.**

## IX.

## DUTIES OF THE RICH TOWARD THE POOR.

(From the same Homily as the last.)

Se Hælend cwæð tō ðæm wlancan[1]: "For hwȳ wære ðū swā fæsthafol mīnra gōda, ðe ic ðē sealde? Tō hwon[2] rēcelēasodest ðū ðære giefe, ðe ic ðē geaf? Ic ðē nū āfierre[3] fram mīnre sęlene, ðe ic ðē forgeaf; ðonne bist[3] ðū wædla on woruldlīfe. For hwon[2] noldest[4] ðū geðęncean ðæt ic wille[5] forgieldan ēghwilcum męnn āne gōde dæd, ðe for mīnum naman mann gedēð? Mid hundtēontigum ic hit him forgielde,[3] swā hit is on mīnum godspelle gecweden and gesæd,[6] 'Swā-hwæt-swā[7] gē sęllað ānum of mīnum ðæm lǣstum,[8] gē hit simle mē sęllað,[9] and ic ēow wið[10] ðæm gesęlle[3] ēcne drēam[11] on heofonum.'

[1] From what OE. word is the Mod. Eng. *rich* derived (see Skeat, *Prin.*, p. 61)? From what OE. meaning is the modern signification derived?

[2] Note Wulfstan's use of **tō hwon, for hwon,** in the sense of *why*. See **88.**

[3] See **188.** [4] See **139.**

[5] Why should not the preterit be used here?

[6] Pleonastic.

[7] What portion of this is lost, and how is it replaced, in the Mod. Eng. *whatsoever?*

[8] See **66.**

[9] Cf. the form of this sentence with that on p. 135, l. 14.

[10] = *in return for*. How is this to be reconciled with other senses of **wið**?

[11] Not *dream*, but *joy, bliss.*

Đū mann, tō hwon eart ðū mē swā ungeðancfull mīnra[1] giefena? Hwæt! ic ðē gescēop and gelīffæste, and ēghwæt[2] ðæs ðe ðū hæfst[3] ic ðē sealde. Mīn is eall ðæt ðū hæfst, and ðīn nis nān wiht.[4] Ic hit eall āfierre fram ðē; ðū leofa[5] būtan mē, gif ðū mæge.[6] Ðē ic hit sealde, tō[7] ðon[7] ðæt[7] ðū hit sceoldest[12] ðearfum dælan. Ic swęrie ðurh mē[8] selfne ðæt ic eom se ilca-God ðe ðone weligan and ðone hēanan geworhte mid mīnum handum. Ðæt[9] ic wolde, ðæt ðū mīne ðearfan fēddest,[12] ðonne hīe wæron ðē biddende mīnra[10] gōda,[10] and ðū him simle tīðe[11] forwierndest. For hwon noldest ðū hit[9] geðęncean, gif ðū him mildheortnesse on gecȳðdest,[12] ðæt ðū ne sceoldest[12] ðæs[13] nān ðing forlēosan, ðe[14] ðū him dydest, nē mē on ðære sęlene ābelgan mīnes[15] āgnes[15]? Tō hwon āgnodest ðū ðē ānum ðæt ic inc[16] bām[17] sealde? Tō hwon fēddest ðū ðē ænne of ðām ðe ic inc[16] bām[17] gescēop tō[18] welan, and tō[18] wiste, and tō[18] feorhnęre? Tō hwon hēolde[19] ðū hit ðē ānum and ðīnum bearnum, ðæt meahte manigum genyhtsumian[20]? Unīeðe ðē wæs

[1] See **155.**

[2] See **89.** *c.* [3] See **121.**

[4] In what two Mod. Eng. words does **wiht** appear? From what OE. forms are *aught* and *naught* derived?

[5] See **122** and **198.**

[6] = *canst*, not *mayst* (**135**).

[7] = *in order that.*

[8] What has this accusative become in Mod. Eng.?

[9] Anticipative of the following noun-clause.

[10] See **156.** *b.*

[11] Not to be confounded with **tīde.** See **156.** *j.*

[12] Optative more regular.

[13] See **154.** *a.*

[14] Refers to its antecedent **ðæs.**

[15] Dependent on **sęlene.**

[16] Note this rare dual (**81**).

[17] See **79.**

[18] = *for, as.*

[19] From what infinitive?

[20] The sense is pluperfect.

ðæt ðū hit eall ne meahtest gefæstnian, nē mid inseglum beclȳsan. Wēnst ðū ðæt hit[1] ðīn sīe ðæt sēo eorðe ðē forðbringð? Hēo[2] ðē grēwð,[3] and blēwð,[3] and sǣd lǣt,[4] and andlifan bringð. Ic nū āfierre mīnne fultum fram ðē; hafa[5] ðū æt[6] ðīnum gewinne ðæt ðū mæge, and æt[6] ðīnum geswince. Ic ðē[7] ætbrēde[8] mīne rēnas,[8] ðæt hīe ðīnre eorðan[9] ne rīnen.[10] Ic āfierre fram ðē mīne mildheortnesse, and ðonne bið sōna gecȳðed ðīn iermðu, and ætīewed.

Gif ðū wēne[11] ðæt hit ðīn bōcland[12] sīe ðæt ðū on eardast, and on āgne ǣht[13] geseald, hit ðonne wǣron[10] mīne wæteru, ðā-ðe on heofonum wǣron, ðonne ic mīne giefe eorðwarum dǣlde. Gif ðū miht hæbbe,[11] dǣl rēnas ofer ðīne eorðan. Gif ðū strang sīe, sęle wǣstmas ðīnre eorðan. Ic āhierde mīne sunnan, and hēo gebierht; ðonne forbærnð[15] hēo ealle ðīne æceras, and ðonne bist[15] ðū dǣllēas[16] mīnes rēnes,[17] and ðē ðonne bið[15] ðīn eorðe īdel and unnyt gōda[18] gehwilces.[19] Mīne ðearfan libbað be mē; gif ðū mæge,[11] wuna būtan mē. Mīne ðearfan mē ealne[20] weg[20] habbað, and ic hīe nǣfre ne forlǣte."

[1] Anticipative of **ðæt**.

[2] Refers to what?

[3] See **109**.

[4] See **lǣdan**.

[5] See **121** and **198**.

[6] = *from*; cf. *at one's hands*.

[7] See **164**.

[8] See **28**.

[9] See **161**.

[10] MS. **rinað**.

[11] See **196**. *d*.

[12] Land held by **bōc** or charter, *freehold estate*; distinguished from **folcland**, *communal property*. The term is explained by the following clause.

[13] See **172**. 1.

[14] See **189**. 3.

[15] Are these presents or futures?

[16] See **146**.

[17] See **155**. *a*.

[18] Dependent on **gehwilces**. See **154**. *b*.

[19] Dependent on **īdel** and **unnyt**. See **155**. *a*.

[20] See **170**. Mod. Eng. *alway*.

## X.

## ALFRED'S PREFACE TO BOETHIUS.

(Prefixed to his translation.)

Ælfred cyning wæs wealhstōd[1] ðisse bēc, and hīe of Bōclædene[2] on Ęnglisc węnde, swā hēo nū is gedōn. Hwīlum hē sętte word be worde, hwīlum andgiet of andgiete, swā-swā hē hit ðā sweotolost and andgietfullicost geręccean meahte for ðæm mislicum and manigfealdum woruldbisgum ðe hine oft ægðer ge on mōde ge on līchaman bisgedon. Ðā bisga[3] ūs sind swīðe earfoðrīme ðe on his dagum on ðā rīcu becōmon ðe hē underfangen hæfde, and ðēah, ðā hē ðās bōc hæfde geleornod, and of Lædene tō Ęngliscum spelle gewęnd, ðā geworhte hē hīe ęft tō lēoðe, swā-swā hēo nū gedōn is. And nū bitt[4] and for Godes naman hālsað ælcne ðæra ðe ðās bōc rædan lyste,[5] ðæt hē for hine gebidde, and him ne wīte gif hē[6] hīe rihtlicor ongiete ðonne hē[7] meahte; for-ðām-ðe ælc mann sceal be his andgietes mæðe, and be his ēmettan, sprecan ðæt hē spricð, and dōn ðæt-ðæt hē dēð.

[1] **Wealh-** signifies *foreign* (see *walnut*), and sometimes *servant*, orig. *Celtic, Celt* (cf. *Wales, Welsh,* Corn*wall*), from *Volcæ*, the name of a Celtic tribe (Cæsar, *Gallic War*, Bk. VII.).

[2] Perhaps originally in contrast to the Latin spoken in Britain.

[3] See **51.** *a.*

[4] Supply **hē.**

[5] See **190.**

[6] The reader.

[7] Alfred.

## XI.

## A PRAYER OF KING ALFRED.

(From the end of his translation of Boethius.)

Dryhten,[1] ælmihtiga God,[1] Wyrhta and Wealdend ealra gesceafta, ic bidde ðē for ðīnre miclan mildheortnesse, and for ðǣre hālgan rōde tācne,[2] and for Sanctæ Marian mægðhāde, and for Sancti Michaeles gehīersumnesse, and for ealra ðīnra hālgena[3] lufan and hiera earnungum, ðæt ðū mē gewissie[4] bęt ðonne ic āworhte tō ðē; and gewissa mē tō ðīnum willan, and tō mīnre sāwle ðearfe,[5] bęt ðonne ic self cunne[6]; and gestaðela mīn mōd tō ðīnum willan and tō mīnre sāwle ðearfe; and gestranga mē wið ðæs dēofles[3] costnungum; and āfierr fram mē ðā fūlan gālnesse and ælce unrihtwīsnesse; and gescield mē wið mīnum wiðerwinnum, gesewenlicum and ungesewenlicum; and tæc mē ðīnne willan[7] tō wyrceanne; ðæt ic mæge[8] ðē inweardlice lufian tōforan eallum ðingum, mid clǣnum geðance and mid clǣnum līchaman. For-ðon-ðe ðū eart mīn Scieppend,[9] and mīn Ālīesend, mīn Fultum, mīn Frōfor, mīn Trēownes, and mīn Tōhopa. Sīe ðē lof and wuldor nū and ā ā ā, tō worulde būtan æghwilcum ęnde. Amen.

[1] See **152.**
[2] Governed by **for.**
[3] See **153.** *c.*
[4] See **194.** *b.*
[5] See **166.**
[6] Optative (**130**).
[7] Object of **wyrceanne.**
[8] See **196.** *d.*
[9] See **150.**

# XII.

## APOLLONIUS OF TYRE.

[The Old English version of the *Romance of Apollonius*, from which our extract is taken, belongs, according to Wülker, to the second third of the eleventh century; according to Ebert, to its beginning; and according to Riese, most probably to the tenth. The original story was almost certainly written in Greek, probably in the third century of our era, and by an imitator of Xenophon of Ephesus. This is lost, and is only represented by a Latin version, which may have been made in the same century, and in any case not later than the sixth, by a writer of no great education, who introduced Christian terms and conceptions, added some things, and retrenched others. Over a hundred manuscripts of this Latin version are known, of which twelve are in England. Scarcely any two manuscripts agree, and the discrepancies are often great; still, for convenience, they have been grouped into three main classes. To the third of these, which is not the equal of the other two, the immediate original of our version must have belonged, resembling most nearly a manuscript of the Bodleian Library (Laud H. 39), and, at the next further remove, one of the British Museum (Sloan. 1619).

The popularity of the romance is attested not only by the number and variety of the Latin manuscripts, but no less by the mediæval and subsequent translations into almost every modern language. Thus, for example, there is in Old French a romance of *Jourdain de Blaie*, the scene being laid in the time of Charlemagne, and the temple of Diana being converted into a nunnery.

An abridgment of the Latin version found its way into the *Gesta Romanorum*, as No. 153 of that collection. In the twelfth century the story was incorporated into the *Pantheon* of Godfrey of Viterbo, whence it was turned into English verse by Gower, in his *Confessio Amantis* (Pauli's edition 3. 284 ff.; Morley's abridgment, in *The Carisbrooke Library*, pp. 410–431). From Gower it was borrowed by Shakespeare, or whoever was the author of the drama which passes under his name, as the groundwork of *Pericles, Prince of Tyre;* the name Pericles being perhaps adapted from the Pyrocles of Sidney's *Arcadia*. The scenes of *Pericles* which may be compared with our extract are the 1st, 2d, 3d, and 5th of Act II., and the 3d of Act V.

The Old English *Apollonius* was edited by Thorpe, in 1834, from MS. S. 18. 201 of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge; and to this edition the student

is referred for the spelling and punctuation of the original. It is only a fragment, breaking off in the midst, and recommencing near the end of the tale, as we have indicated below.

Further information will be found in Rohde, *Der griechische Roman*, Leipzig, 1876; Teuffel, *History of Latin Literature*, § 489; Singer, *Apollonius von Tyrus*, Halle, 1895; Zupitza's article on the OE. version in *Herrig's Archiv* 97. 17–35; Warton, *History of English Poetry* 2. 302–303; and Riese's edition of the Latin, which is the standard (Leipzig, 1871), and costs but a trifle.

Besides the Tudor versions, there is an English translation in Thorpe's edition, and another — of course not adhering closely to our text — in Swan's rendering of the *Gesta Romanorum* (Bohn Library)].

## *The Shipwreck.*

Apollonius[1] hīe bæd ealle grētan,[2] and on scip āstāh.[3] Mid-ðȳ-ðe hīe ongunnon ðā rōwan,[4] and hīe forðweard wǣron on hiera weg, ðā wearð ðǣre sǣ smyltnes āwęnd færinga betweox twām tīdum,[5] and wearð miclu hrēohnes āweaht, swā ðæt sēo sǣ cnysede ðā heofonlican tunglu,[6] and ðæt gewealc ðǣra ȳða hwaðerode mid windum. Ðǣr-tō-ēacan cōmon ēastnorðerne windas, and se angrīslica sūðwesterna wind him ongēan stōd,[7] and ðæt scip eall

[1] Apollonius, King of Tyre, has fled from the cruelty and treachery of Antiochus, King of Antioch, on a richly freighted vessel, and taken refuge with the citizens of Tarsus. Finding the citizens in extremity, on account of a prevalent famine, he relieves their necessities by liberal gifts, whereupon they erect a statue of him in the market-place. But notwithstanding the gratitude of his beneficiaries, he finds it expedient to leave them, and embarks for Cyrene, on the African coast. It is at this point that our selection begins.

[2] Observe the ellipsis, — *bade greet them all* — where the subject of the infinitive is to be supplied.

[3] See **28.** [4] See **199.** *b.*

[5] Lat. *intra duas horas diei.*

[6] This seems to be a reminiscence of Virgil, *Æneid* I. 103.

[7] Lat. (verse): *Hinc Notus, hinc Boreas, hinc horridus Africus instat.*

tōbærst on ðisse ęgeslican hrēohnesse. Apollonius[1] gefēran ealle forwurdon[2] tō dēaðe, and Apollonius āna[3] becōm mid sunde tō Pentapolim ðǣm Cyreniscan lande, and ðǣr ūpēode on ðǣm strande. Ðā stōd hē nacod on ðǣm strande, and behēold ðā sǣ, and cwæð:

"Ēalā! ðū sǣ Neptune! manna berēafiend[3a] and unscęððigra beswīcend[3a]! ðu eart wælhrēowra ðonne Antiochus se cyning. For mīnum ðingum ðū gehēolde ðās wælhrēownesse, ðæt ic ðurh ðē gewurde[4] wǣdla[5] and ðearfa, and ðæt se wælhrēowa cyning mē ðȳ īeð[6] fordōn meahte. Hwider mæg ic nū faran? Hwæs[7] mæg ic biddan? Oððe hwā giefð[8] ðǣm uncūðan[9] līfes fultum?"

*Apollonius and the Fisherman.*

Mid-ðȳ-ðe hē ðās ðing wæs sprecende tō him selfum, ðā færinga geseah hē sumne fiscere[10] gān, tō ðǣm hē beseah, and ðus sārlice cwæð[11]: "Gemiltsa mē,[12] ðū ealda mann, sīe[13] ðæt ðū sīe. Gemiltsa mē nacodum forlidenum. Næs[14] nā of earmlicum[15] byrdum[16] geboren; and,

[1] The Latin endings of proper nouns are not always a guide to the case (**54**). Here we have the genitive.

[2] See **forweorðan**.

[3] See **79**. [3a] See **43. 6**.

[4] MS. **gewurðe**.

[5] See **150**.

[6] MS. **eaðe**. See **178**.

[7] See **156**. *b*.

[8] Zupitza's emendation for MS. **gif**.

[9] See **55** and **181**.

[10] See **169**.

[11] In the original, he falls at the fisherman's feet, and bursts into tears. What reason may have led to the change?

[12] See **164**. *g*.

[13] See **193**. *c*.

[14] See **189**, note.

[15] Lat. *humilibus*.

[16] Plural, where we should expect the singular.

ðæs-ðe[1] ðū geare forwite hwæm ðū gemiltsie,[2] ic eom Apollonius, se Tyrisca[3] ealdormann.[4]

Đā, sōna swā se fiscere[5] geseah ðæt se geonga mann æt his fōtum læg, hē mid mildheortnesse hine ūpāhōf, and lædde hine mid him tō his hūse, and ðā ēstas[6] him beforan lęgde ðe hē him tō bēodanne hæfde. Đā gīet hē wolde, be his mihte, māran ārfæstnesse[7] him gecȳðan; tōslāt ðā his wæfels on twā, and sealde Apollonie ðone healfan dæl, ðus cweðende: "Nim ðæt ic ðē tō sęllanne hæbbe, and gā intō ðære ceastre. Wēn[8] is[8] ðæt ðū gemēte[9] sumne ðæt[9a] ðē gemiltsie.[10] Gif ðū ne finde[11] nænne ðe ðē gemiltsian wille, węnd ðonne hider ongēan, and genyhtsumien[12] unc[13] bæm mīne lȳtlan[14] æhta; far ðē on fiscnoð[16] mid mē. Đēah-hwæðre ic myngie ðē, gif ðū, fultumiendum[17] Gode, becymst tō ðīnum ærran weorðmynte, ðæt ðū ne forgiete[18] mīnne ðearfendlican gegierelan."

Đā cwæð Apollonius: "Gif ic ðē[19] ne geðęnce ðone mē bęt bið,[20] ic wȳsce[21] ðæt ic ęft forlidennesse gefare, and ðīnne[22] gelīcan[22] ęft ne gemēte."

[1] Here = *in order that*. See **157**. 1.

[2] See **195**.

[3] Proper adjectives in **-isc**, following the Latin, are often used where we employ the genitive. Translate, *of Tyre*.

[4] Lat. *princeps*. [5] See **143**.

[6] Lat. *epulas*.

[7] MS. **fæstnesse**. Lat. *pietati*.

[8] Lat. *forsitan*. [9] See **194**. *a*.

[9a] Neut. for masc.! [10] See **195**.

[11] See **196**. *d*.

[12] See **193**. *a*.

[13] Note the rare dual (**81**).

[14] See **55**. [15] See **184**. *a*.

[16] See **172**. 1.

[17] See **167**. **Gode** is supplied; the Latin has *deo favente*.

[18] See **194**. *b*. [19] Acc.

[20] Present or future? Could Mod. Eng. *is* be used to translate it?

[21] See **30**, and **194**. *b*.

[22] Mod. Eng. still has *thy like*. See **181**.

*The Incidents in the Gymnasium.*

Æfter ðisum wordum hē ēode on ðone weg ðe him getæht[1] wæs, ōð-ðæt hē becōm tō ðære ceastre geate, and ðær inēode. Mid-ðȳ-ðe hē ðōhte hwone hē biddan meahte līfes fultumes,[2] ðā geseah hē ænne nacodne cnapan geond ðā stræte iernan. Sē wæs mid[3] ęle gesmierwed, and mid scīetan begyrd, and bær geongra[4] manna[4] plegan[4] on handa, tō ðæm bæðstęde[5] belimpende.[6] And cleopode[7] micelre stefne,[8] and cwæð: "Gehīere,[9] gē ceasterwaran[10]! Gehīere, gē ęlðēodige,[11] frige and ðēowe, æðele and unæðele! Se bæðstęde is open."

Đā-ðā Apollonius ðæt gehīerde, hē hine unscrȳdde ðæm[12] healfan sciccelse ðe hē on hæfde, and ēode intō ðæm ðwēale.[13] And mid-ðȳ-ðe hē behēold hiera ānra[14] gehwilcne on hiera weorce, hē sōhte his gelīcan,[15] ac hē ne meahte hine ðær findan on ðæm flocce. Đā færinga cōm Arcestrates, ealre ðære ęēode[16] cyning,[17] mid micelre męnige his manna,[18] and inēode on ðæt bæð. Đā āgan se cyning plegian wið[19] his gefērum mid ðoðore.[20] And Apollonius hine[21] gemęngde,[21]

[1] See **187.**

[2] MS. **fultum.** See **159.** *b.*

[3] See **174.**

[4] Lat. *lusus juvenales.*

[5] Lat. *gymnasium.*

[6] Modifies **plegan.**

[7] See **20.**

[8] See **160.** 1. This word is the Chaucerian *steven.*

[9] See **95,** note.

[10] This is a compound word, formed of a Latin and an English element. Which is Latin, and what is its form in that language?

[11] Lat. *peregrini.* See **152.**

[12] See **162.** [13] Lat. *lavacrum.*

[14] See **154.** *b.*

[15] Lat. *parem,* Eng. *peer.*

[16] Lat. *regionis.*

[17] See **151.**

[18] Lat. *famularum.* See **154.** *a.*

[19] Why not **mid**?

[20] This curious word is very rare in Old English.

[21] Lat. *miscuit se.* See **184.** *b.*

swā-swā God wolde, on ðæs cyninges plegan, and, iernende, ðone ðoðor gelæhte,[1] and, mid swiftre hrædnesse geslægene,[2] ongēan geseȩnde tō ðǣm plegiendan cyninge. Eft hē āgēan āseȩnde; hē hrædlice slōg, swā hē hine[3] næfre feallan ne lēt. Se cyning ðā oncnēow ðæs geongan snelnesse,[4] ðæt hē wiste[5] ðæt hē næfde his gelīcan on ðǣm plegan.[6] Ðā cwæð hē tō his gefērum: "Gāð ēow heonan; ðes cniht, ðæs-ðe mē ðyncð,[7] is mīn gelīca."

Ðā-ðā Apollonius gehīerde ðæt se cyning hine hȩrede, hē arn hrædlice, and genēalǣcte tō ðǣm cyninge, and mid gelǣredre[8] handa[9] hē swang[10] ðone top mid swā micelre swiftnesse ðæt ðǣm cyninge wæs geðūht swilce hē of ielde tō geoguðe gewȩnd wǣre. And, æfter ðǣm, on his cynesetle hē him[11] gecwēmlice[12] ðēnode[13]; and, ðā-ðā hē ūtēode of ðǣm bæðe, hē[14] hine[15] lǣdde be ðǣre handa, and him[16] ðā siððan ðanan gewȩnde, ðæs weges[17] ðe hē ǣr cōm.

[1] See **114.**

[2] Lat. *subtili velocitate percussam.* The OE. participle is a little awkward.

[3] The ball.

[4] Lat. *velocitatem.*

[5] See **126.** What is the latest English quotation that you can find for this word?

[6] This clause is not very clear. The Latin has: *et quia sciebat se* (*i.e.* Archistrates) *in pilæ lusu neminem parem habere, ad suos ait, famuli, recedite; hic enim juvenis,* etc.

[7] Lat. *ut suspicor.* See **157.** 1 and **164.** *l.* What Mod. Eng. word comes from **mē ðyncð**?

[8] Lat. *docta.*

[9] See **51.** 3.

[10] Here the English departs from the Latin: *ceroma fricavit eum tanta subtilitate, ut de sene juvenem redderet.* **Top** would seem to signify the same as **ðoðor.**

[11] See **164.** *e.*

[12] Lat. *gratissime.*

[13] See **28.**

[14] Apollonius.

[15] Archistrates.

[16] See **184.** *a.*

[17] See **157.**

Đā cwæð se cyning tō his mannum,[1] siððan Apollonius āgān[2] wæs: "Ic swęrie ðurh ðā gemænan hæle[3] ðæt ic mē næfre bęt ne baðode ðonne ic dyde[4] tō-dæg, nāt ic ðurh[5] hwilces geonges mannes ðēnunge."[6] Đā beseah hē hine tō ānum his manna, and cwæð: "Gā, and gewite hwæt[7] se geonga mann sīe, ðe mē tō-dæg swā wel gehīersumode."

Se mann ðā ēode æfter Apollonio. Mid-ðȳ-ðe hē geseah ðæt hē[8] wæs mid horgum[9] sciccelse bewæfed, ðā wende hē ongēan tō ðæm cyninge, and cwæð: "Se geonga mann ðe[10] ðū æfter āscodest is forliden[11] mann.[11]" Đā cwæð se cyning: "Đurh[12] hwæt[12] wāst[13] ðū ðæt?" Se mann him andswarode, and cwæð: "Đēah hē hit self forswīge,[14] his gegierela hine gesweotolað." Đā cwæð se cyning: "Gā hrædlice, and sęge him ðæt[15] 'se cyning bitt ðē ðæt ðū cume[16] tō his gereorde.'"

## *Apollonius at the Feast.*

Đā Apollonius ðæt gehīerde, hē ðæm gehīersumode, and ēode forð mid ðæm męnn, ōð-ðæt hē becōm tō ðæs cyninges

[1] Lat. *amicos.*

[2] How is the sense of Mod. Eng. *ago* related to that of this word?

[3] This phrase shows Christian influence.

[4] Note this use of **dōn** to replace a verb of specific meaning.

[5] Governs **ðēnunge**.

[6] See **28**.

[7] How does this, as here used, differ in meaning from **hwā**?

[8] Apollonius. [9] Lat. *sordido.*

[10] Governed by **æfter**. See **87**. *c* and **201**. 1.

[11] Lat. *naufragus.*

[12] Lat. *unde.*

[13] See **126**. [14] See **196**. *e.*

[15] Confusion of two constructions, the direct and the indirect.

[16] Lat. *ut venias.* Translate by the infinitive, as often in such cases.

healle.[1] Đā ēode se mann in beforan tō ðǣm cyninge, and cwæð: "Se forlidena[2] mann is cumen, ðe ðū æfter sęndest[3]; ac hē ne mæg for sceame ingān būtan scrūde." Đā hēt se cyning hine sōna gescrȳdan mid weorðfullum[4] scrūde, and hēt hine ingān tō ðǣm gereorde.

Đā ēode Apollonius in, and gesæt, ðǣr him getǣht[5] wæs, ongēan ðone cyning. Đā[6] wearð ðā sēo ðēnung[7] ingeboren, and, æfter ðǣm, cynelic[8] gebēorscipe.[8] And Apollonius nān ðing ne æt, ðēah-ðe ealle ōðre męnn ǣton and blīðe wǣron. Ac hē behēold ðæt gold, and ðæt seolfor, and ðā dēorwurðan[9] rēaf, and ðā bēodas, and ðā cynelican ðēnunga.[10] Đā-ðā hē ðis eall mid sārnesse[11] behēold, ðā sæt sum eald and sum[12] æfestig ealdormann be ðǣm cyninge. Mid-ðȳ-ðe hē geseah ðæt Apollonius swā sārlice sæt, and eall ðing behēold, and nān ðing ne æt, ðā cwæð hē tō ðǣm cyninge: "Đū[13] gōda cyning, efne, ðes mann ðe[14] ðū swā wel wið gedēst, hē is swīðe æfestfull for ðīnum gōde." Đā cwæð se cyning: "Đē[15] misðyncð; sōðlice ðes geonga mann ne æfestað on nānum ðingum ðe hē hēr gesiehð, ac hē cȳð[16] ðæt hæfð[17] fela

[1] Lat. *ad regem.*

[2] See **55**.

[3] Is this present or preterit (**113**)?

[4] Lat. *dignis.*

[5] See **187**.

[6] It has been suggested that the account of this feast may have been imitated from that in *Odys.* 4. 71 ff.

[7] Lat. *gustatio*, a sort of first course.

[8] Lat. *cena regalis.*

[9] See **146**.

[10] Lat. *ministeria.*

[11] Lat. *dolore.*

[12] Note the curious repetition of **sum**. The Latin has *senex invidus.*

[13] Lat. *bone rex.* See **152**.

[14] Governed by **wið**.

[15] See **164**. *l.*

[16] Lat. *testatur.*

[17] See **189**, note.

forloren.[1]" Ða beseah Arcestrates se cyning blīðum[2] andwlitan[2] tō Apollonio, and cwæð: "Đū geonga mann, bēo[3] blīðe[3] mid ūs, and gehyht[4] on God, ðæt ðū mōte self tō ðǣm sēlran becuman."

*Entry of the Princess.*

Mid-ðȳ-ðe se cyning ðās word gecwæð, ðā færinga ðǣr ēode in ðæs cyninges geong dohtor,[5] and cyste hiere fæder and ðā ymbsittendan.[6] Đā[7] hēo becōm tō Apollonio, ðā gewęnde hēo ongēan tō hiere fæder, and cwæð: "Đū gōda cyning, and mīn se[8] lēofesta[9] fæder, hwæt[10] is ðes geonga mann, ðe ongēan ðē on swā weorðlicum setle sitt, mid sārlicum[11] andwlitan; nāt[12] ic hwæt hē besorgað.[13]" Đā cwæð se cyning: "Lēofe[14] dohtor, ðes geonga mann is forliden; and hē gecwēmde mē manna bętst[15] on ðǣm plegan. For-ðām ic hine gelaðode tō ðisum ūrum gebēorscipe. Nāt ic hwæt hē is, nē hwanan hē is; ac gif ðū wille witan hwæt hē sīe, āsca hine, for-ðām ðē[16] gedafenað[17] ðæt ðū wite.[18]"

Đā ēode ðæt mæden tō Apollonio, and mid forwandiendre[19] sprǣce cwæð: "Đēah ðū stille[20] sīe and unrōt,

[1] See **forlēosan**, and **37**.

[2] Lat. *hilari vultu*. See **174**.

[3] Lat. *epulare*.

[4] Lat. *spera*. See **197**.

[5] What state and period of civilization is indicated by the presence of the girl at the banquet?

[6] See **181**.

[7] See **202**. *d*.

[8] Redundant, according to our conceptions. See **152**.

[9] Lat. *optime*.

[10] Lat. *quis*.

[11] Lat. *flebili*.

[12] See **126**.

[13] Lat. *dolet*.

[14] See **55**. Lat. *dulcis*.

[15] See **66** and **154**. *d*. Nom., belonging to **hē**.

[16] See **164**. *k*.

[17] Lat. *decet*.

[18] See **194**. *a*.

[19] Lat. *verecundo*.

[20] See **59**.

ðēah[1] ic ðīne æðelborennesse[2] on ðē gesēo. Nū[3] ðonne,[3] gif ðē[4] tō hęfig ne ðynce,[5] sęge mē ðīnne naman, and ðīn gelimp[6] āręce mē." Đā cwæð Apollonius: "Gif ðū for nīede[7] āscast æfter mīnum naman, ic sęcge ðē, Ic hine forlēas on sǣ. Gif ðū wilt mīne æðelborennesse witan, wite ðū ðæt ic hīe forlēt on Tharsum.[8]" Đæt mæden cwæð: "Sęge mē gewislicor,[9] ðæt ic hit mæge understandan." Apollonius ðā sōðlice hiere āreahte[10] eall[11] his gelimp, and æt ðǣre sprǣce[12] ęnde him[13] fēollon tēaras of ðǣm ēagum.

Mid-ðȳ-ðe se cyning ðæt geseah, hē bewęnde hine ðā tō ðǣre dehter,[14] and cwæð: "Lēofe dohtor, ðū gesyngodest, mid-ðȳ-ðe[15] ðū woldest witan his naman and his gelimp. Đū hæfst nū geednīwod his eald sār,[16] ac ic bidde ðē ðæt ðū giefe him swā-hwæt-swā ðū wille. Đā-ðā ðæt mæden gehīerde ðæt hiere wæs ālīefed fram hiere fæder[17] ðæt[18] hēo ǣr hiere[19] self[19] gedōn wolde, ðā cwæð hēo tō Apollonio: "Apolloni, sōðlice ðū eart ūre[20];

[1] Second correlative = Lat. *tamen*. Translate *yet*, or omit (**201**. *e*).

[2] Lat. *nobilitatem*.

[3] Are these notes of time? The Latin has nothing similar.

[4] See **164**. *l*. [5] See **196**. *d*.

[6] Lat. *casus tuos*. Observe the general resemblance to the story of Dido, in the *Æneid*.

[7] MS. **neode**. Lat. *necessitatis*.

[8] See p. 165, n. 1.

[9] Lat. *apertius*.

[10] See **114**.

[11] Plural.

[12] See **153**. *i*.

[13] See **161**. 2.

[14] See **52**. 2.

[15] Lat. *dum*.

[16] Lat. *veteres ei renovasti dolores*, a reminiscence of the Virgilian (*Æn*. II. 3) *jubes renovare dolorem*.

[17] See **43**. 8. [18] = *what*.

[19] Lat. *ipsa*.

[20] Note this predicate use of **ūre**, = Lat. *noster es* (cf. *Æn*. II. 149).

forlǣt ðīne murcnunge[1]; and, nū[2] ic mīnes fæder[3] lēafe hæbbe, ic gedō[4] ðē weligne." Apollonius hiere ðæs ðancode,[5] and se cyning blissode on his dohtor welwillendnesse,[6] and hiere tō cwæð: "Lēofe dohtor, hāt fęccean ðīne hearpan,[7] and gecīeg ðē tō ðīnum frīend,[8] and āfiersa fram ðǣm geongan his sārnesse."

## *A Lesson in Music.*

Ðā ēode hēo ūt,[9] and hēt fęccean hiere hearpan. And sōna swā hēo hearpian ongann, hēo mid wynsumum sange gemęngde ðǣre hearpan swēg. Ðā ongunnon ealle ðā męnn hīe hęrian on hiere swēgcræfte; and Apollonius āna[10] swīgode. Ðā cwæð se cyning: "Apolloni, nū ðū dēst[11] yfele, for-ðām-ðe ealle męnn hęriað mīne dohtor on hiere swēgcræfte,[12] and ðū āna hīe, swīgende,[12a] tǣlst.[13]" Apollonius cwæð: "Ēalā, ðū gōda cyning, gif ðū mē gelīefst,[14] ic sęcge ðæt ic ongiete ðæt sōðlice ðīn dohtor gefēoll[15] on swēgcræft, ac hēo næfð hine nā wel geleornod; ac hāt mē[16] nū sęllan ðā hearpan, ðonne wāst[17] ðū nū ðæt ðū gīet nāst.[17]" Arcestrates se cyning cwæð: "Apolloni,

[1] Lat. *mærorem.*

[2] *Now*, or *since?*

[3] See **43.** 8.

[4] Future sense, *will make.* See **173.**

[5] See **159.** *a.*

[6] Lat. *benignitate.*

[7] Lat. *lyram.*

[8] This clause is not altogether clear. It seems to stand for the Lat. *exhilara convivium*, though of course it does not translate these words.

[9] Not in the Latin.

[10] See **79.** [11] See **140.**

[12] Lat. *arte musica.*

[12a] For **swigiende.**

[13] Lat. *vituperas.*

[14] See **196.** *d.*

[15] Lat. *incidit.* Translate, *has chanced.*

[16] See **164.** *a.* [17] See **126.**

ic oncnāwe sōðlice ðæt ðū eart[1] on eallum ðingum wel gelǣred."

Ðā hēt se cyning sęllan Apollonie ðā hearpan. Apollonius ðā ūtēode, and hine scrȳdde, and sętte ænne cynehelm upon his hēafod, and nōm ðā hearpan on his hand, and inēode, and swā stōd ðæt se cyning and ealle ðā ymbsittendan wēndon ðæt hē nǣre Apollonius, ac ðæt hē wǣre Apollines,[2] ðǣra hǣðenra god. Ðā wearð stilnes and swīge[3] geworden innan ðǣre healle. And Apollonius his hearpenægl genōm, and hē ðā hearpestręngas mid cræfte āstyrian ongan, and ðǣre hearpan swēg mid wynsumum sange gemęngde.[4] And se cyning self, and ealle ðe ðǣr andwearde wǣron, micelre stefne cleopedon and hine hęredon. Æfter ðisum forlēt[5] Apollonius ðā hearpan, and[6] plegode, and fela fægerra ðinga[7] ðǣr forðtēah,[8] ðe ðǣm folce ungecnāwen wæs and ungewunelic. And him[9] eallum ðearle līcode ǣlc ðǣra ðinga[7] ðe hē forðtēah.

Sōðlice, mid-ðȳ-ðe ðæs cyninges dohtor geseah ðæt Apollonius on eallum gōdum cræftum swā wel wæs getogen,[10] ðā gefēoll hiere mōd on his lufe. Ðā, æfter ðæs bēorscipes geęndunge, cwæð ðæt mæden tō ðǣm cyninge: "Lēofa[11]

[1] See **194**, note. [2] Apollo.

[3] We are reminded of *Æn.* II. 1, *Conticuere omnes.*

[4] To this sentence there corresponds in the Latin: —

arripuit plectrum, animumque accommodat arti;
cum chordis miscetur vox cantu modulata.

[5] Lat. *deponens*

[6] The rest of this sentence paraphrases: *induit statum comicum et inauditas actiones expressit, deinde tragicum.*

[7] See **154**. *a*, *b*.

[8] Lat. *expressit.*

[9] See **164**. *k*.

[10] See **getēon**. What relation has **getogen** to Mod. Eng. *wanton?*

[11] See **55**.

fæder, ðū līefdest mē, lȳtle[1] ǣr,[1] ðæt[2] ic[2] mōste[2] giefan Apollonio swā-hwæt-swā ic wolde of ðīnum goldhorde." Arcestrates se cyning cwæð tō hiere: "Gief him swā-hwæt-swā ðū wille.[3]" Hēo ðā swīðe blīðe ūtēode,[4] and cwæð: "Lārēow[5] Apolloni, ic giefe ðē, be mīnes fæder lēafe, twā hund punda[6] goldes,[7] and fēower hund punda[6] gewihte[8] seolfres,[7] and ðone mǣstan dǣl dēorwurðes[9] rēafes, and twēntig ðēowa[10] manna.[10]" And hēo ðā ðus cwæð tō ðǣm ðēowum mannum: "Berað ðās ðing mid ēow, ðe ic behēt Apollonio mīnum lārēowe, and lęcgeað innan būre[11] beforan mīnum frēondum." Ðis wearð ðā ðus gedōn, æfter ðǣre cwēne hǣse[12]; and ealle ðā męnn hiere giefa hęredon ðe[13] hīe gesāwon. Ðā sōðlice geęndode se gebēorscipe, and ðā męnn ealle ārison,[14] and grētton ðone cyning and ðā cwēne, and bǣdon hīe gesunde bēon,[15] and hām gewęndon. Ēac swilce Apollonius cwæð: "Ðū gōda cyning, and earmra[16] gemiltsiend, and ðū cwēn, lāre[16] lufiend, bēon gē gesunde.[17]" Hē beseah ēac tō ðǣm ðēowum mannum, ðe ðæt mǣden him forgiefen hæfde,[18] and him cwæð tō: "Nimað ðās ðing mid

[1] Lat. *paulo ante.* See **178.**

[2] Translate by the infinitive sign, *to.* The OE. follows the Latin.

[3] See **197.**

[4] Not in Latin.

[5] Lat. *magister.*

[6] See **154.** *c.*

[7] See **153.** *f.*

[8] See **174.**

[9] MS. **deorwurðan.**

[10] Lat. *servos.*

[11] Lat. *triclinio.*

[12] See the derivation of Mod. Eng. *behest.*

[13] Refers to **męnn.**

[14] So in *Bēowulf* (653–655): "Werod eall ārās; grētte þā . . . guma ōðerne, . . . and him hǣl ābēad."

[15] Lat. *vale dicentes.*

[16] See **153.** *d.*

[17] Lat. *valete.*

[18] See **188.**

ēow, ðe mē sēo cwēn forgeaf, and gān[1] wē sēcean ūre giesthūs, ðæt wē mægen ūs[2] geręstan."

*Apollonius as Teacher.*

Đā ādrēd ðæt mæden ðæt hēo næfre ęft Apollonium ne gesāwe swā[3] hraðe swā hēo wolde; and ēode ðā tō hiere fæder, and cwæð: "Đū gōda cyning, līcað ðē wel ðæt Apollonius, ðe ðurh ūs tō-dæg gegōdod[4] is, ðus heonan fare,[5] and cumen yfele męnn and berēafien hine?" Se cyning cwæð: "Wel ðū cwæde. Hāt hine[6] findan hwær hē hine mæge weorðlicost[7] geręstan." Đā dyde ðæt mæden swā hiere beboden[8] wæs; and Apollonius onfēng ðære wununge ðe him betæht wæs, and ðær inēode, Gode[9] ðanciende, ðe him ne forwiernde[10] cynelices weorðscipes and frōfre. Ac ðæt mæden hæfde unstille[11] niht, mid ðære lufe onæled ðāra worda[12] and sanga ðe hēo gehīerde æt Apollonie. And nā lęng[13] hēo ne gebād ðonne hit dæg wæs, ac ēode sōna swā hit lēoht wæs, and gesæt beforan hiere fæder[14] będde. Đā cwæð se cyning: "Lēofe dohtor, for hwȳ[15] eart[16] ðū ðus ærwacol?" Đæt mæden cwæð: "Mē āweahton ðā gecneordnessa[17] ðe ic giestran-dæg[18] gehīerde. Nū bidde ic

[1] See **193.** *a.*
[2] See **184.** *b.*
[3] **Swā . . . wolde** not in Latin.
[4] Lat. *ditatus.*
[5] See **194.** *a.*
[6] MS. **him.**
[7] See **76.**
[8] See **187.**
[9] See **164.** *m.*
[10] See **159.** *a.*
[11] Lat. *inquietam.*
[12] Dependent on **lufe.**
[13] See **77.** [14] See **43.** 8.
[15] See **175.** [16] See **138.**
[17] Lat. *studia.* Translate, *accomplishments.*
[18] Lat. *hesterna.* Is **giestran** related to the Latin word?

ðē, for-ðām,[1] ðæt ðū befæste[2] mē ūrum cuman,[3] Apollonie, tō[4] lāre.[4]" Đā wearð se cyning ðearle geblissod, and hēt fęccean Apollonium, and him tō cwæð: "Mīn dohtor giernð ðæt hēo mōte leornian æt ðē ðā gesæligan lāre ðe ðū canst[5]; and, gif ðu wilt ðisum ðingum[6] gehīersum bēon, ic swęrie ðē, ðurh mīnes rīces mægenu,[7] ðæt swā-hwæt-swā ðū on sæ forlure, ic ðē ðæt on lande gestaðelie.[8]" Đā-ðā Apollonius ðæt gehīerde, hē onfēng ðæm[9] mæden tō lāre, and hiere tæhte swā wel swā hē self geleornode.[10]

*The Three Suitors.*

Hit gelamp ðā æfter ðisum, binnan fēawum tīdum,[11] ðæt Arcestrates se cyning hēold Apollonius hand on handa; and ēodon swā ūt on ðære ceastre strǣte. Đā, æt nīehstan, cōmon ðǣr gān[12] ongēan hīe ðrīe gelǣrde[13] weras and æðelborene, ðā lange ǣr gierndon[14] ðæs cyninges dohtor. Hīe ðā ealle ðrīe tōgædere ānre stefne[15] grētton ðone cyning. Đā smercode[16] se cyning, and him tō beseah,

[1] Lat. *itaque*.

[2] Lat. *tradas*.

[3] Lat. *hospiti*.

[4] Lat. *studiorum percipiendorum gratia*.

[5] Cf. Chaucer, *Miller's Tale* 18: "I *can* a noble tale." This sense occurs as late as the middle of the 17th century; Lovelace has: "Yet *can* I music too." So Jonson, *Magnetic Lady* 1. 1: "She *could* the Bible in the holy tongue."

[6] Lat. *desiderio natæ meæ*. See **165**.

[7] Lat. *vires*.

[8] Lat. *restituam*.

[9] See **164**. *j*.

[10] Here follows, in the Latin, an account of how the girl feigned illness, on account of her love for Apollonius.

[11] Lat. *post paucos dies*.

[12] See **199**. 1.

[13] Lat. *scholastici*.

[14] Lat. *in matrimonium petierunt*. Pluperfect (**188**).

[15] See **160**. 1.

[16] Lat. *subridens*.

and ðus cwæð: "Hwæt is ðæt, ðæt gē mē ānre stefne grētton?" Đā andswarode hiera ān, and cwæð: "Wē bǣdon gefyrn ðīnre dohtor; and ðū ūs oft hrædlice mid[1] ęlcunge[1] geswęnctest.[1] For-ðām wē cōmon hider tō-dæg ðus tōgædere. Wē sindon ðīne ceastergewaran, of æðelum gebyrdum[2] geborene; nū bidde wē ðē ðæt ðū gecēose ðē[3] ænne of ūs ðrīm, hwilcne ðū wille ðē[3] tō[4] āðume habban." Đā cwæð se cyning: "Nabbe gē nā gōdne[5] tīman ārēdod.[6] Mīn dohtor is nū swīðe bisig ymb hiere leornunga.[7] Ac, ðȳ-lǣs-ðe[8] ic ēow ā lęng slacie,[9] āwrītað ēowre naman on gewrite, and hiere morgengiefe[10]; ðonne āsęnde ic ðā gewritu mīnre dęhter, ðæt hēo self gecēose hwilcne ēower[11] hēo wille." Đā dydon ðā cnihtas swā; and se cyning nōm[12] ðā gewritu, and geinseglode hīe mid his hringe, and sealde Apollonio, ðus cweðende: "Nim nū, lārēow Apolloni, swā hit ðē ne mislīcie,[13] and bring ðīnum lǣringmǣdene.[14]" Đā nōm Apollonius ðā gewritu, and ēode tō ðǣre cynelican healle.[15]

[1] Lat. *differendo crucias.*

[2] Lat. *natalibus.*

[3] See **161.**

[4] Cf. Mod. Eng. 'take to wife.'

[5] Lat. *apto.*

[6] MS. **aredodne.**

[7] Lat. *studiorum.*

[8] Lat. *ne.*

[9] Lat. *videar . . . differre.*

[10] Lat. *dotis quantitatem.* The present given on the *morning* after marriage, according to Teutonic usage. Cf. Mod. Ger. *Morgengabe.*

[11] MS. **eowerne.**

[12] See **105.**

[13] Lat. *sine contumelia tua;* an apology for sending Apollonius on an errand. See **196.** *c.*

[14] Lat. *discipulæ.*

[15] Lat. *domum.* The Latin adds *introivit cubiculum.*

*The Princess Chooses.*

Mid-ðām-ðe ðæt mæden geseah Apollonium, ðā cwæð hēo: "Lārēow, hwȳ gǣst ðū āna[1]?" Apollonius cwæð: "Hlǣfdige[2]—næs gīet yfel wīf[3]—nim ðās gewritu, ðe ðīn fæder ðē sęnde,[4] and rǣd." Ðæt mæden nōm, and rǣdde ðǣra ðrēora cnihta naman; ac hēo ne funde[5] nā ðone naman ðǣron ðe hēo wolde. Ðā hēo ðā gewritu oferrǣd hæfde, ðā beseah hēo tō Apollonio, and cwæð: "Lārēow, ne ofðyncð[6] hit ðē gif ic ðus wer gecēose?" Apollonius cwæð: "Nā; ac ic blissie swīðor[7] ðæt ðū meaht, ðurh ðā lāre ðe ðū æt mē underfēnge, ðē self on gewrite gecȳðan hwilcne hiera ðū wille.[8] Mīn willa is ðæt ðū ðē wer gecēose ðǣr ðū self wille.[9]" Ðæt mæden cwæð: "Ēalā lārēow, gif ðū mē lufodest, ðū hit besorgodest.[10]" Æfter ðisum wordum hēo mid mōdes[11] ānrædnesse[11] āwrāt ōðer gewrit, and ðæt geinseglode, and sealde Apollonio. Apollonius hit ðā ūt bær on ðā strǣte,[12] and sealde ðǣm cyninge. Ðæt gewrit wæs ðus gewriten: "Ðū gōda cyning, and mīn se lēofesta fæder,

[1] The OE. is not clear. The Latin has: *Quid est quod singularis cubiculum introisti?*

[2] Lat. *domina.* How is **hlǣfdige** related in meaning to **hlāford**?

[3] Not clear either in the Latin or the English. Some MSS. have, *nondum mulier et mala;* one has, *non unquam mulier fuit mala.*

[4] Translate, *has sent.* See **188.**

[5] See **104.** [6] Lat. *dolet.*

[7] Translate, *rather.* See **76.**

[8] She has evidently learned from him how to write, according to the English. The Latin has: *Immo gratulor quod habundantia studiorum percepta me volente nubis.*

[9] See **196.** *c.*

[10] Lat. *doleres.* Indicative, where the optative might be expected.

[11] Lat. *amoris audacia.*

[12] Lat. *forum*, as above, p. 178, l. 13.

nū ðīn mildheortnes mē lēafe sealde ðæt ic self mōste cēosan hwilcne wer ic wolde, ic sęcge ðē tō sōðum, ðone forlidenan mann ic wille; and gif ðū wundrie ðæt swā sceamfæst[1] fæmne[1] swā unforwandiendlice[2] ðās word āwrāt, ðonne wite[3] ðū ðæt ic hæbbe ðurh weax āboden,[4] ðe nāne sceame ne can,[5] ðæt ic self ðē for sceame sęcgean ne meahte."

Ðā-ðā se cyning hæfde ðæt gewrit oferrād,[6] ðā nyste hē hwilcne forlidenne hēo nęmde. Beseah ðā tō ðæm ðrīm cnihtum, and cwæð: "Hwilc ēower is forliden?" Ðā cwæð hiera ān, se hātte Ardalius: "Ic eom forliden.[7]" Se ōðer him andwyrde, and cwæð: "Swīga ðū. Ādl ðē fornime,[8] ðæt ðū ne bēo[9] hāl nē gesund. Mid mē ðū bōccræft[10] leornodest, and ðū næfre būtan ðære ceastre geate fram mē ne cōme. Hwær gefōre[11] ðū forlidennesse?" Mid-ðȳ-ðe se cyning ne meahte findan hwilc hiera forliden wære,[12] hē beseah tō Apollonio, and cwæð: "Nim ðū, Apolloni, ðis gewrit, and rād hit; ēaðe mæg geweorðan ðæt ðū wite ðæt ic nāt, ðū ðe ðær andweard wære.[13]" Ðā nōm Apollonius ðæt gewrit, and rædde. And sōna swā hē ongeat ðæt hē gelufod

[1] Lat. *pudica virgo.*

[2] Lat. *impudenter;* one MS. *imprudenter.*

[3] See **198.**

[4] Lat. *mandavi.*

[5] See above, p. 178, n. 5.

[6] Lat. *perlectis.*

[7] On *for-* see Coleridge, *Omniana* (Bohn ed., p. 414): "It is grievous to think how much less careful the English have been to preserve than to acquire. Why have we lost, or all but lost, the *ver* or *for* as a prefix, — *fordone*, *forwearied*, etc.; and the *zer* or *to*, — *zerreissen*, to rend, etc.?"

[8] See **193.** *a.*

[9] See **196.** *g.*

[10] Lat. *litteras.*

[11] See **107.**

[12] See **194.** *b.*

[13] Is this optative?

wæs fram ðǣm mǣdene, his[1] andwlita[1] eall[1] ārēadode.[1] Đā se cyning ðæt geseah, ðā nōm hē Apollonies hand, and hine[2] hwōn fram ðǣm cnihtum gewęnde, and cwæð: "Wāst[3] ðū ðone forlidenan mann?" Apollonius cwæð: "Đū gōda cyning, gif ðīn willa bið, ic hine wāt." Đā geseah se cyning ðæt Apollonius mid rōsan[4] rudę[4] wæs eall oferbrǣded.[5] Đā ongeat hē ðone cwide, and ðus cwæð tō him: "Blissa, blissa, Apolloni, for-ðām-ðe mīn dohtor gewilnað ðæs[6] ðe mīn willa is. Ne mæg sōðlice on ðyllicum ðingum[7] nān[8] ðing geweorðan būtan Godes[9] willan." Arcestrates beseah tō ðǣm ðrīm cnihtum, and cwæð: "Sōð[10] is[10] ðæt ic ēow ǣr sǣde, ðæt gē ne cōmon on gedafenlicre[11] tīde mīnre dohtor tō biddanne, ac ðonne[12] hēo mæg hīe fram hiere lāre geǣmetgian, ðonne sęnde ic ēow word.[13]"

Đā gewęndon hīe hām mid ðisse andsware, and Arcestrates se cyning hēold forð on Apollonius hand, and hine lǣdde hām mid him, nā swilce hē cuma wǣre,[14] ac swilce hē his āðum wǣre. Đā, æt nīehstan, forlēt se cyning Apollonius hand, and ēode āna intō ðǣm būre ðǣr his dohtor inne wæs, and ðus cwæð: "Lēofe dohtor, hwone hæfst ðū ðē gecoren tō gemæccean[15]?" Đæt mǣden[16] ðā fēoll tō hiere fæder fōtum, and cwæð: "Đū ārfæsta[17]

[1] Lat. *erubuit.*
[2] See **184**. *b.*
[3] See **126**. Lat. *invenisti.*
[4] Lat. *roseo rubore.*
[5] Lat. *perfusam.*
[6] See **156**. *a.*
[7] Lat. *hujusmodi negotio.*
[8] See **183**.
[9] A Christian trait.
[10] Lat. *certe.*
[11] Lat. *apto.* See p. 179, l. 8.
[12] See **202**. *d.*
[13] Note the English idiom. The Latin has, *mittam ad vos.*
[14] See **196**. *c.* [15] Lat. *conjugem.*
[16] See **28**. [17] Lat. *piissime.*

fæder, gehīer ðīnre dohtor willan.[1] Ic lufie ðone forlidenan mann, ðe wæs ðurh ungelimp[2] beswicen[2]; ac, ðȳ-lǣs-ðe[3] ðē twēonie[4] ðǣre sprǣce, Apollonium ic wille, mīnne lārēow; and gif ðū mē him ne sęlest, ðū forlǣtst ðīne dohtor." Se cyning ðā sōðlice ne meahte ārǣfnian[5] his dohtor tēaras, ac ārærde hīe ūp, and hiere tō cwæð: "Lēofe dohtor, ne ondrǣd ðū ðē ǣniges[6] ðinges.[6] Ðū hæfst gecoren ðone wer ðe mē wel līcað." Ēode ðā ūt, and beseah tō Apollonio, and cwæð: "Lārēow Apolloni, ic smēade mīnre dohtor mōdes willan; ðā āreahte hēo mid wōpe[7] betweox ōðre sprǣce, ðās ðing ðus cweðende: 'Ðū geswōre Apollonio, gif hē wolde gehīersumian mīnum willan on lāre, ðæt ðū woldest him geinnian[8] swā-hwæt-swā sēo sǣ him ætbrǣd.[9] Nū, for-ðām-ðe hē gehīersum wæs ðīnre hǣse and mīnum willan, ic fōr æfter him [mid willan and mid lāre[10]].'"

[1] Lat. *desiderium.*

[2] Lat. *fortuna deceptum.*

[3] OE. **ðȳ-lǣs-ðe** gives Mod. Eng. *lest.* What phonological rule determines the final *t*?

[4] See **159.** *b* and **196.** *f.*

[5] Lat. *sustinens.*

[6] Lat. *de aliqua re.*

[7] Lat. *lacrimis* (cf. *Æn.* III. 348).

[8] Lat. *dares.* [9] Lat. *abstulit.*

[10] The OE. MS. breaks off at **him.** I have supplied what follows according to the Latin, *voluntate et doctrina.* The story thus continues in the Latin: After the marriage, Apollonius hears of the death of King Antiochus, and, with his wife, sets sail for Antioch. There follow the events related in the Shakespearean *Pericles,* in the main as in Acts III., IV., and V., though with not a few differences. The infant daughter has grown up, and, after a variety of experiences, has been restored to Apollonius. His queen is priestess of Diana of Ephesus, and thither he proceeds, being warned by an angel in a dream to make that, instead of Tarsus, his next goal. At this point the OE. fragment recommences.

*Apollonius relates his Adventures.*

Đā wæs hiere[1] gecȳðed, ðe ðǣr ealdor[2] wæs, ðæt ðǣr wǣre sum cyning, mid his āðume and mid his dęhter, mid miclum giefum. Mid-ðām-ðe hēo ðæt gehīerde, hēo hīe selfe mid cynelicum rēafe gefrætwode and mid purpran gescrȳdde, and hiere hēafod mid golde and mid gimmum geglęngde, and, mid miclum fǣmnena hēape ymbtrymmed,[3] cōm tōgēanes ðǣm cyninge. Hēo wæs sōðlice ðearle wlitig; and, for ðǣre miclan lufe ðǣre clǣnnesse,[4] hīe sædon ealle ðæt ðǣr nǣre nān Dianan swā gecwēme[5] swā hēo.

Mid-ðām-ðe Apollonius ðæt geseah, hē mid his āðume and mid his dęhter tō hiere urnon,[6] and fēollon ealle tō hiere fōtum, and wēndon[7] ðæt hēo Diana wǣre, sēo gyden, for hiere miclan beorhtnesse and wlitę. Đæt hālig[8] ærn[8] wearð ðā geopenod, and ðā lāc[9] wǣron ingebrōhte, and Apollonius ongan[10] ðā sprecan and cweðan: "Ic fram

[1] The wife of Apollonius.

[2] Chief, *i.e.* chief priestess.

[3] Lat. *virginum constipata catervis.* An epic trait. Thus in the *Æneid* (4. 136), Dido goes forth, *magna stipante caterva.* Thus in the *Odyssey* (16. 413), Penelope "went on her way to the hall, *with the women her handmaids.*" And thus in *Beowulf* (923–925), Hrothgar

tryddode tīrfæst *getrume micle*
cystum gecȳðed, and his cwēn mid him
medostīg gemæt *mægðà hōse.*

[4] Lat. *castitatis.*

[5] Lat. *gratam.* See **165.**

[6] See **104.** Does this verb agree with its subject?

[7] Cf. Chaucer, *Knight's Tale* 243 ff.: —

I not whether sche be womman or goddesse;
But Venus is it, sothly as I gesse.

[8] Lat. *sacrario.* **Ærn** forms part of the Mod. Eng. *barn;* what does the other element of this word stand for?

[9] Lat. *muneribus.*

[10] Lat. *cœpit.*

cildhāde wæs Apollonius genęmned, on Tyrum geboren. Mid-ðām-ðe ic becōm tō fullum andgiete,[1] ðā næs nān cræft[2] ðe wǣre[3] fram cyningum begān, oððe fram æðelum mannum, ðæt ic ne cūðe.[4] . . . Đā wearð ic on sǣ forliden, and cōm tō Cyrenense. Đā underfēng mē Arcestrates se cyning mid swā micelre lufe ðæt ic æt nīehstan geearnode ðæt hē geaf mę his āçęnnedan[5] dohtor tō gemæccean. Sēo[6] fōr ðā mid mē tō onfōnne mīnum cynerīce, and ðās mīne dohtor, ðe ic beforan ðē, Diana, geandweard hæbbe, āçęnde on sǣ, and hiere gāst ālēt. Ic ðā hīe mid cynelicum rēafe gescrȳdde, and mid golde and gewrite on ciste ālęgde, ðæt sē, ðe hīe funde, hīe weorðlice bebyrgde[7]; and ðās mīne dohtor befæste[8] ðǣm mānfullestum[9] mannum[9] tō fēdanne.[10] Fōr mē ðā tō Egypta lande fēowertīene gēar on hēofe. Đā ic ongēan cōm, ðā sǣdon hīe mē ðæt mīn dohtor wǣre forðfaren,[11] and mē wæs mīn sār eall geednīwod."

*The Recognition.*

Mid-ðām-ðe hē ðās ðing eall āreaht hæfde, Arcestrate sōðlice, his wīf, ūp ārās and hine ymbclypte. Đā nyste nā[12] Apollonius, nē[13] ne[13] gelīefde, ðæt hēo his gemæccea

[1] Lat. *scientiam.*

[2] Lat. *ars.*

[3] See **197.**

[4] I have omitted the portion which relates to his adventures before his shipwreck.

[5] Translate, *own.*

[6] Used almost as personal pronoun. From what source is Mod. Eng. *she* derived?

[7] See **196.** *d.*

[8] Lat. *commendavi.*

[9] MS. **manfullestan mannan.** Lat. *nequissimis hominibus.*

[10] Lat. *nutriendam.*

[11] Lat. *defunctam.*

[12] See **183.**

[13] How do **nē** and **ne** differ in meaning?

wǣre,[1] ac scēaf[2] hīe fram him. Hēo ðā micelre stefne cleopode, and cwæð mid wōpe: "Ic eom Arcestrate ðīn gemæccea, Arcestrates dohtor ðæs cyninges, and ðū eart Apollonius mīn lārēow, ðe mē lǣrdest. Ðū eart se forlidena mann ðe ic lufode. . . . Hwǣr is mīn dohtor?" Hē bewęnde hine ðā tō Thasian,[3] and cwæð: "Ðis hēo is." And hīe wēopon ðā ealle, and ēac blissedon.[4] And ðæt word sprang geond eall ðæt land ðæt Apollonius, se mǣra cyning, hæfde funden his wīf. And ðǣr wearð ormǣte[5] bliss, and ðā organa wǣron[6] getogene,[6] and ðā bīeman geblāwene, and ðǣr wearð blīðe gebēorscipe gegearwod betweox ðǣm cyning and ðǣm folce. And hēo gesętte hiere gingran, ðe hiere folgode, tō sācerde, and, mid blisse and hēofe ealre ðǣre mǣgðe on Efesum, hēo fōr mid hiere were, and mid hiere āðume, and mid hiere dęhter, tō Antiochian, ðǣr Apollonio wæs ðæt cynerīce gehealden.[7] . . .

### *The Fisherman's Reward.*

Ðisum eallum ðus gedōnum,[8] ēode Apollonius, se mǣra cyning, wið ðā sǣ. Ðā geseah hē ðone ealdan fiscere, ðe hine ǣr nacodne underfēng. Ðā hēt se cyning hine

[1] See **194**. *b*. [2] Lat. *repellit*.

[3] More properly, 'Tharsian'; but cf. Shakespeare's *Thaisa*.

[4] Cf. Macaulay's "With weeping and with laughter still is the story told."

[5] Lat. *ingens*.

[6] Lat. *disponuntur*. Translate, *were played*.

[7] At this point there is an account of Apollonius' travels among his former acquaintances, rewarding them according to their deserts, and cheering the last hours of Archistrates, who divides his kingdom between his daughter and Apollonius.

[8] See **167**.

fǽrlice gelæccean, and tō ðǽre cynelican[1] healle[1] gelǽdan. Đā-ðā se fiscere ðæt geseah, ðæt hine ðā cęmpan[2] woldon niman, ðā wēnde hē ǽrest ðæt hine man sceolde ofslēan; ac, mid-ðām-ðe hē cōm intō ðæs cyninges healle, ðā hēt se cyning hine lǽdan tōforan ðǽre cwēne, and ðus cwæð: "Ēalā, ðū ēadge cwēn, ðis is mīn tācenbora,[3] ðe mē nacodne underfēng, and mē getǽhte ðæt ic tō ðē becōm." Đā beseah Apollonius se cyning tō ðǽm fiscere, and cwæð: "Ēalā, welwillenda[4] ealda,[5] ic eom Apollonius se Tyrisca, ðǽm ðū sealdest healfne ðīnne wǽfels." Him geaf ðā se cyning twā hund gyldenra[6] pęninga,[6] and hæfde hine tō gefēran ðā-hwīle-ðe hē lifde. . . .

*The End.*

Æfter eallum ðisum Apollonius se cyning . . . welwillendlice lifde mid his gemæccean seofon[7] and hundseofontig gēara, and hēold ðæt cynerīce on Antiochia, and on Tyrum, and on Cyrenense. And hē lifde on stilnesse and on blisse ealle ðā tīd his līfes æfter his earfoðnesse. And twā bēc hē self gesętte be his fare[8]; and āne āsętte on ðǽm temple Diane, ōðre on bibliotheca.

Hēr ęndað ge wēa ge wela Apollonius ðæs Tyriscan.

[1] Lat. *palatium*.

[2] Lat. *militibus*.

[3] Lat. *paranymphus*. The OE. word properly translates Lat. *signifer*. Render here by *groomsman;* the fisherman had conducted him, as it were, to his bride.

[4] Lat. *benignissime*.

[5] See **55** and **181**.

[6] Lat. *sestertia auri*.

[7] But Lat. *quatuor*.

[8] Lat. *casus*.

Rǣde[1] se ðe wille; and gif hīe hwā[2] rǣde, ic bidde ðæt hē ðās āwęndednesse ne tǣle, ac ðæt hē hele swā-hwæt-swā ðǣron sīe tō tāle.[3]

[1] See **193.** *a.*

[2] *Any one.* Still found in the phrase, 'as *who* should say' (*Macb.* 3. 6. 42). In Dekker's *Satiromastix* (A.D. 1602) there occurs, "Suppose *who* enters now."

[3] Cf. Alfred's adjuration at p. 162, l. 12 ff.

## XIII.

## THE SIX DAYS' WORK OF CREATION.

(From Ælfric's Hexameron.)

[This may serve as a commentary on Selection I., which, it will be remembered, is a translation by Ælfric. Of the present work its editor, Norman, says (p. vii): "The treatise which is styled by Hickes in his 'Thesaurus' the 'Hexameron of St. Basil' is by no means a literal translation of the well known work of that father, but is partly original, and partly compiled from that work, and from the commentaries of the Venerable Bede upon Genesis. The author of it, from internal evidence, may be pronounced to be Ælfric, as frequent references are made to his homilies, and to his epistles on the Old and New Testament."

Of Basil's (d. 379) delivery of the original Hexameron, there is a brief, but spirited, account in Villemain's *Tableau de l'Éloquence Chrétienne au IV^e Siècle* (p. 116 ff.), from which we extract the following: "It is more interesting to survey him in the act of instructing the poor inhabitants of Cæsarea, elevating them to God by the contemplation of nature, and explaining to them the miracles of creation in discourses where the science of the orator who had been trained at Athens is concealed under a persuasive and popular simplicity. Such is the subject of the homilies which bear the name of *Hexameron*. Together with the errors in natural philosophy which are common to all antiquity, they contain many correct views, and descriptions at once felicitous and true."]

On ðǣm forman dæge ūre Dryhten gescēop seofonfeald[1] weorc: ðæt wǣron ealle ęnglas; and ðæs lēohtes anginn; and ðæt antimber ðe[2] hē of gescēop siððan gesceafta; ðā ūplican heofonan and ðā niðerlican eorðan; ealle wæterscipas[3]; and ðā wīdgillan sǣ; and ðæt ūplice[4] lyft; eall on ānum dæge. Ðā ęnglas hē geworhte on[5] wundorlicre

[1] See **146.** [2] Governed by **of.** [4] MS. **uplican.**
[3] See **143**, and p. 226, note 22. [5] Translate, *of.*

fægernesse, and *on[1] micelre strẹngðe,[2] manige ðūsenda, ealle līchamlēase, libbende on gāste; be ðǣm wē sǣdon hwīlum ǣr sweotollicor on gewrite. Næs nā God būtan lēohte ðā-ðā hē lēoht gescēop, — hē is him self lēoht ðe onlīeht[3] eall ðing; ac hē gescēop ðæs dæges lēoht, and hit siððan geēacnode mid ðǣm scīnendum tunglum, swā-swā hēræfter sægð.[4] Dæges lēoht hē gescēop, and tōdræfde ðā ðīestru, ðæt ðā gesceafta gesewenlice wurden ðurh ðæs dæges līehtinge on lẹnctenlicre[5] tīde; for-ðām hē on lẹnctentīde, swā-swā ūs lārēowas sẹcgeað, gescēop ðone forman dæg ðisse worulde — ðæt is on gerīmcræfte xv cl. Aprilis[6] — and siððan ðā gesceafta, swā-swā wē sẹcgeað hēr. Đā ūplican heofonas, ðe ẹnglas onwuniað, hē geworhte ēac ðā on ðǣm ilcan dæge; be ðǣm wē singað on sumum sealme[7] ðus: *Opera manuum tuarum sunt cœli* — "Đīnra handa geweorc sindon heofonas, Dryhten." Ẹft on ōðrum[8] sealme sang se ilca wītga: *Ipse dixit, et facta sunt; ipse mandavit, et creata sunt* — "Hē self hit gecwæð, and hīe wurdon geworhte; hē self hit bebēad, and hīe wurdon gesceapene." Đæt wæter and sēo eorðe wǣron gemẹngde ōð ðone ðriddan dæg; ðā tōdyde hīe God, swā-swā hēræfter sægð on ðisse gesẹtnesse. Đæt lyft hē gescēop tō ūres līfes strangunge; ðurh ðæt wē orðiað, and ēac ðā nīetenu; and ūre fnæst ātēorað gif wē ātēon ne magon, mid ūrum orðe, intō ūs

[1] Translate, *of*.

[2] From what adjective? The original ending is **-iðða**.

[3] How is this stem related to **lēoht**? Cf. Jn. 1. 9.

[4] = *it saith, is described*.

[5] From **lẹncten** is derived Mod. Eng. *Lent*.

[6] March 18.

[7] Ps. 102. 25.

[8] Ps. 33. 9.

ðæt lyft and ęft ūtāblāwan, ðā-hwīle-ðe wē bēoð cuce. Ðæt lyft is swā hēah swā-swā ðā heofonlican[1] wolcnu, and ēac ealswā brād swā-swā ðāre eorðan brādnes. On ðāre[2] flēogað fuglas, ac hiera fiðru ne meahten nāhwider hīe[3] āberan gif hīe ne ābāre sēo lyft.

*Secunda die fecit Deus firmamentum* —"On ðām ōðrum dæge ūre Dryhten geworhte firmamentum,[4]" ðe męnn hātað rodor. Sē[5] belȳcð[6] on his bōsme ealle eorðan[7] brādnesse,[7] and binnan him is gelōgod eall ðes middangeard; and hē āfre gǣð ābūtan swā-swā iernende hwēol, and hē nǣfre ne stęnt stille on ānum, and on ānre węndinge. Ðā-hwīle-ðe hē āne betyrnð, gāð witodlice forð fēower and twēntig tīda — ðæt is ðonne ealles ān dæg and ān niht. Ðone rodor God gehēt heofon. Hē is wundorlice hēalic and wīd on ymbhwyrfte; sē[5] gǣð under ðās eorðan ealswā[8] dēop swā bufan, ðēah-ðe ðā ungelǣredan męnn ðæs[9] gelīefan ne cunnon. And God ðā tōdǣlde ðurh his dryhtenlican miht ðā niðerlican wæteru ðe wǣron under ðām rodore fram ðām uplicum wæterum ðe wǣron bufan ðām rodore. Be ðām uplicum wæterum āwrāt se wītga[10] ðus: *Laudate eum cœli cœlorum, et aquæ quæ super cœlos sunt, laudent nomen Domini* —"Hęriað hine heofonas, ðāra heofona heofonas, and ēac ðā wæteru ðe bufan heofonas sind, hęrien hīe Godes

[1] Translate, *of heaven.*

[2] Nearly = **hiere.** **Lyft** fluctuates in gender, in this extract, between fem. and neut.

[3] Acc. plur.

[4] How is this word rendered in p. 124, l. 4.

[5] Nearly = **hē.**

[6] See **belūcan.**

[7] See **24.**

[8] What is the difference of derivation between *also* and *as?*

[9] See **156.** *g.*

[10] Ps. 148. 4.

naman." Ðus sægð ðæt hālge gewrit. Ne hęriað ðā wæteru mid nānum wordum God, ac ðurh ðā gesceafta, ðe hē gescēop wundorlice, his miht is gesweotolod, and hē bið swā gehęred.

On ðæm ðriddan dæge ūre Dryhten gegaderode ðā sælican[1] ȳða fram ðære eorðan brādnesse. Sēo eorðe wæs æt fruman eall ungesewenlic, for-ðām-ðe hēo eall wæs mid ȳðum oferðeaht[2]; ac God hīe āsyndrode fram ðæm sælicum ȳðum on hiere āgenne stęde, swā-swā hēo stęnt ōð ðis.[3] Hēo ne līð[4] on nānum ðinge, ac on[5] lofte[5] hēo stęnt ðurh ðæs Ānes miht ðe[6] eall ðing gescēop; and hē eall ðing gehielt[7] būtan geswince, for-ðām-ðe his nama is *Omnipotens Deus*, ðæt is on Ęnglisc, "Ælmihtig God." His willa is weorc, and hē wērig ne bið, and his micle miht ne mæg nāhwær swincan, swā-swā se wītga[8] āwrāt be him, cweðende, *Quia in manu ejus sunt omnes fines terræ* — "For-ðām-ðe on his handa sindon eall ðære eorðan gemæru." Ðā sæ hē gelōgode swā-swā hēo līð[4] gīet wiðinnan ðā eorðan on hiere ymbhwyrfte; and ðēah-ðe hēo brād sīe, and gebīeged gehū, and wundorlice dēop, hēo wunað eall swā-ðēah on ðære eorðan bōsme binnan hiere gemærum. God self geseah ðā ðæt hit gōd wæs swā, and hēt ðā eorðan ārodlice spryttan grōwende gærs, and ðā grēnan wyrta mid hiera āgnum sæde tō manig-fealdum læcecræfte[9]; and ðā wyrta sōna wynsumlice

[1] Translate, *of the sea.*
[2] See **114.**
[3] *Until this, until now.*
[4] See **28.**
[5] Mod. Eng. *aloft.*
[6] Refers to **Ānes.**
[7] See **gehealdan.** Present or preterit?
[8] Ps. 95. 4.
[9] Cf. *Rom. and Jul.* 2. 3. 15 ff.

grēowon,[1] mid manigfealdum blōstmum, mislice geblēode. God hēt hīe ēac spryttan, ðurh his godcundan miht, manigfeald trēowcynn, mid hiera wæstmum, mannum tō ofetum and tō ōðrum nīedum. And sēo eorðe, sōna swā-swā hiere[2] God bebēad, stōd mid holtum āgrōwen, and mid hēalicum cēderbēamum and mid manigum wudum on hiere wīdgilnesse, mid æppelbærum trēowum and mid ortgeardum, and mid ælcum trēowcynne mid hiera āgnum wæstmum.

On ðæm fēorðan dæge ūre Dryhten gecwæð, "Geweorðen nū lēoht" — ðæt sind, ðā lēohtan steorran on ðæm heofonlican rodore — "ðæt[3] hīe tōdælan mægen dæg fram niht, and hīe bēon tō tācne, and tīda gewyrcen dagum and gēarum, and scīnen on ðæm rodore, and onlīehten ðā eorðan." God geworhte ðā sōna twā scīnendu lēoht, miclu and mæru, mōnan and sunnan — ðā sunnan on męrgen tō ðæs dæges līehtinge, ðone mōnan on æfen mannum tō līehtinge on nihtlicre tīde mid getācnungum. And ealle steorran hē ēac ðā geworhte, and hē hīe gefæstnode on ðæm fæstan rodore, ðæt hīe ðā eorðan onlīehten mid hiera manigfealdum lēoman, and ðæs dæges gīemden[4] and ēac ðære niht, and ðæt lēoht tōdælden and ðā ðīestru on twā. Nāron nāne tīda on ðæm gēarlicum getæle ær-ðām-ðe se ælmihtiga Scieppend gescēop ðā tunglu tō gēarlicum tīdum, on manigum getācnungum, on lęnctenlicre emnihte — swā-swā lārēowas sęcgeað on gerīmcræfte, xii kl. Aprilis.[5] And ne bēoð

[1] See **grōwan.**
[2] Dat. sing.
[3] Cf. p. 125, l. 9 ff.
[4] Cf. p. 126, l. 1 ff.
[5] March 21· cf. p. 190, l. 12.

nǣfre Ēastron[1] ǣr se dæg cume ðæt ðæt lēoht hæbbe ðā ðīestru oferswīðed, ðæt is, ðæt se dæg bēo lęngra[2] ðonne sēo niht. Be ðǣm ōðrum tīdum cwið ðēos ilce bōc swā-swā God sǣde him self tō Noe: "Sǣdtīma and hærfest, sumer and winter, ciele and hætu, dæg and niht, ne geswīcað nǣfre." Ne standað nā ealle steorran on ðǣm stēapan rodore, ac hīe[3] sume[3] habbað synderlicne gang beneoðan ðǣm rodore, mislice geęndebyrde; and ðā, ðe on ðǣm rodore standað, tyrnað[4] ǣfre ābūtan mid ðǣm brādan rodore on ymbhwyrfte ðǣre eorðan, and hiera[5] nān ne fielð[6] of ðǣm fæstan rodore ðā-hwīle-ðe ðēos woruld wunað swā gehāl. Eall swā gǣð sēo sunne,[7] and sōðlice se mōna,[7] ābūtan ðās eorðan mid brādum ymbhwyrfte, eall swā feor beneoðan swā-swā hīe bufan ūs gāð. On ðǣm fīftan dæge ūre Dryhten gescēop of wætere ānum ealle fiscas on sǣ and on ēaum, and eall ðæt on him crīepð,[8] and ðā miclan hwalas on hiera cynrēnum,

[1] A plural (see the verb) used as singular. **Ēastre** (North. **Ēostre**) was, as Bede tells us, the name of a goddess whose festival was celebrated at the vernal equinox; it is a derivative of **ēast** (*east*, cognate with Skr. *ushās*, dawn), and this indicates that she was originally a goddess of the dawn. Bede adds that the passover-tide was so called, "Consueto antiquæ observationis vocabulo gaudia novæ solemnitatis vocantes."

[2] See **65**.

[3] See **151**.

[4] From the Greek word *τόρνος*, one of whose senses is *lathe-chisel*, comes the Greek, and hence the Latin (*tornare*) verb meaning 'to turn in a lathe,' and hence 'to fashion,' 'smooth'; from the Latin is derived the English verb.

[5] Dependent on **nān**.

[6] See **feallan**.

[7] Are these genders what one would expect? What determines them?

[8] See **crēopan**.

and ēac eall fugolcynn ealswā of wætere, and forgeaf ðǣm fuglum flyht geond ðās lyft, and ðǣm fiscum sund on ðǣm flōwendum ȳðum. God hīe geblētsode ðā, ðus cweðende tō ðǣm fiscum, "Weaxað[1] and bēoð gemanigfielde, and gefyllað ðā sæ"; and ēac, "Ðā fuglas bēon gemanigfielde bufan ðǣre eorðan"; and hit gewearð ðā swā. Ðā fuglas, sōðlice, ðe on flōdum wuniað, sindon flaxfēte be Godes forescēawunge, ðæt hīe swimman mægen and sēcean him fōdan. Sume bēoð langsweorede,[2] swā-swā swanas[3] and ielfetan, ðæt hīe ārǣcean him mægen męte[4] be[5] ðǣm grunde. And ðā, ðe be[6] flǣsce libbað, sindon cliferfēte,[7] and scearpe gebilode,[2] ðæt hīe bītan mægen on[8] sceortum sweorum, and swiftran[9] on flyhte, ðæt hīe gelimplice bēon tō hiera līfes[10] tilungum. Nis nā eall fugolcynn on Ęngla ðēode, nē on nānum earde ne bið nāht ēaðe eall fugolcynn, for-ðām-ðe hīe fela sindon, micle on wæstme, and hīe mislice flēogað, swā-swā ūs bēc sęcgeað sweotollice be[11] ðǣm.

[1] Cf. p. 126, l. 11 ff.

[2] Not past participles, though with the same ending.

[3] **Swanas** and **ielfetan** are here virtually identical; in ON. **swanr** is the poetical, **ālft** the ordinary designation. **Swan** has been doubtfully derived from the root of Lat. *sonare*, and **ielfete** (cf. the ON. form) from that of Lat. *albus*.

[4] Object of **ārǣcean.**

[5] Here = *from;* cf. '*by* the roots.'

[6] Cf. "Man shall not live *by* bread alone."

[7] **Clifer-** is apparently related to *cleave* = *adhere*.

[8] Translate, *with*. [9] See **64.**

[10] An interesting word, related to Mod. Eng. *leave*, Germ. *b(e)leiben*, Gr. λιπαρεῖν = *hold out, persist;* originally, therefore, *life* = *a holding out, continuance*. In German, *body*, one of its older meanings, is the commoner one for *Leib*. Here = *livelihood*.

[11] So in Fielding's *Amelia* (8.2):

On ðæm siextan dæge ūre Dryhten gecwæð: "Ācęnne[1] sēo eorðe nū cucu nīetenu on hiera cynrēne, and ðā crēopendan wyrmas, and eall dēorcynn on hiera cynrēnum." Hwæt[2]! ðā God geworhte, ðurh his wunderlican miht, eall nīetencynn on hiera cynrēnum, and ðā wildan dēor ðe on wudum eardiað, and eall ðæt fiðerfēte[3] bið, of ðære foresǣdan eorðan, and eall wyrmcynn ðā-ðe crēopende bēoð, and ðā rēðan lēon,[4] ðe hēr on lande ne bēoð, and ðā swiftan tigres,[4] and ða sellican pardes,[4] and ðā ęgeslican beran, and ðā ormætan elpas, ðā-ðe on Ęngla ðēode ācęnnede ne bēoð, and fela ōðru cynn ðe gē ealle ne cunnon. Ðā bēoð langsweorede ðe libbað be gærse, swā-swā olfend[5] and assa, hors and hrȳðeru, hēadēor and rāhdēor, and gehwilc ōðru; and ælc bið gelimplic tō his līfes tilunge. Wulfas, and lēon, and witodlice beran, habbað strangne sweoran, and sciertran[6] be[7] dǣle,[7] and māran tūscas, tō hiera mętes tilunge, forðām-ðe hīe libbað hiera līf[8] be rēaflāce, swā-swā gehwilc ōðru dēor[9] ðe dęriað ðæm ōðrum. Ðā elpas bēoð swā micle swilce ōðre muntas,[10] and hīe magon libban ðrēo hund gēara, and man mæg hīe węnian tō wīge mid

"I always love to speak *by* people as I find"; Shak., *M. V.* 1. 2. 58: "How say you *by* the French lord?"

[1] Cf. p. 126, l. 15 ff.

[2] Translate, *Lo!*

[3] **Fiðer-** is akin to Lat. *quattuor*.

[4] From Latin. With **pard** cf. Shakespeare's "Bearded like the *pard*."

[5] Not *elephant*, but *camel*. **Elp** (longer form, **elpend**) is *elephant*.

[6] See **65**.

[7] Translate, *in part*.

[8] See **168**. 1.

[9] Cf. Shakespeare's (*King Lear* 3. 4. 143): "Mice and rats and such small *deer*." What is the German?

[10] So the ME. *Bestiary* (ca. 1220) says (l. 604): "Elpes arn

cræfte, swā ðæt męnn wyrceað wīghūs him on uppan, and of ðæm feohtað on hiera fierdinge; ðonne flīehð ælc hors[1] āfæred[2] ðurh ðā elpas, and, gif him hwā wiðstęnt, hē bið sōna oftreden.[3] Ac wē nellað nā swīðor nū ymb ðis sprecan.

On ðæm ilcan dæge ūre Dryhten wolde mannan gewyrcean of ðære ilcan eorðan, for-ðām-ðe on ðisum fierste āfēoll se dēofol of ðære hēalican heofonan, mid his gegadum, for his ūpāhæfednesse, intō hęlle wīte. Ūre Dryhten cwæð be him on his hālgan godspelle,[4] *In veritate non stetit, quia veritas non est in eo* — "Hē ne wunode nā on sōðfæstnesse, for-ðām-ðe sēo sōðfæstnes nis nāteshwōn on him." God hine geworhte wundorlicne and fægerne. Ðā sceolde hē, gif hē wolde, weorðian his Scieppend mid micelre ēaðmōdnesse, ðe hine swā mærne gescēop. Ac hē ne dyde nā swā, ac mid dyrstigre mōdignesse cwæð[5] ðæt hē wolde wyrcean his cynesetl bufan Godes tunglum, ofer ðæra wolcna hēanesse on ðæm norðdæle, and bēon Gode gelīc. Ðā forlēt hē ðone Ælmihtigan, ðe is eall sōðfæstnes, and nolde habban his hlāfordscipe, ac wolde bēon him self on his

in Inde riche, on bodi borlic [burly] *berges ilike*."

[1] This seems to indicate that Ælfric employed Ambrose's adaptation of Basil's *Hexameron*, since the original does not contain this thought. Ambrose has (Bk. VI., Chap. V.): "Quid faciat eques, cum equus ejus perterrefactus tantæ bestiæ immanitate diffugiat." Above, where elephants are compared to mountains, Basil has, *βουνοί τινες σάρκινοι*; Ambrose, "velut quidam mobiles montes versantur in præliis," etc.

[2] So Shak., *Macb.* 5. 1. 41: "A soldier, and *afeard*."

[3] See **142.**

[4] Jn. 8. 44.

[5] Isa. 14. 13.

selfes anwealde. Đā næfde hē nāne fæstnunge, ac fēoll sōna ādūne, mid eallum ðǣm ęnglum ðe æt his rǣde wǣron, and hīe wurdon āwęnde tō āwiergdum dēoflum. Be ðǣm cwæð[1] se Hǣlend hēr on ðisum līfe, "Ic geseah ðone scuccan swā-swā scīnende līeget feallende ādūn drēorig of heofonum," for-ðām-ðe hē āhrēas ungerydelice.

Đā wolde God wyrcean, ðurh his wundorlican miht, mannan of eorðan, ðe mid ēaðmōdnesse sceolde geearnian ðone ilcan stęde on ðǣra ęngla gefērrǣdene ðe se dēofol forworhte mid his dyrstignesse; and God self cwæð ðā, swā-swā ūs sægð ðēos bōc, *Faciamus hominem ad imaginem nostram et similitudinem nostram, et reliqua*, etc., ðæt is on Ęngliscre sprǣce, "Uton gewyrcean mannan tō ūrre anlīcnesse and tō ūrre gelīcnesse, ðæt hē anweald hæbbe ofer eallum fiscum, and ofer fugolcynne, and ofer wildēorum,[2] and ofer eallum gesceafte." Hēr gē magon gehīeran ðā hālgan ðrīnesse and sōðe ānnesse ānre godcundnesse. "Uton wyrcean mannan"—ðǣr is sēo hālge ðrīnes. "Tō ūrre anlīcnesse"—ðǣr is sēo ānnes, tō ānre anlīcnesse, nā tō ðrīm anlīcnessum. On ðæs mannes sāwle is Godes anlīcnes, for-ðām is se mann sēlra[3] ðonne ðā sāwullēasan nīetenu, ðe nān andgiet nabbað ymb hiera āgenne Scieppend. God ðā geworhte of ðǣre eorðan lāme,[4] mid his hālgum handum, mannan tō his anlīcnesse, and āblēow on his ansīene līflicne blǣd; and hē wearð mann geworht on libbendre sāwle. God self ðā siððan gescēop him naman Adam, and of his ānum ribbe

[1] Lk. 10. 18.

[2] What is the etymology of *wilderness?* Cf. **35.**

[3] See **66.** [4] See **24.**

worhte him gemacan.[1] Hiere nama wæs Ēva, ūre[2] ealra mōdor. And God hīe ðā geblētsode mid ðisse blētsunge, "Weaxað and bēoð gemęnigfielde, and gefyllað ðā eorðan, and habbað ēow anweald ofer ðā eorðan, and ofer sæ fiscum, and ofer ðǣm flēogendum fuglum, and ofer eallum ðǣm nīetenum ðe styriað ofer eorðan." God gescēawode ðā eall his weorc, and hīe wǣron swīðe gōd. And se siexta dæg wearð swā geęndod.

And God ðā gefylde on ðǣm seofoðan dæge his weorc ðe hē worhte on wundorlicum dihte, and hine[3] ðā geręste, and ðone dæg geblētsode, for-ðām-ðe hē on ðǣm seofoðan dæge geswāc his weorces.[4] Næs hē nā wērig, ðēah-ðe hit swā āwriten sīe; nē hē mid ealle ne geswāc ðā gesceafta tō ednīwianne,[5] ac hē geswāc ðæs dihtes[4] ðæs dēoplican cræftes, swā ðæt hē seldcūðe siððan scieppan nolde, ac ðā ilcan geednīwian ōð ęnde ðisse worulde, swā-swā ūre Hælend on his hālgan godspelle gecwæð,[6] *Pater meus usque modo operatur, et ego operor*, ðæt is on Ęnglisc, "Mīn Fæder wyrcð gīet ōð ðisne andweardan dæg, and ic ēac wyrce." Ælce gēare[7] bið orf ācęnned, and męnnisce[8] męnn[8] tō mannum ācęnnede, ðā-ðe God gewyrcð swā-swā hē geworhte ðā ærran; and hē ne sciepð nāne sāwle būtan ðǣm cildum ānum, and eall nīetenu nabbað nāne sāwle.[9]

[1] In Chaucer's *Sir Thopas* we have: "For in this world no womman is Worthy to be my *make*." So in Spenser (*F. Q.* 3. 11. 2): "That was as trew in love as turtle to her *make*."

[2] See **153.** *a.*

[3] See **184.** *b.*

[4] See **156.** *k.*

[5] See **142.**

[6] Jn. 5. 17.

[7] See **176.**

[8] Translate, *human beings.*

[9] Based upon Basil 82, where he is combating the theory of the transmigration of souls.

# XIV.

## THE SONG OF THE GLEEMAN.

(Beowulf 89–100.)

[Hrothgar, King of the Danes, builds a spacious hall for the assembly of his retainers. There, from time to time, they are entertained by minstrelsy, — sometimes that of a professional gleeman, and sometimes improvised by one of the warriors, or even by the king himself (cf. *Iliad* 9. 185–189).

In reading the poetry, the paragraph of the Preface relating to the retention of MS. forms should be borne in mind.]

Þær wæs hearpan swēg,
swutol sang scopes.[1] Sægde sē þe cūþe [90]
frumsceaft fīra feorran ręccan,
cwæð[2] þæt se Ælmihtiga[3] eorðan worhte,

[1] For the accord of harp and voice see p. 175, l. 11, and *Odyssey* 8. 266: "Now as the minstrel touched the lyre, he lifted up his voice in sweet song."

[2] Thorkelin, the first editor of *Beowulf*, already noticed the resemblance between this song and that of Iopas in Virgil (*Æn.* 1. 740–747), though this is Christianized in its execution. An earlier sketch of the same conception was that in the *Georgics* (2. 475–482), of which Coningston says: "Virgil probably had in his mind here not only Lucretius and the Greek didactic poets, such as Xenophanes, Empedocles, and Aratus, but the legendary reputation of the poetic teachers of early Greece, such as Orpheus and Musæus. His own notion of an ancient bard is that of a hierophant of nature. . . . The conception belongs not to Augustan Rome, but to primitive Greece, where science was theological and imaginative, and verse the natu-

[3] Cf. p. 124, l. 4 ff.

wlitebeorhtne wang, swā[1] wæter bebūgeð[2];
gesęttе[3] Sigehrēþig sunnan[4] ǫnd mōnan[4]
lēoman tō lēohte landbūęndum, [95]
and gefrætwade foldan scēatas
leomum[5] ǫnd lēafum; līf ēac gescēop
cynna[6] gehwylcum þāra þe cwice hwyrfaþ.[7]
Swā ðā drihtguman drēamum lifdon
ēadiglīce. [100]

ral vehicle of all knowledge and thought. It had, however, been partially realized by Lucretius, whose example exercised a strong influence on Virgil's imagination." As to the possibility of an Old English poet's being familiar with Virgil, compare the testimony of Bede (*Eccl. Hist.* 4. 2) concerning the pupils of Theodore and Hadrian: "Usque hodie supersunt de eorum discipulis qui Latinam Græcamque linguam æque ut propriam, in qua nati sunt, norunt."

[1] Almost = *which*. In archaic German *so* is thus used: "Von allen, *so* da kamen."

[2] This phrase is found again in the *Andreas*. See p. 216, l. 18.

[3] Cf. p. 125, l. 12 ff. [4] See **153.** *b*.

[5] See **lim**, and **174**.

[6] Dependent upon **gehwylcum** (**154.** *b*).

[7] Here ends the song. The rest refers to Hrothgar's retainers.

# XV.

## THE ROUT OF THE ASSYRIANS.

(From the Judith.)

[Of this extract Ten Brink has said (*Early English Literature*): "To a lucid, well-constructed narrative are joined epic profusion, vigor, and animation. In the highest degree effective is the portrayal of Judith's return to Bethulia, of the warlike advance of the Hebrews, of the surprise of the Assyrian camp, the terror of the Assyrian nobles, who dare not disturb their lord in his rest, and finally of the disbandment and flight of the heathen host."

The portion here given omits the discovery of Holofernes' dead body by the Assyrians. It is based upon the Apocryphal book of Judith, the first few verses of the fifteenth chapter, especially verses 2, 5, 7, and 11. For further particulars see my edition of the *Judith*.

Attention is called to the device employed for indicating parallel or synonymous expressions, which have constituted one of the chief difficulties of OE. poetry. The device consists in the enclosure between reference-letters of the parallel expressions, the synonyms being designated by the same letters. For an example, see p. 204, ll. 5–7.]

Þā wurdon blīðe burhsittende,[1]
syððan hī gehȳrdon[2] hū sēo hālge[3] spræc [160]
ofer hēanne[4] weall. Hęre wæs on lustum,
wið þæs fæstengeates[5] folc ōnette,
weras wīf sǫmod[6]; wornum and hēapum,
ðrēatum[7] and ðrymmum þrungon and urnon
ongēan ðā Þēodnes mægð þūsendmælum, [165]

[1] See **28**. [2] See **19**. [3] See **55**. [4] See **58**. 1. [5] **Wið** sometimes governs the genitive; see **158**. [6] Here almost = **and**. Throughout the following poetry, remember **25**. [7] See **220**.

ealde ge geonge; ǣghwylcum[1] wearð
męn on ðǣre medobyrig mōd[2] ārēted,[3]
syððan hīe ongēaton þæt wæs[4] Iūdith cumen
ęft tō ēðle,[5] and ðā ofostlīce
hīe[6] mid ēaðmēdum in forlēton. [170]
Þā sēo glēawe[7] hēt golde gefrætewod[8]
hyre ðīnenne[9] þancolmōde[9]
þæs hęrewǣðan hēafod[10] onwrīðan,
and hyt[11] tō[12] bēhðe[12] blōdig[13] ætȳwan
þām burhlēodum,[14] hū hyre æt beaduwe[15] ge- [175]
spēow.[16]
Spræc[17] ðā sēo æðele tō eallum þām folce:—
"Hēr gē magon sweotole, sigerōfe hæleð,[18]
lēoda rǣswan,[18] on ðæs lāðestan
hǣðnes heaðorinces hēafod starian,
Holofernus[19] unlyfigendes,[20] [180]
þe ūs mǫnna mǣst[21] [a]morðra[a] gefręmede,

[1] Belongs to **męn**.

[2] Subject.

[3] What is the normal form of this word (**113**)?

[4] Note the auxiliary: *was come*, not *had come*.

[5] See **23**.

[6] Acc. sing.

[7] See **181**.

[8] Modifies **glēawe**.

[9] Acc. sing.

[10] Object of **onwrīðan**.

[11] For **hit**.

[12] = *as a sign*.

[13] Modifies **hyt**.

[14] Construe, **and ætȳwan hyt, blōdig, þām burhlēodum, tō bēhðe hū hyre**, etc.

[15] Unusual form for **beadwe**, from **beadu**.

[16] See **190**.

[17] For the order cf. Tennyson's line from the song in *The Princess:* "Rose a nurse of ninety years."

[18] See **152**.

[19] Genitive.

[20] **y** is sometimes found for **i**, as well as for **ie** (**19**).

[21] **Mǣst** seems to have two

sārra [a]sorga[a], and þæt swȳðor[1] gȳt[2]
ȳcan[2] wolde; ac him ne ūðe[3] God
lęngran līfes,[4] þæt hē mid lāððum ūs
ęglan mōste[5]; ic him ealdor[6] ōðþrǫng[7] [185]
þurh Godes fultum. Nū ic [b]gumena[b] gehwæne[8]
þyssa[1] [b]burglēoda[b] biddan wylle,[1]
[b]randwiggendra[b], þæt gē recene ēow[9]
fȳsan[10] tō gefeohte; syððan [c]frymða God[c],
[c]ārfæst Cyning[c], ēastan sęnde [190]
lēohtne lēoman, berað [d]linde[d] forð,
[d]bord[d] for brēostum and byrnhǫmas,
scīre helmas in sceaðena gemǫng,
fyllan[2] [e]folctogan[e] fāgum sweordum,
fæge [e]frumgāras[e]. Fȳnd[2] syndon ēowere[11] [195]
gedēmed tō dēaðe and gē [f]dōm[f] āgon,[12]
[f]tīr[f] æt tohtan, swā ēow getācnod hafað[13]
mihtig Dryhten þurh mīne hand."
Þā wearð [g]snelra[g] werod snūde gegearewod,

senses and two constructions in this and similar passages. In one it apparently = *chiefest*, and is construed with the preceding genitive; in the other = *most in number*, and is construed with the following genitive. Cf. *Andr.* 1447: "þā þe heardra mæst hearma gefręmedan"; *Bēow.* 2645: "forðām hē manna mæst mærða gefręmede"; etc.

[1] See above, p. 203, n. 20.

[2] See **19**; **199. 1.**

[3] See **129.**

[4] See **159.** *a.*

[5] See **137.**

[6] Neuter.

[7] See **142.**

[8] LWS. acc. of **gehwā.** See **154.** *b.*

[9] See **184.** *b.*

[10] Opt. pres. 2 plur.

[11] Construe, **ēowere fȳnd syndon gedēmed**, etc.

[12] See **127.** What two words in this line have the same root? Which is the derivative?

[13] Is this the usual form?

[g]cēnra[g] tō campe; stōpon[1] cynerōfe [200]
sęcgas and gesīðas, bæron [sige]þūfas,
fōron tō gefeohte forð on gerihte,
hæleð[2] under helmum of[3] ðære hālgan byrig
on[4] ðæt dægrēd sylf; [a]dynedan[a] scildas,
hlūde [a]hlummon[a]. Þæs se hlanca gefeah[5] [205]
wulf in walde,[6] and se wanna hrefn,
wælgīfre fugel: wistan[7] bēgen
þæt him[8] ðā þēodguman þōhton[9] tilian
fylle[10] on fægum; ac him flēah[11] on lāst
earn ætes[12] georn, ūrigfeðera,[13] [210]
salowigpāda[14] sang hildelēoð,
hyrnednębba. Stōpon [b]heaðorincas[b],
[b]beornas[b] tō beadowe [c]bordum[c][15] beðeahte,

[1] See **stæppan.**

[2] Nom. plur. See **43.** 9.

[3] = *from*, not *of.*

[4] = *at.*

[5] See **gefēon.**

[6] Is this the usual form? See **21.**

[7] Irregular for **wiston (126).**

[8] Not reflexive.

[9] See **ðęncean.**

[10] = *feast.* See *Iliad* 22. 42: "Then quickly would dogs and vultures devour him on the field."

[11] See **flēogan.**

[12] See **155.** *c.*

[13] See Shelley's description of the rooks, in the *Lines written among the Euganean Hills:*—

Gathering round with wings all hoar,
Through the dewy mist they soar.
* * * * *
So their plumes of purple grain,
Starred with drops of golden rain,
Gleam, etc.

Perhaps Milton may have borrowed the word from OE. in *Il Pens.* 146: "dewy-feathered sleep."

[14] Note the three similar epithets of the **earn.**

[15] **Bord**, *border*, like **rand**, same meaning (see above, p. 204, l. 7), is poetically used for *shield.* So Gr. *ἴτυς* (akin to Eng. *withe*) meant *a*) a circle or rim made of *willow; b*) the outer edge or *rim* of the shield (like *ἄντυξ*); *c*) the

[c]hwealfum lindum[c],[1] þā ðe hwīle[2] ǣr
ęlðēodigra[3] [a]edwīt[a] þoledon, [215]
hæðenra [a]hosp[a]; [b]him[b] þæt hearde wearð
æt ðām æscplegan[4] eallum[5] forgolden
[b]Assyrium[b], syððan Ebrēas
under gūðfanum gegān[6] hæfdon[6]
tō ðām fyrdwīcum. Hīe ðā frǫmlīce [220]
lēton forð flēogan flāna scūras,
[c]hildenǣdran[c] of hornbogan,
[c]strælas[c] stędehearde; styrmdon hlūde
grame gūðfrecan, gāras[7] sęndon
in heardra gemang. [d]Hæleð[d] wǣron yrre,[8] [225]
[d]landbūende[d] lāðum cynne,
stōpon [d]styrnmōde[d], [d]stęrcedferhðe[d]
wręhton unsōfte ealdgenīðlan[9]

round *shield* itself. A good illustration of its use is in Euripides, *Tro.* 1196–97, where Hecuba is speaking of Hector's shield. Potter translates: —

Yet how sweet to trace
The mark of his strong grasp, and on the verge
*Of thy high orb* (ὄγκος) the sweat.

[1] The material for the weapon, *linden* for *shield.*

[2] Acc. sing.: *for a time.*

[3] Dependent on **edwīt.**

[4] On *ash* as the designation of a *spear*, see Shakespeare, *Coriol.* 3. 5. 112–115: —

Let me twine
Mine arms about that body, where against
My grained *ash* an hundred times hath broke,
And scarr'd the moon with splinters.

See also *Iliad* 22. 225 (where μελίη, *ash*, is used for *spear*): "Stood leaning on his bronze-pointed (χαλκογλώχινος, like the **ǣrgescōd** of *Bēowulf* 2778) *ashen-spear.*" For **æscplega** cf. 'sword-play.'

[5] Agrees with **him** (**164.** *h*).

[6] Note this pluperfect, formed with an auxiliary.

[7] What is the meaning of the *gar-* in Mod. Eng. *garlic?*

[8] See **19.**

[9] Acc. plur. (**168**).

medowērige[1]; mundum[2] brugdon
scealcas of scēaðum scīrmæled swyrd[3] [230]
ęcgum gecoste,[4] slōgon eornoste
Assiria[5] [e]ōretmæcgas[e],
[e]nīðhycgende[e], nānne ne sparedon
þæs [f]hęrefolces[f] hēanne[6] ne rīcne
[f]cwicera manna[f] þe hīe ofercuman mihton. [235]

* * * * * * * *

Him[7] mǫn[8] feaht on lāst,
mægenēacen[9] folc, ōð se mǣsta dǣl
þæs hęriges[10] læg hilde gesǣged
on ðām sigewǫnge, sweordum[11] gehēawen, [295]
wulfum tō willan,[12] and ēac wælgīfrum
fuglum tō frōfre. Flugon ðā ðe lyfdon
lāðra lindwiggendra.[13] Him on lāste fōr
swēot Ebrēa[14] [a]sigor[15] geweorðod[a],
[a]dōme gedȳrsod[a]; him[16] fēng [b]Dryhten God[b] [300]
fǣgre on[17] fultum,[17] [b]Frēa ælmihtig[b].
[c]Hī[c] ðā frǫmlīce fāgum swyrdum
[c]hæleð higerōfe[c] hęrpað[18] worhton

[1] Acc. plur.; agrees with **ealdgenīðlan**.
[2] See **174**.
[3] Acc. plur.; irregular for **sweord**.
[4] Agrees with **swyrd**. See **174**. *d*.
[5] Gen. plur.
[6] From **hēan**, not **hēah**.
[7] The Assyrians.
[8] See **89**. *e*.
[9] See **147**.
[10] See **44**. 2.
[11] See **174**. *c*.
[12] = (*as*) *a delight to wolves*. See **161**. 2.
[13] Depends on **ðā**.
[14] Gen. plur.
[15] Inst. without ending.
[16] The Hebrews.
[17] = *to* (*their*) *help*. For the construction see **164**. *e*.
[18] Irregular for **hęrepað** (for **-pæð**).

þurh lāðra gemǫng, linde hēowon,
scildburh scæron: [d]scēotend[d] wæron [305]
gūðe gegrǫmede, [d]guman Ebrēisce[d];
þegnas on ðā tīd þearle gelyste[1]
gārgewinnes. Þær on grēot gefēoll
se hȳhsta[2] dæl hēafodgerīmes
[a]Assiria[a] ealdorduguðe,[3] [310]
[a]lāðan cynnes[a]: lȳthwōn becōm
cwicera[4] tō cȳððe. Cirdon[2] cynerōfe,
wiggend[5] on wiðertrod, [b]wælscęl[b] oninnan,[6]
[b]rēocende hræw[b]; rūm[7] wæs tō nimanne
lǫndbūendum on ðām [c]lāðestan[c], [315]
hyra [c]ealdfēondum unlyfigendum[c]
heolfrig hęrerēaf, — hyrsta[8] scȳne,[2]
bord and brād swyrd, brūne helmas,
dȳre[2] mādmas. Hæfdon dōmlīce
on ðām folcstęde fȳnd[9] oferwunnen [320]
ēðelweardas,[10] ealdhęttende[9]
swyrdum āswęfede[11]; hīe on swaðe ręston,
þā ðe him tō līfe lāðost wæron
cwicera cynna. Đā sēo cnēoris eall,

[1] See **190**. [2] See **19**.

[3] Either dependent upon, or parallel to, **hēafodgerīmes**.

[4] Dependent on **lȳthwōn**.

[5] For **īg** is sometimes found, as here, **igg**. What does this signify?

[6] Governs **wælscęl** and **hræw**; the latter is an acc. plural.

[7] Translate, *there was a chance for the natives to capture from the most hated ones* (**lāðestan** for **-um**).

[8] These nouns are all acc. plur.

[9] Acc. plur. [10] Nom. plur.

[11] Supply **hæfdon**. With **āswębban**, in the sense of 'slay,' cf. the similar use of the Lat. *sopire* and the Gr. εὐνάζειν (the latter in Sophocles).

mægða mærost, ānes mōnðes fyrst,[1] [325]
wlanc[2] wundenlocc[2] wāgon[3] and lǣddon[3]
tō ðǣre beorhtan byrig Bethuliam
helmas and hupseax,[4] hāre byrnan,
gūðsceorp gumena golde gefrætewod,
mærra[5] mādma þonne mon ænig [330]
āsecgan mæge searoþoncelra[6];
eal þæt ðā ðēodguman þrymme geēodon,
cēne[7] under cumblum on compwīge
þurh Iūdithe[8] glēawe lāre
mægð[8] mōdigre. [a]Hī[a] tō mēde[9] hyre [335]
of ðām sīðfate[10] sylfre[11] brōhton
[a]eorlas æscrōfe[a] Holofernes[12]
sweord and swātigne[13] helm, swylce ēac sīde byrnan,
gerēnode rēadum golde, and eal þæt se rinca baldor
swīðmōd[14] sinces[15] āhte oððe sundoryrfes,[15] [340]
bēaga[15] and beorhtra māðma,[15] hī þæt þǣre beorhtan idese
āgēafon gearoþoncolre.

[1] See **170.**

[2] Agreeing with **cnēoris.**

[3] See **wegan**, and **189. 2.**

[4] Acc. plur.

[5] Comp. and gen. plur.; see **60. 2.** The position would seem to require **mærran mādmas.**

[6] Depends on **ænig.**

[7] Modifies, or is parallel to, **ðēodguman.**

[8] Gen. sing.

[9] See Mayhew, *OE. Phonology*, § 365.

[10] See **43. 2**; here the **a** intrudes even into the sing.

[11] For **selfre (166).**

[12] Genitive.

[13] Lit. *sweaty*, but in poetry **swāt** usually = **blōd.**

[14] Agrees with **baldor.**

[15] Dependent on **eal.**

# XVI.

## SELECTIONS FROM THE ANDREAS.

[The *Andreas* is a poem of about 1722 lines (the numbering differs according to the edition). Jacob Grimm considered it and the *Elene* to be (Preface to his edition, p. iv) "the most ancient and instructive productions of Old English poetry, next to the *Bēowulf*." With the help of Thilo, Grimm discovered (pp. xvi ff.) its source to be the *Acts of Andrew and Matthew*, written in Greek, and now published in Tischendorf's *Acta Apostolorum Apocrypha*, pp. 132–166. Besides this poem, there is a prose version which may be profitably consulted, and which is to be found in Bright's valuable *Anglo-Saxon Reader*, pp. 113–128. It is believed by many scholars that both these versions were made from a Latin translation of the Greek original, but this cannot be said to have been demonstrated, at least for the poem. The Greek original is discussed at length by Lipsius, *Die apokryphen Apostelgeschichten und Apostellegenden*, pp. 546 ff. A portion of the Greek, corresponding to lines 235–349, is printed in Appendix III.

According to Lipsius, the scene of the poem is the northern coast of the Black Sea; though the Old English poet had Africa in mind (cf. l. 198), perhaps because the region about Colchis had by some been called the inner or second Ethiopia. The Marmedonia (l. 30) or Mermedonia of our text has been identified with Myrmecium, Gr. Μυρμήκιον, near the modern Yenikale, in the Crimea. Here are supposed to have dwelt the Cimmerians of Homer, and here, in classic times, were settled various Scythian tribes. Of the Tauri (Crimea was anciently the *Tauric* Chersonesus) Herodotus says (4. 103): "They sacrifice to the virgin all who suffer shipwreck, and any Greeks they meet with driven on their coasts, in the following manner: having performed the preparatory ceremonies, they strike the head with a club; some say they throw the body down from a precipice. . . . The Tauri themselves say that this deity to whom they sacrifice is Iphigenia, daughter of Agamemnon" (cf. Euripides' *Iphigenia in Tauris*, and Goethe's *Iphigenie*). This reputation clung to the region, for Tertullian says (*Adv. Marcionem* 1. 1): "Pontum ferocissimas gentes inhabitare, parentum cadavera cum pecudibus cæsa convivio convorantes." Nor was the evil fame of the district diminished by the fact that Huns were settled here from the fourth to the sixth century, then Goths, and afterward Tartars.

The story of the poem, up to the beginning of our extract, is briefly this: St. Matthew was in imminent danger among the Mermedonians, a race of cannibals. In this extremity God appears to Andrew, and exhorts him to go to Matthew's assistance, which, after some reluctance, he prepares to do.

Bits of translation and interesting comments (not always correct), embracing much of our extract, are given by Brooke, *Hist. Early Eng. Lit.* pp. 169 ff., 413 ff.]

*Conversation between Andrew and the Sea-Captain.*

Gewāt[1] him þā [a]on ūhtan[a] [a]mid ærdæge[a] [235]
ofer sandhleoðu tō sæs faruðe
þrīste on geþance, ǫnd his þegnas mid,
gangan[2] on grēote; gārsecg[3] hlynede,[4]
bēoton brimstrēamas. Se beorn wæs on[5] hyhte,[5]
syððan hē on waruðe wīdfæðme[6] scip [240]
mōdig gemētte. Þā cōm [b]morgen torht[b],
[b]bēacna beorhtost[b], ofer breomo snēowan,
hālig of heolstre; heofoncandel[7] blāc[8]

[1] See **184**. *a*. [2] See **199**. 1.

[3] Sweet (*Engl. Stud.* 2. 314–316) explains this word as being, not a compound of **gār** and **sęcg** (= *spear* + *man*, according to Bosworth, as if a personification like Neptune with his trident; or = *spear* + *sedge*, with Leo, the tips of the waves being likened to spears), but as arising by metathesis from the Runic word **gāsric** (cf. the name of the Vandal king, Gaisaricus), as if **gās** + **ric**. The **gās**- would correspond to Old Norse **geisa**, *to chafe, rage;* the **-ric** as in Ger. *wüterich;* so that **gāsric** would = *the rager*.

[4] Brooke translates this line: "Trampled o'er the shingle. Thundered loud the ocean."

[5] Nearly = *joyful, rejoiced*. Gr. 'rejoiced with very great joy.'

[6] Poetic license; Gr. 'a little ship.' Cf. the Homeric κοίλη νηῦς.

[7] = *the sun*. Of 'candle' the *New Eng. Dict.* says: "One of the Latin words introduced at the English Conversion, and long associated chiefly with religious

[8] See **blīcan**.

ofer lagoflōdas. Hē ðǣr [c]lidweardas[c]
þrymlīce þrȳ [c]þegnas[c] gemētte,[1] [245]
[c]mōdiglīce męnn[c], on męrebāte
sittan sīðfrǫme, swylce hīe ofer sǣ cōmon.[2]
Þæt[3] wæs Drihten sylf, dugeða[4] Wealdend,[4]
ēce, ælmihtig, mid his ęnglum twām.
Wǣron [d]hīe[d] on gescirplan [e]scipfērendum[e], [250]
[d]eorlas[d] onlīce [e]ēalīðendum[e],
þonne hīe on flōdes fæðm[5] ofer feorne weg
on cald wæter cēolum[6] lācað.[7]
Hīe ðā gegrētte sē ðe on grēoţe stōd,
fūs[8] on[8] faroðe fægn[9] reordade: — [255]
"Hwanon cōmon gē cēolum līðan,
mācræftige męnn, on męreþissan
āne[10] ǣgflotan? hwanon ēagorstrēam
ofer ȳða gewealc ēowic[11] brōhte?"
Him þā ǫndswarode ælmihti[12] God, [260]
swā[13] þæt ne wiste sē ðe þæs wordes bād,[14]

observances. . . . This sacred character of the word bears on the OE. poetic compounds." Cf. *Rom. and Jul.* 3. 5. 9.: "Night's *candles* are burnt out." See also Shakespeare's metaphorical sense of *lamp*, and cf. the Gr. λαμπάς, Lat. *lampas*, in poetical use.

[1] So Sievers; not in MS.

[2] = *had come.*

[3] What is the antecedent of **þæt**?

[4] = *Lord of hosts.*

[5] = *expanse*, originally *embracing arms, embrace.*

[6] Not *keel*, but *ship.*

[7] The radical meaning is, *to move in any swift or impetuous manner.*

[8] = *ready, eager for.* One would expect the acc. **faroð**.

[9] MS. **frægn.** [10] Inst. sing.

[11] See **81.** 1. [12] See **28.**

[13] = *in such a manner.* One is inclined to substitute **ðēah**, as making better sense.

[14] See **bīdan**, and **156.** *l.*

hwæt sē manna wæs meðelhēgendra,[1]
þe hē þǣr on waroðe wiðþingode: —
"Wē of Marmedonia mǣgðe syndon
feorran geferede; ūs mid flōde bær [265]
on hranrāde[2] [a]hēahstefn[3] naca[a],
[a]snellīc sǣmearh[a 4] snūde[5] bewunden,[5]
ōð-þæt wē þissa lēoda land gesōhton
wære[6] bewrecene, swā ūs wind fordrāf."
Him þā Andreas ēaðmōd oncwæð: — [270]
"Wolde ic þē biddan, þēh[7] ic þē [b]bēaga[b] lȳt,
[b]sincweorðunga[b], syllan meahte,
þæt þū ūs gebrōhte [c]brante[8] cēole[c],
[c]hēa hornscipe[c], ofer hwæles ēðel
on þǣre mǣgðe; bið[9] ðē meorð[10] wið God, [275]
þæt[11] þū ūs on lāde līðe weorðe."
Eft him ondswarode æðelinga Helm[12]
of[13] ȳðlide, engla Scippend: —
"Ne magon þǣr gewunian wīdfērende,

[1] Cf. the Homeric *μέροψ* as an epithet, and in later use as an equivalent, of *men, mortals* (so *Il.* 2. 285), and see p. 222, l. 9.

[2] With this sense of **rād**, *road*, may be compared the Gr. *κέλευθος*, *πόρος*, as in the Homeric *ἰχθυόεντα κέλευθα* (*Od.* 3. 177), *fishy roads*; see also Æschylus' *πόρον οἰωνῶν* (*Prom.* 281), *track of birds*.

[3] Cf. the Gr. *ὑψίπρῳρος*.

[4] Cf. *Od.* 4. 708: "Swift ships, that serve men for horses on the sea" (*ἀλὸς ἴπποι*). See p. 226, l. 2.

[5] = *encompassed with speed, swift*.

[6] An unusual word for *ocean*.

[7] In this poem, **ea** (**ēa**) not seldom becomes **e** (**ē**), especially before palatal consonants (**10**).

[8] See **174**. *a*.

[9] Future sense, as frequently with **bið**.

[10] Anglian form for WS. **mēd**, related to Gr. *μισθός* (Mayhew, *OE. Phon.* § 365).

[11] **þǣr** = *if?*

[12] Not *helmet*, but *protector*.

[13] = *from*, as often.

nē þǣr ęlþēodige eardes[1] brūcað, [280]
ah in þǣre ceastre cwealm[2] þrōwiað
þā ðe feorran þyder feorh[3] gelǣdaþ[3];
ǫnd þū wilnast[4] nū ofer wīdne męre,
þæt ðū on þā fǣgðe þīne fēore spilde?"
Him þā Andreas āgef ǫndsware:— [285]
"Ūsic lust hwęteð[5] on þā lēodmearce,
mycel mōdes hiht[6] tō þǣre mǣran byrig,
þēoden[7] lēofesta, gif þū ūs þīne[8] wilt
on męrefaroðe miltse gecȳðan."
Him ǫndswarode ęngla þēoden, [290]
Nęregend[9] fīra, of nacan[10] stefne:—
"Wē ðē ēstlīce mid ūs willað
fęrigan[9] frēolīce ofer fisces[11] bæð[11]
efne tō þām lande, þǣr[12] þē lust myneð
tō gesēcanne, syððan[13] gē ēowre [295]
[a]gafulrǣdenne[a] āgifen habbað,
[a]sceattas gescrifene[a]; swā ēow scipweardas
āra[14] ofer ȳðbord unnan willað."
Him[15] þā ofstlīce Andreas wið,
winęþearfende, wordum mǣlde:— [300]

[1] See **156.** *e.*

[2] Acc.

[3] Periphrastic for 'go.'

[4] Elliptic, like Shakespeare's (*M. W.* 3. 2. 88) "I *will* to my honest knight."

[5] A following verb of motion understood.

[6] Here = *bent.*

[7] Formed from **ðēod**, as **dryht-en** from **dryht**; cf. **cyning**, with a different ending, from **cyn.**

[8] Agrees with **miltse.**

[9] See **18.**

[10] Gen. sing.

[11] Kenning (**215**) for 'ocean.'

[12] Almost = *that.* Cf. *there* in Mod. Eng. *thereto.*

[13] = *as soon as.*

[14] MS. **aras.** See **156.** *i.*

[15] Governed by **wið.**

"Næbbe ic fǣted gold nē feohgestrēon,
welan nē wiste,[1] nē wīra gespann,
landes[2] nē locenra bēaga,[3] þæt ic þē mæge [a]lust[a]
āhwęttan,
[a]willan[a] in worulde, swā ðū worde becwist.[4]"
Him þā beorna Breogo, þǣr[5] hē on bolcan sæt, [305]
ofer waroða[6] geweorp[6] wiðþingode: —
"Hū gewearð þē þæs,[7] wine lēofesta,
ðæt ðū sǣbeorgas sēcan woldes,[8]
męrestrēama gemet, māðmum bedǣled
ofer cald cleofu[9] cēoles[10] nēosan? [310]
Nafast þē tō frōfre on faroðstrǣte
hlāfes wiste nē hlutterne[11]
drync tō dugoðe[12]? Is se drohtað strang
þām þe lagolāde lange[13] cunnaþ."
Đā him Andreas ðurh ǫndsware, [315]

[1] Not the verb.

[2] The construction suddenly changes to the genitive, as if some word like **āht**, *aught*, had been introduced. The poet is apparently trying to adapt to this place the **landes and locenra bēaga** of *Bēowulf* 2296, there a partitive genitive.

[3] Now only existing as *bee*, a nautical term for a ring or hoop of metal. See *New Eng. Dict.* s.v. *Bee*[2].

[4] See **becweðan**.

[5] Nearly = *from where*.

[6] Kemble translates, *the dashing of the waves;* but **waroð** does not mean *wave*. I would suggest *the smiting of the shores*, perhaps meaning the plunging of the breakers.

[7] Anticipatory of the relative sentence, **þæt þū**, etc.

[8] On the omission of final **t**, see **95**.

[9] See **clif**, and **20**.

[10] See **156**. *m*.

[11] An instance of an originally long vowel rendered short by the gemination of the following consonant.

[12] The Greek has διατροφήν, *sustenance* (p. 240).

[13] Adj.

wīs on gewitte, wordhord[1] onlēac[1]: —
"Ne gedafenað[2] þē, nū þē Dryhten geaf[3]
welan ǫnd wiste ǫnd woruldspēde,
ðæt ðū ǫndsware[4] mid oferhygdum,
sęcge[4a] sārcwide[5]; sēlre bið æghwām [320]
þæt hē ēaðmēdum[6] ęllorfūsne
oncnāwe cūðlīce, swā þæt Crīst bebēad,
Þēoden þrymfæst. Wē his þegnas[7] synd,
gecoren tō cęmpum. Hē is Cyning on[8] riht,[8]
Wealdend ǫnd Wyrhta wuldorþrymmes, [325]
ān ēce God eallra gesceafta,
swā hē ealle befēhð ānes[9] [a]cræfte[a]
hefon[10] ǫnd eorðan [a]hālgum mihtum[a],
sigora sēlost.[11] Hē ðæt sylfa cwæð,
Fæder folca[12] gehwæs, ǫnd ūs fēran hēt [330]
geond ginne grund gāsta[13] strēonan: —
'Farað[14] nū geond ealle eorðan scēatas[15]
emne swā wīde swā wæter bebūgeð,[16]

[1] That is, *spoke*. [2] See **190**.

[3] Translate, *hath given*.

[4] Acc. sing. [4a] MS. **sece**.

[5] Inst. sing., parallel with **mid oferhygdum** (**174**).

[6] Perhaps adv. (**72**).

[7] When did the word *thane* cease to be employed in literature?

[8] Either = *rightfully, by rights*, or perhaps an adj. **onriht** = *legitimate, rightful*.

[9] = *sole*, lit. *of one (alone)*.

[10] Unusual for **heofon**.

[11] One is inclined to substitute **sęllend**, *bestower*, which occurs three times with **sigora** in the poetry, whereas **sigora sēlost** is otherwise unknown.

[12] Dependent on **gehwæs**.

[13] See **156**. *n*; **199**. 1.

[14] An interesting parallel to this paraphrase (a free one even in the Greek original) of Matt. 10. 1 ff. is found in the poem of *Christ*, 480–489.

[15] MS. **sceattas**.

[16] Cf. p. 201, l. 1.

oððe stędewangas strǣte[1] gelicgaþ[2];
bodiað æfter burgum beorhtne gelēafan [335]
ofer foldan fæðm; ic ēow freoðo healde.[3]
Ne ðurfan[4] gē on þā fōre frætwe lǣdan,[5]
gold ne seolfor; ic ēow gōda gehwæs[6]
on ēowerne āgenne dōm ēst āhwętte.[7]'
Nū ðū seolfa[8] miht sīð ūserne[9] [340]
gehȳran hygeþancol[10]; ic sceal hraðe cunnan
hwæt ðū ūs tō[11] duguðum[11] gedōn wille."
Him þā ǫndswarode ēce[12] Dryhten: —
"Gif gē syndon þegnas þæs[13] þe þrym āhōf
ofer middangeard, swā gē mē sęcgaþ, [345]
ǫnd gē gehēoldon[14] þæt ēow se Hālga bēad,
þonne ic ēow mid gefēan fęrian wille
ofer brimstrēamas, swā gē bēnan[15] sint."
Þā in cēol stigon[16] collenfyrhðe,[17]
ęllenrōfe; ǣghwylcum wearð [350]
on męrefaroðe mōd geblissod.
Đā ofer ȳða geswing Andreas ongann
męrelīðendum[18] miltsa[19] biddan[20]

[1] Acc. sing. [2] = *border.*
[3] Future sense.
[4] For **ðurfon (131)**.
[5] Not *lead*, but *carry* (Gr. βαστάζετε).
[6] Dependent on **ēst**.
[7] = *supply;* not the normal sense of the word.
[8] See **self**, and **21**.
[9] See **81.** 1.
[10] Agrees with **ðū**.
[11] = *for (our) benefit,* lit. *benefits;* Gr. τὴν φιλανθρωπίαν, (as a) *kindness.*
[12] MS. **ęce**.
[13] = *of that one, of him.*
[14] Translate, *have kept, observed.*
[15] = *petitioners.*
[16] So in Latin: *ascendere navem.*
[17] **-fyrhðe** irregular for **-ferhðe**.
[18] = *for the seafarers.*
[19] See **156.** *b.*
[20] **Biddan** here takes three cases after it. Explain.

wuldres Aldor, ǫnd þus wordum cwæð: —
"Forgife þē [a]Dryhten[a] dōmweorðunga — [355]
willan in worulde, ǫnd in wuldre blǣd —
[a]Meotud manncynnes[a], swā ðū mē hafast[1]
on þyssum sīðfæte sybbe gecȳðed!"

*The Voyage. — Storm at Sea.*

Gesæt him þā se hālga Holmwearde[2] nēah,
æðele be Æðelum. Æfre ic ne hȳrde [360]
þon[3] cymlīcor cēol gehladenne[4]
hēahgestrēonum. [b]Hæleð[b] insǣton,
[b]þēodnas[b] þrymfulle, [b]þegnas[b] wlitige.
Đā reordode rīce þēoden,
ēce, ælmihtig, heht[5] his [a]ǫngel[a] gān, [365]
[a]mærne maguþegn[a], ǫnd mǫte syllan,[6]
frēfran fēasceaftne[7] ofer flōdes wylm,
þæt hīe þē[8] ēað[9] mihton ofer ȳða geþring
drohtað ādrēogan. Þā [b]gedrēfed[b] wearð,
[b]onhrēred[b] hwælmǫre; hornfisc plegode, [370]
glād[10] geond gārsecg, ǫnd se grǣga mǣw

[1] Is this the normal form?

[2] Probably **Helmwearde** = *guardian of the tiller or helm;* but see Vocabulary.

[3] = *than that*, inst. of **ðæt.**

[4] This sentence seems to be imitated from *Bēow.* 38–39: —
Ne hȳrde ic cymlīcor cēol gegyrwan
hildewǣpnum and heaðowǣdum.
Note that the past participle is substituted in the passage from *Andreas* for the infinitive of *Bēowulf.* The former construction is unusual.

[5] Anglian (probably identical with the original) form for **hēt** (**110**).

[6] For **sǫllan.**

[7] Meaning Andrew, though the next line has **hīe.**

[8] For **ðȳ** (**84**). [9] For **īeð.**

[10] See **glīdan.**

wælgīfre[1] wand; wedercandel swearc,[2]
windas wēoxon,[3] wǣgas grundon,
strēamas styredon, strengas gurron,[4]
wædo gewǣtte[5]; wæteręgsa stōd[6] [375]
þrēata þrȳðum. þegnas wurdon

[1] Agrees with **mǣw.**

[2] See **sweorcan.**

[3] There is no hint of any extraordinary commotion, much less of a storm, in the original. Of all this long description there is nothing except, "They were troubled because of the sea." Brooke says (p. 416): "The storm is now described in words that come, one after another, short, heavy, and springing, like the blows of the waves, and the gusts of wind. We know as we read that the writer had seen the thing."

[4] See **georran.**

[5] Part of Baskervill's note, in his edition, is: "**wǣdo gewætte,** *the wet weeds (sails); wet with waters*, Kemble; *waves swelled*, Grein; *replebatur aquis, vadum madefiebat*, Grimm; **wǣdo gewætte** is in apposition with **strengas.**" **Wædo** (with short æ) might be nom. (acc.) plur. of **wæd,** *sea.* But the phrase is obscure.

[6] A peculiar use of **standan,** to indicate motion rather than rest. In Mod. Eng. this general sense is represented by phrases like 'stand back,' 'stand off from shore,' 'stand up,' 'stand out,' etc. In OE. poetry, **standan** is frequently used with **ęge** or **ęgesa** (similarly in ON.); thus in Ps. 104. 33 (105. 38), *cecidit timor eorum super eos:* **him þǣr ęgesa . . . stōd,** where the King James version has, *the fear of them fell upon them.* The transformation of this idiom into *stand in awe of* is interesting. Note that the dative is still retained in this quotation, of about A.D. 1380 (*Sir Ferumbras* 408): "Of whame *men* stondeð aye" [*i.e.* awe]. However, *men* being eventually understood as nom. in such a sentence as the last (cf. *Towneley Mysteries*, 305 [ab. 1460]: "*I* stand great aghe"), *in* was supplied before *awe,* as in this from Lydgate (ab. 1413): "Of theyre lord and god to stande *in* awen." See *New Eng. Dict.* s.v. *awe.* The Scandinavian influence in Middle English confirmed the idiom, and assisted in its development.

ācolmōde; ænig[1] ne[1] wēnde[2]
þæt hē lifgende land begēte,
þāra[3] þe mid Andreas on ēagorstrēam
cēol gesōhte. Næs[4] him cūð þā gȳt [380]
hwā þām sæflotan sund[5] wīsode.
Him þā [a]se hālga[a] on holmwege
ofer ārgeblǫnd [a]Andreas[a] þā gīt,
[a]þegn þēodenhold,[a] þanc gesægde
rīcum Rǣsboran, þā hē gereordod wæs:— [385]
"Đē þissa swæsenda[6] [b]sōðfæst Meotud,[b]
[b]līfes Lēohtfruma,[b] lēan forgilde,
[b]weoruda Waldend,[b] ǫnd þē wist[7] gife,
heofonlīcne hlāf, swā ðū [c]hyldo[c] wið mē
ofer firigendstrēam[8] [c]frēode[c] gecȳðdest! [390]
Nū synt geþrēade [d]þegnas mīne[d],
[d]geonge gūðrincas[d]; [e]gārsecg[e] hlymmeð,
[e]geofon[9] gēotende[e]; grund[10] is onhrēred,[11]
dēope[12] gedrēfed; [f]duguð[f13] is geswęnced,

[1] Translate, *no one.* [2] See **4.**

[3] Dependent on **ænig.**

[4] For lines 4–14 the Greek has: "Andrew answered and said unto Jesus, not knowing that it was Jesus, The Lord give thee heavenly bread from his kingdom."

[5] = either *ocean* or *course*, probably the latter; cf. p. 226, l. 2.

[6] See **153.** *e.*

[7] = *as food.*

[8] For **firgenstrēam.**

[9] MS. **heofon**; but this seems like an echo of *Bēow.* 1690–91:—

syððan flōd ofslōh,
gifen gēotende

(= *streaming sea; rushing sea,* Garnett; *gurgling currents,* Hall; *rushing ocean,* Earle).

[10] Probably = *sea;* an unusual sense. Cf. p. 223, l. 1.

[11] See p. 218, ll. 16, 17.

[12] Adv.

[13] Related to Ger. *tugend* (cf. **30**), OE. **dugan** (**128**), and Mod. Eng. *doughty.* There is an interesting OE. phrase, **duguð and geoguð** (cf. *Bēow.* 160, etc.),

fmōdigra mægenf myclum[1] gebysgod." [395]
Him of holme[2] oncwæð hæleða Scyppend: —
"Læt nū geþrian aflotana ūserne,
alida tō lande ofer lagufæsten,
and þonne gebīdan[3] beornas þīne,
āras on earde, hwænne[4] þū eft cyme." [400]
Ēdre[5] him þā beorlasb āgēfan[6] andsware,
bþegnas þrohtheardeb — þafigan[7] ne woldon
ðæt hīe forlēton æt lides stefnan[8]
lēofne lārēow, and him[9] land curon —
"Hwider hweorfað wē hlāfordlēase, [405]
gēomormōde, gōde[10] orfeorme,
synnum[11] wunde, gif wē swīcað þē[12]?
Wē[13] bīoð clāðec on landa gehwām,
folcum cfracoðec, þonne fīra bearn,
ellenrōfe, æht[14] besittaþ, [410]

which almost = *knights and squires*. The word is worth a little study.

[1] See **72**.

[2] Perhaps mistaken for **helman**, the *helm* of the ship.

[3] Construe, **læt þine beornas gebīdan**.

[4] Here = *until*.

[5] For **ædre**.

[6] For **āgēafon**. [7] See **18**.

[8] See **stefna**, a collateral form of **stefn**.

[9] See **184**. *a*. [10] See **165**. 1.

[11] See **174**. *d*. [12] See **164**. *o*.

[13] This reply is largely original, and exhibits a characteristic trait of our ancestors — loyalty to a rightful lord. See Gummere, *Germanic Origins*, pp. 261–269; to the citations given there might be added the account of Cynewulf and Cyneheard, from the Saxon Chronicle for 755. One sentence from it will illustrate: "And þā cuædon hīe þæt him nænig mæg lēofra nære þonne hiera hlāford, and hīe næfre his banan folgian noldon."

[14] **Æht** (sometimes **eaht**) is not to be confounded with **æht** (4); **æht besittan** = *sit in council;* here almost = *consult, discuss, debate*.

hwylc hira sēlost[1] symle gelæste
hlāforde[2] æt hilde, þonne hand ǫnd rǫnd
on beaduwange billum forgrunden[3]
æt nīðplegan nearu þrōwedon."

*Andrew relates Christ's Stilling of the Tempest.*

þā reordade [a]rīce þēoden[a], [415]
[a]wærfæst Cining[a] word stunde[4] āhōf: —
"Gif ðū þegn sīe þrymsittendes
Wuldorcyninges, swā ðū worde becwist,
rǫce þā gerȳnu, hū hē reordberend[5]
lærde under lyfte. Lang is þes sīðfæt [420]
ofer fealuwne flōd; frēfra þīne
mægcgas on mōde. Mycel is nū gēna
lād ofer lagustrēam, land swīðe feorr
tō gesēcanne[6]; sund is geblǫnden,[7]

[1] Adv. (**76**).

[2] In Carlyle's *Past and Present* (Bk. 3, Chap. 10) occurs this piece of etymologizing: "Ironcutter, at the end of the campaign, did not turn off his thousand fighters, but said to them: 'Noble fighters, this is the land we have gained; be I Lord in it, — what we will call *Law-ward*, maintainer and *keeper* of Heaven's *Laws:* be I *Law-ward*, or in brief orthoepy *Lord* in it, and be ye Loyal Men around me in it.'" Again (Chap. 13): "If no pious *Law-ward* would remember it, always some pious Lady ('*Hlaf-dig*,' Benefactress, '*Loaf-giveress*,' they say she is, — blessings on her beautiful heart!) was there." So Ruskin, in *Sesame and Lilies* (Of Queens' Gardens): "Lady means 'bread-giver' or 'loaf-giver,' and Lord means 'maintainer of laws.'"

Are these etymologies correct?

[3] MS. **foregrunden**.

[4] = *at this time, now.*

[5] Acc. plur. (**43. 6**). See p. 213, note 1.

[6] Cf. our modern 'far to seek.'

[7] Cf. *Æn.* 1. 107: "furit æstus harenis." MS. reads **sand**.

grund[1] wiþ grēote. God ēaðe mæg [425]
hēaðolīðendum[2] helpe[3] gefręmman.[4]"
Ongan þā glēawlīce [a]gingran sīne[a]
[a]wuldorspēdige weras[a] wordum trymman: —
"Gē þæt gehogodon, þā gē on holm stigon,
þæt gē on fāra[5] folc feorh[6] gelǣddon,[6] [430]
ǫnd for Dryhtnes lufan[7] dēað þrōwodon[8]
on Ælmyrcna[9] ēðelrīce,
sāwle[10] gesealdon.[8] Ic þæt sylfa wāt,
þæt ūs gescyldeð Scyppend ęngla,
weoruda Dryhten. Wæteręgesa sceal, [435]
geðȳd[11] ǫnd geðrēatod þurh þrȳðcining,
lagu lācende, līðra wyrðan.[12]
Swā[13] gesǣlde[14] īu þæt wē on sǣbāte
ofer waruðgewinn wæda[15] cunnedan
faroðrīdende. Frēcne þūhton [440]
egle ēalāda; ēagorstrēamas
bēoton bordstæðu; brim oft oncwæð,
ȳð ōðerre.[16] Hwīlum uppāstōd

[1] Probably = *sea*. Cf. p. 220, note 10.

[2] Perhaps for **hēahðo-**, in the sense of *the high sea;* cf. Lat. *altum*. [3] Acc. sing.

[4] It is not till this point is reached, in the Greek original, that the journey is begun!

[5] From **fāh** (**43**. 3).

[6] Periphrastic, something like our 'directed your steps.'

[7] From the weak **lufe**.

[8] Optative.

[9] *Allmurk(y)* = *Ethiopians;* but the poet is here mistaken. See the prefatory remarks, p. 210.

[10] Here = *life*. [11] Cf. p. 227, l. 19.

[12] For **weorðan**.

[13] Brooke remarks (p. 417): "It is a happy situation which the poet conceives, for Andrew, not knowing that Christ himself is seated beside him in the stern, tells Christ a story of Christ." Cf. Mk. 4. 36 ff.

[14] See **190**. [15] See **156**. *d*.

[16] Dat. sing. Cf. Ps. 42. 7.

of brimes bōsme on bātes fæðm
ęgesa ofer ȳðlid. Ælmihtig þēr, [445]
Meotud mancynnes, on męreþyssan
beorht bāsnode. Beornas wurdon
forhte on mōde; friðes[1] wilnedon,
miltsa[1] tō[2] Mǣrum.[3] Þā sēo męnigo ongan
clypian on cēole; Cyning sōna ārās, [450]
ęngla Ēadgifa ȳðum[4] stilde,
wæteres wælmum; windas þrēade;
sǣ sessade,[5] smylte wurdon
męrestrēama gemeotu.[6] Đā ūre mōd āhlōh,[7]
syððan wē gesēgon[8] under swegles gang [455]
windas ǫnd wǣgas ǫnd wæterbrōgan
forhte gewordne for Frēan[9] ęgesan.
For-þan ic ēow tō sōðe sęcgan wille
þæt nǣfre[10] forlǣteð lifgende God
eorl on eorðan, gif his ęllen dēah.[11]" [460]
Swā hlēoðrode hālig cęmpa
ðēawum[12] geþancul; þegnas lǣrde
ēadig ōreta,[13] eorlas trymede,
ōð-ðæt hīe sęmninga slǣp oferēode

[1] See **156.** *a.*

[2] Here = *from.*

[3] Meaning Christ.

[4] See **164.** *i.*

[5] This word does not otherwise occur, but the meaning is obvious. There is a noun **sess**, meaning *seat.*

[6] See **gemet**, and **20.**

[7] See **107.**

[8] Anglian form of **gesāwon (106).**

[9] See **153.** *d.*

[10] This gnomic sentence resembles that in *Bēow.* 572–573. Perhaps it is imitated from the Latin proverb, "Fortune favors the brave."

[11] See **128.**

[12] See **174.** *d.*

[13] Usually **ōretta.**

mēðe[1] be mæste. Męre sweoðerade, [465]
[a]ȳða ongin[a] ęft oncyrde,
[a]hrēoh holmþracu[a]. Þā þām hālgan wearð
æfter gryrelīwīle gāst geblissod.

*Andrew desires Instruction in Seamanship.*

Ongan þā reordigan rædum snottor,
wīs on gewitte wordlocan onspēonn[2]: — [470]
"Næfre ic sælidan[3] sēlran mētte,
mācræftigran, þæs-ðe[4] mē þynceð,
rōwend rōfran, rædsnotterran,
wordes wīsran. Ic wille þē,
eorl unforcūð, ānre[5] nū gēna [475]
bēne biddan: þēah ic þē [a]bēaga[a 6] lȳt,
[a]sincweorðunga[a], syllan mihte,[7]
[a]fætedsinces[a], wolde ic frēondscipe,[8]
þēoden þrymfæst, þīnne, gif ic mehte,[7]
begitan gōdne. Þæs[9] ðū gife hlēotest,[10] [480]
hāligne hyht on heofonþrymme,
gif ðū lidwērigum lārna þīnra
ēste[11] wyrðest. Wolde ic ānes[12] tō ðē,
cynerōf hæleð, cræftes nēosan —
ðæt ðū mē getæhte, nū þē tīr[13] Cyning [485]
ęnd miht forgef,[14] manna Scyppend,

[1] Agrees with **hīe**.
[2] See **onspannan**.
[3] Acc. sing.
[4] Here = *so far as*, *as* (**157**. 1).
[5] See **156**. *b*. [6] See **154**. *a*.
[7] Variants of **meahte**.
[8] Object of **begitan**.
[9] = *for that*.
[10] Future sense.
[11] See **165**. [12] See **156**. *m*.
[13] Acc. sing.
[14] Variant of **forgeaf**.

hū ðū [a]wǣgflotan[a] wære bestēmdon,[1]
[a]sæhęngeste,[a] sund[2] wīsige.
Ic wæs on[3] gifeðe[3] īu ǫnd nū
syxtȳne sīðum[4] on sæbāte, [490]
[b]męre[b] hrērendum[5] mundum[6] frēorig,[7]
[b]ēagorstrēamas[b]— is ðys[8] āne[9] mā —,
swā[10] ic æfre ne geseah ænigne mann,
þrȳðbearn hæleð,[11] þē gelīcne
stēoran ofer stæfnan. Strēamwelm hwileð,[12] [495]
bēatað[13] brimstæðo; is þes bāt ful scrid,
færeð fāmigheals fugole[14] gelīcost,
glīdeð on geofone. Ic georne wāt
þæt ic æfre ne geseah ofer ȳðlāde,[15]
on sælēodan[16] syllīcran[17] cræft. [500]
Is þon[18] geliccost[19] swā[20] hē[21] on landsceare[22]

[1] For **bestēmdan**, the (weak) past part., according to Wülker. It would then agree with **wǣgflotan** (dat. sing.).

[2] See p. 213, note 4, and p. 220, l. 5.

[3] = *by chance.*

[4] See **176.** 1.

[5] Governs **męre** (and **ēagorstrēamas**), and agrees with **mundum.**

[6] = *in hands?*

[7] Agrees with **ic.**

[8] For **ðis**, neut. nom. sing.

[9] Inst. adv. = *once. This makes another journey*, added to the sixteen. The Greek has, "Behold, this is the seventeenth." Brooke (p. 414) attributes this to the OE. poet.

[10] Almost = *yet.*

[11] It is unusual to have two synonymous nouns thus joined.

[12] See **hwelan.**

[13] Unusual ending of 3 sing.

[14] Cf. *Odyssey* 7. 36: "Their ships are swift as the flight of a bird." See also *Od.* 13. 86–87; 11. 125.

[15] MS. **ȳðlāfe**, which would mean *sand*, that which is *left* by the *waves.*

[16] See **sælida.**

[17] For **sel-**, contracted from **seld-**, the root of *seldom.*

[18] = *to that.*

[19] For **gelīcost**; see l. 11.

[20] = *as if.*

[21] = *the boat* (**bāt**).

[22] = simply *land;* the Greek has: *ἐπὶ τῆς γῆς.*

stille stande, þǣr hine [a]storm[a] ne mæg,
[a]wind[a] āwęcgan, nē wæterflōdas
brecan brǫndstæfne; hwæðere on brim snēoweð[1]
snel under[2] segle.[2] Đū eart seolfa geong, [505]
wīgendra hlēo, nālas wintrum frōd:
hafast þēh[2a] on fyrhðe, faroðlācende,[3]
eorles ǫndsware, āghwylces[4] canst
worda[5] for[6] worulde wīslīc andgit.[7]"

*The Pilot recognizes God's Presence with Andrew.*

Him ǫndswarode ēce Dryhten: — [510]
"Oft þæt gesǣleð þæt wē on sǣlāde,
[a]scipum[a] under[8] scealcum, þonne scēor[9] cymeð,
brecað[10] ofer bæðweg [a]brimhęngestum[a].
Hwīlum ūs on ȳðum earfoðlīce
gesǣleð on sǣwe,[11] þēh[12] wē sīðnesan [515]
frēcne gefēran. Flōdwylm ne mæg
manna ænigne ofer[13] Meotudes ēst
lungre gelęttan[14]; āh[15] him līfes geweald
sē ðe brimu bindeð, brūne ȳða
ðȳð and þrēatað.[16] Hē þēodum sceal [520]
racian mid rihte, sē ðe rodor āhōf

[1] MS. **snoweð**.
[2] So yet, *under sail*. [2a] MS. þe.
[3] See **152**.
[4] Dependent on **andgit**.
[5] Dependent on **āghwylces**.
[6] Almost = *in*.
[7] Object of **canst** (**130**).
[8] = *among;* but this half-line is a little obscure.
[9] See **18**.
[10] Almost = *break away*.
[11] Irreg. dat.; usually **sǣ**.
[12] For **ðēah**. [13] = *against*.
[14] Cf. *Hamlet* 1. 4. 85: "I'll make a ghost of him that *lets* me."
[15] See **127**; here reflexive.
[16] See note 13, p. 226.

ǫnd gefæstnode folmum[1] sīnum,
worhte and wrǫðede, wuldras[2] fylde
beorhtne boldwelan; swā geblēdsod wearð
engla ēðel þurh his ānes miht. [525]
For-þan is [a]gesȳne[a], sōð[3] [a]orgete[a],
cūð [a]oncnāwen[a], þæt ðū Cyninges eart
þegen geþungen þrymsittendes[4];
for-þan þē sōna [b]sæholm[b] oncnēow,
[b]gārsecges begang[b], þæt ðū gife hæfdes[5] [530]
Hāliges Gāstes. [c]Hærn[c] ǫft onwand,
[c]ārȳða geblǫnd[c]; ǫgesa gestilde,
wīdfæðme wæg; wædu swæðorodon
seoðþan hīe ongēton þæt ðē God hæfde
wære[6] bewunden,[7] sē ðe wuldres blæd [535]
gestaðolade strangum mihtum."

* * * * * * * *

*Andrew is carried to the City.*[8]

Þus Andreas ǫndlangne dæg[9]
hǫrede[10] hlēoðorcwidum Hāliges lāre,
ōð-ðæt hine sǫmninga slæp oferēode[11] [820]
on hrǫnrāde Heofoncyninge nēh.[12]
Þā [a]gelædan[a] hēt[13] līfes Brytta

[1] See **174.**

[2] Perhaps Anglian genitive; used for the inst. after **fylde**, as in the poem of *Christ*, ll. 408–409.

[3] Here a noun.

[4] Agrees with **Cyninges.**

[5] Original form (**95**).

[6] = *with his covenant.*

[7] MS. **bewunde.**

[8] Note the break here (ll. 537–817). The interval is occupied by discourses.

[9] See **170.** [10] MS. **berede.**

[11] See p. 224, l. 21.

[12] For **nēah.**

[13] Construe, **hēt . . . sīne ǫn-**

ofer ȳða geþræc ęnglas sīne,
fæðmum [a]fęrigean[a] on Fæder[1] wære
lēofne mid lissum ofer lagufæsten.[2] [825]

* * * * * * * *

Lēton þone hālgan be hęrestrǣte
swefan on sybbe under swegles hlēo,
blīðne[3] bīdan burhwealle nēh,[4]
his nīðhętum, nihtlangne fyrst,
ōð-þæt Dryhten forlēt dægcandelle [835]
scīre scīnan. Sceadu sweðerodon
wǫnn under wolcnum. Þā cōm wederes blǣst,[5]
hādor heofonlēoma, ofer hofu blīcan.
Onwōc þā wīges[6] heard, wang scēawode;
fore burggeatum [a]beorgas[a] stēape, [840]
[a]hleoðu[a7] hlifodon; ymbe hārne stān
tigelfāgan trafu,[8] torras stōdon,
windige weallas. Þā se wīsa[9] oncnēow
þæt hē Marmedonia mǣgðe hæfde
sīðe[10] gesōhte, swā him sylf bebēad, [845]
þā[11] hē him foregescrāf, Fæder mancynnes.

**glas . . . gelǣdan lēofne . . . ofer lagufæsten . . . on Fæder wære.**

[1] Genitive.

[2] Here follow four lines which are probably corrupt, and are therefore omitted.

[3] = *kindly, amiable.*

[4] Is construed both with **burhwealle** and **nīðhętum.**

[5] Not *blast.* [6] See **155.**

[7] See **hlið**, and **20.**

[8] See **47. 4.**

[9] MS. **wīs.**

[10] See **174. *a.***

[11] MS. **þam.** Translate, *when.*

*Andrew's Disciples relate their Adventure.*

Geseh[1] hē þā on grēote[2] gingran[3] sīne,
beornas beadurōfe, bīryhte[4] him
swefan on slæpe. Hē sōna ongann
wīgend węccean, ęnd worde cwæð: — [850]
"Ic ēow sęcgan mæg sōð[5] orgete,[6]
þæt ūs gystrandæge[7] on geofones strēam[8]
ofer ārwelan æðeling fęrede.
In þām cēole wæs cyninga Wuldor,[9]
Waldend werðēode[10]; ic his word oncnēow, [855]
þēh hē his mægwlite bemiðen hæfde."
Him þā æðelingas ęndsweorodon
geonge [a]gēncwidum[a], [a]gāstgerȳnum[a]: —
"Wē þē, Andreas, ēaðe gecȳðað
sīð ūserne, þæt ðū sylfa miht [860]

[1] For **geseah**.

[2] Gr. 'on the earth' (*ἐπὶ τὴν γὴν*). [3] See **169**.

[4] The only occurrence of this word; **ætrihte**, similarly formed, is found three times in poetry.

[5] Noun in acc.

[6] Agrees with **sōð**.

[7] See **176**.

[8] Cf. the 'stream of Oceanus,' *Od.* 11. 21, and often in Homer.

[9] To this kenning there are several analogies in Greek and Latin. Thus Ulysses is referred to as 'great glory of the Achaians,' *Il.* 9. 673, and elsewhere; the bull is called the 'glory of the herd' by Ovid (*A. A.* 1. 290); and *decus* is used by Virgil(?) almost exactly as here, — *decus Asteriæ* (*Cul.* 15) for *decens* or *pulchra Asteria*, like **cyninga wuldor** for **wuldorlic cyning**. An interesting mediæval parallel is the line by Hilary, a disciple of Abelard, and probably an Englishman, cited by Lenient, *La Satire en France au Moyen Age*, p. 20, note: "Papa summus, paparum gloria." So he apostrophizes a girl with "Ave, splendor puellarum" (Wright, *Biog. Brit. Lit.*, Anglo-Norman Period, p. 93).

[10] MS. **weorðode**.

ongitan glēawlīce gāstgehygdum.
Ūs sǣwērige slǣp oferēode;
þā cōmon earnas[1] ofer ȳða wylm
faran[2] on flyhte feðerum hrēmige,[3]
ūs of slǣpendum sāwle ābrugdon, [865]
mid gefēan fęredon flyhte[4] on lyfte
brehtmum blīðe,[5] beorhte[6] ǫnd līðe[6];
lissum[7] lufodon ǫnd in lofe wunedon
þǣr wǣs singāl sang ǫnd[8] swegles gǫng,
wlitig weoroda hēap[9] ǫnd wuldres þrēat.[10] [870]
Ūtan ymbe Æðelne[11] ęnglas stōdon,
þegnas ymb Þēoden þūsendmælum;
hęredon on hēhðo hālgan stefne
dryhtna Dryhten.[12]"

[1] Related to Gr. *ὄρνις, a bird.*

[2] Not in MS., but supplied for the verse-structure.

[3] See **174**. *d*. Like Gr. *γαῦρος*; Archilochus has, *exulting in his curls.* [4] Inst. (**174**. *a*).

[5] = *blithe, joyful.* Note the rime and assonance in these lines.

[6] Nom. plur.; or possibly adverbs. Will the last consonants permit of associating **līðe** with Germ. *gelind?*

[7] How may this contain the stem (**līð**-) of the last word (**34**)?

[8] Possibly miswritten for **geond,** or perhaps the rare preposition **and** (= *in, in presence of*); this is on the supposition that **swegles gǫng** means *revolution of the sky,* cf. p. 224, l. 12. The music of the spheres is even suggested, though hardly in the poet's mind. **Swegel** *may* sometimes mean *music,* and possibly so here, but then one hardly knows how to translate **gǫng**.

[9] So in Shakespeare: *Rich. III.* 2. 1. 53, "Amongst this princely *heap*"; *Jul. Cæs.* 1. 3. 23, "There were drawn Upon a *heap* a hundred ghastly women."

[10] A Hebraism; *multitude of glory*, nearly = *glorious multitude.*

[11] Jesus, according to the original.

[12] Biblical expression; see Rev. 17. 14; 19. 16.

# APPENDIXES.

# APPENDIX I

## SOME USEFUL BOOKS FOR THE STUDY OF OLD ENGLISH.

### I. A Selection for the Beginner.

**Political and Social History.**

Green, *Short History of the English People.* (Various editions.)

Freeman, *Old English History.* New York, 1876.

Traill, *Social England*, Vol. I., Chap. II. London and New York, 1894.

**Religious and Cultural History.**

Lingard, *The Anglo-Saxon Church.* London, 1858, 2 vols.

Bright, *Early English Church History.* 3d ed. New York, 1897.

Turner, *History of the Anglo-Saxons.* London, 1852, 3 vols.

Giles, Translation of *Bede's Ecclesiastical History of England, and the Anglo-Saxon Chronicle.* (Temple Classics.)

**Literary History.**

Ten Brink, *Early English Literature.* New York, 1883. (The best.)

Brooke, *History of Early English Literature.* New York, 1892.

——, *English Literature from the Beginning to the Norman Conquest.* New York, 1898.

Morley, *English Writers*, Vols. I. and II. New York, 1888.

**Biography.**

Asser, *Life of King Alfred.* Boston, 1905.

Plummer, *Life and Times of Alfred the Great.* Oxford, 1902.

White, *Ælfric: A New Study of his Life and Writings.* (*Yale Studies in English* II.) New York, 1898.

**Biography.** (*Continued.*)

PLUMMER, *Life of Bede.* (As below, under **Religious and Cultural History.**)

BEDE, *Account of Cædmon.* (In *Select Translations from Old English Poetry*, Appendix III.) (See **Translations.**)

MULLINGER, *Schools of Charles the Great.* London, 1877.

WEST, *Alcuin and the Rise of the Christian Schools.* New York, 1892.

For reference:

*Dictionary of Christian Biography.* London, 1877–87, 4 vols.

*Dictionary of National Biography.* London, 1885–1901, 63 vols., and Supplement, 3 vols.

**Translations.**

COOK AND TINKER, *Select Translations from Old English Poetry.* Boston, 1902. (Contains *Judith*, *The Phœnix*, *Widsith*, *The Battle of Maldon*, *The Battle of Brunanburh*, *The Dream of the Rood*, *The Seafarer*, *The Wanderer*, etc.; selections from *Beowulf*, *Genesis*, and other poems.)

TINKER, *Beowulf.* New York, 1902.

HALL (J. R. C.), *Beowulf, and the Fight at Finnsburg.* London, 1901.

SEDGEFIELD, *King Alfred's Version of the Consolations* (sic) *of Boethius.* Oxford, 1900.

ROOT, *Andreas: The Legend of St. Andrew.* (*Yale Studies in English* VII.) New York, 1899.

WHITMAN, *Cynewulf's Christ.* Boston, 1900.

HOLT, *The Elene of Cynewulf.* (*Yale Studies in English* XXI.) New York, 1904.

HARGROVE, *King Alfred's Old English Version of St. Augustine's Soliloquies.* (*Yale Studies in English* XXII.) New York, 1904.

(See also under **Literary History.**)

**Readers.**

SWEET, *Anglo-Saxon Reader.* 7th ed. Oxford and New York, 1894.

BRIGHT, *Anglo-Saxon Reader.* 3d ed. New York, 1894.

**Readers.** (*Continued.*)

ZUPITZA-MACLEAN, *Old and Middle English Reader.* New York, 1893.

BASKERVILL AND HARRISON, *Anglo-Saxon Prose Reader.* New York, 1898.

**Poetical Texts.**

WYATT, *Beowulf.* Cambridge and New York, 1894.

COOK, *Judith.* Boston, 1889; also in *Belles Lettres Series.* Boston and London, 1904.

——, *The Christ of Cynewulf.* Boston and London, 1899.

——, *Dream of the Rood.* Oxford and New York, 1905.

——, *Elene.* Boston and London, 1905. (Forthcoming.)

——, *Phœnix.* Boston and London, 1905. (Forthcoming.)

STRUNK, *Juliana.* Boston and London, 1904.

SEDGEFIELD, *Battle of Maldon, and Short Poems from the Saxon Chronicle.* Boston and London, 1904.

**Prose Texts.**

BRIGHT, *Gospel of St. Matthew.* Boston and London, 1904.

——, *Gospel of St. Luke.* Oxford and New York, 1893.

——, *Gospel of St. John.* Boston and London, 1904.

SWEET, *Selected Homilies of Ælfric.* Oxford and New York, 1885.

——, *Extracts from Alfred's Orosius.* Oxford and New York, 1886.

BOSWORTH AND WARING, *Gothic and Anglo-Saxon Gospels, with the Versions of Wycliffe and Tyndale.* London, 1888.

COOK, *Biblical Quotations in Old English Prose Writers*, Vol. I., New York and London, 1898. Vol. II., New York, 1903.

**History of the English Language.**

EMERSON, *History of the English Language.* New York, 1894.

——, *Brief History of the English Language.* New York and London, 1896.

LOUNSBURY, *History of the English Language.* Revised ed. New York, 1894.

**History of the English Language.** (*Continued.*)

Nesfield, *Historical English.* New York, 1899.

Champneys, *History of English.* New York, 1893.

Cook, *English Language.* (In the *Universal Cyclopædia.* New York, 1903.)

**Etymology.**

Skeat, *Principles of English Etymology: Series I., The Native Element.* New York, 1887.

(See also **Dictionaries.**)

**Grammar.**

Sievers-Cook, *Old English Grammar.* 3d ed. Boston, 1903.

Wyatt, *Elementary Old English Grammar.* Cambridge, 1897.

Henry, *Short Comparative Grammar of English and German.* New York, 1894.

**Phonetics.**

Sweet, *Primer of Phonetics.* Oxford and New York, 1890.

Bell, *English Visible Speech for the Million.* London and New York.

——, *Manual of Vocal Physiology and Visible Speech.* New York.

**Dictionaries.**

Hall, *Concise Anglo-Saxon Dictionary.* New York, 1894.

Sweet, *Student's Dictionary of Anglo-Saxon.* New York and London, 1897.

Murray, Bradley, and Craigie, *New English Dictionary:* A–Mandragon, O–Pennached, Q–Reign. Oxford and New York, 1884–1905. (Cited as *New Eng. Dict.*)

## II. A Selection for the Advanced Student.

**Bibliography.**

Wülker, *Grundriss zur Geschichte der Angelsächsischen Litteratur.* Leipzig, 1885.

Körting, *Grundriss der Geschichte der Englischen Litteratur.* 3d ed. Münster i. W., 1899.

**Bibliography.** (*Continued.*)

Gross, *The Sources and Literature of English History.* London and New York, 1900.

Tinker, *The Translations of Beowulf: a Critical Bibliography.* (*Yale Studies in English* XVI.) New York, 1902.

*Jahresbericht . . . der Germanischen Philologie.* Berlin (later Leipzig), 1879–. (Section XV is devoted to English.)

**Political and Social History.**

Kemble, *The Saxons in England.* London, 1876, 2 vols.

Lappenberg, *History of England under the Anglo-Saxon Kings.* 2 vols. (Bohn Library.)

Green, *The Conquest of England.* New York, 1884.

——, *The Making of England.* New York, 1883.

Freeman, *History of the Norman Conquest*, Vol. I., Chaps. I.–III. Oxford and New York, 1873.

Palgrave, *Rise and Progress of the English Commonwealth*, Vol. I. London, 1831.

Stubbs, *Constitutional History of England*, Vol. I., Chaps. I.–VIII. Oxford and New York, 1875.

Adams (and others), *Essays on Anglo-Saxon Law.* New York, 1876.

Andrews, *The Old English Manor.* Baltimore, 1892.

Chadwick, *Studies on Anglo-Saxon Institutions.* Cambridge, 1905.

**Religious and Cultural History.**

Plummer, *Venerabilis Bædæ Opera Historica.* Oxford and New York, 1896, 2 vols.

Stevenson, *Asser's Life of King Alfred.* Oxford and New York, 1904.

Grimm, *Teutonic Mythology.* London, 1879–89, 4 vols.

Haddan and Stubbs, *Councils and Ecclesiastical Documents.* London, 1869–78, 3 vols.

Padelford, *Old English Musical Terms.* (*Bonner Beiträge zur Anglistik* IV.) Bonn, 1899.

Stevens, *The Cross in the Life and Literature of the Anglo-Saxons.* (*Yale Studies in English* XXIII.) New York, 1904.

**Religious and Cultural History.** (*Continued.*)

Roeder, *Die Familie bei den Angelsachsen*, I. Teil. Halle, 1899.

Keary and Grueber, *A Catalogue of English Coins in the British Museum: Anglo-Saxon Series.* London, 1887–93, 2 vols.

Akerman, *Remains of Pagan Saxondom.* London, [1852]–55.

Wright, *The Celt, the Roman, and the Saxon.* London, 1861.

**Literary History.**

Ebert, *Allgemeine Geschichte der Litteratur des Mittelalters im Abendlande.* Leipzig, 1874–87, 3 vols. (Especially Vols. I. and III.)

Cook, *Biblical Quotations in Old English Prose Writers*, Vol. I. London and New York, 1898. (Introduction contains a sketch of Old English Biblical translations, prose and poetical, with bibliography.)

**Biography.**

Wright, *Biographia Britannica Literaria*, Vol. I. London, 1842.

Montalembert, *Monks of the West.* Edinburgh, 1861–79, 7 vols.; also London, 1895, 6 vols. (A fascinating work.)

**Translations.**

Grein, *Dichtungen der Angelsachsen, stabreimend übersetzt.* Göttingen, 1857–59, 2 vols.

**Readers.**

Sweet, *Second Anglo-Saxon Reader.* Oxford and New York, 1887. (Archaic and dialectal; consists largely of glosses.)

Kluge, *Angelsächsisches Lesebuch.* 2d ed. Halle, 1897.

Körner, *Angelsächsische Texte, mit Uebersetzung, Anmerkungen, und Glossar.* Heilbronn, 1880.

Rieger, *Alt- und Angelsächsisches Lesebuch.* Giessen, 1861.

**Poetical Texts.** (See also **Prose Texts.**)

Grein-Wülker, *Bibliothek der Angelsächsischen Poesie.* Kassel, 1887–98.

Gollancz, *The Exeter Book*, Part I. London (Early English Text Society), 1895.

Thorpe, *Codex Exoniensis.* London, 1842.

**Prose Texts.**


Sweet, *Oldest English Texts.* London (E. E. T. S.), 1885.

——, *King Alfred's West Saxon Version of Gregory's Pastoral Care.* London (E. E. T. S.), 1871–72.

——, *King Alfred's Orosius.* London (E. E. T. S.), 1883.

Miller, *Old English Version of Bede's Ecclesiastical History of the English People.* London (E. E. T. S.), 1890–98.

Sedgefield, *King Alfred's Old English Version of Boethius de Consolatione Philosophiæ.* Oxford, 1899.

Hargrove, *King Alfred's Old English Version of St. Augustine's Soliloquies.* (*Yale Studies in English* XIII.) New York, 1902.

Grein, *Bibliothek der Angelsächsischen Prosa*, Vol. I. Kassel, 1872. (Mostly translations from the Old Testament.)

Thorpe, *Homilies of Ælfric.* London (Ælfric Society), 1844–46, 2 vols.

Morris, *Blickling Homilies.* London (E. E. T. S.), 1874–80, 3 vols. in 1.

Skeat, *Ælfric's Metrical Lives of Saints.* London (E. E. T. S.), 1881–99, 2 vols.

——, *The Gospels in Anglo-Saxon and Northumbrian Versions.* Cambridge, 1871–87.

Assmann, *Angelsächsische Homilien und Heiligenleben.* (*Bibliothek der Angelsächsischen Prosa* III.) Kassel, 1889.

Earle, *Handbook to the Land-Charters and other Saxonic Documents.* Oxford and New York, 1888.

Earle and Plummer, *Two of the Saxon Chronicles Parallel.* Oxford and New York, 1892–99, 2 vols.

Schmid, *Die Gesetze der Angelsachsen.* 2d ed. Leipzig, 1858. (This has a much completer apparatus than the following.)

Thorpe, *Ancient Laws and Institutes of England.* London, 1840, 2 vols.

Liebermann, *Die Gesetze der Angelsachsen*, Vol. I. (Text and Translation.) Halle, 1903.

Hecht, *Bischofs Wœrferth von Worcester Uebersetzung der Dialoge Gregors des Grossen.* (*Bibliothek der Angelsächsischen Prosa* V.) Leipzig, 1900.

Herzfeld, *Old English Martyrology.* London (E. E. T. S.), 1900.

**Prose Texts.** (*Continued.*)

SCHRÖER, *Die Angelsächsischen Prosabearbeitungen der Benediktinerregel.* (*Bibliothek der Angelsächsischen Prosa* II.) Kassel, 1885, 1888.

NAPIER, *Wulfstan.* Berlin, 1883.

COCKAYNE, *Leechdoms, Wortcunning, and Starcraft, of Early England.* London, 1864–66, 3 vols.

**Facsimiles of Manuscripts.**

SKEAT, *Twelve Facsimiles of Old English* [*i.e.* Old and Middle English] *Manuscripts, with Transcriptions and Introduction.* Oxford and New York, 1892. (From Alfred's translation of the *Pastoral Care*, the poetical *Exodus*, and the *Chronicle.*)

ZUPITZA, *Beowulf: Autotypes of the Unique Cotton MS., with a Transliteration and Notes.* London (E. E. T. S.), 1882.

WÜLKER, *Codex Vercellensis: Die Angelsächsische Handschrift zu Vercelli in Getreuer Nachbildung.* Leipzig, 1894.

WESTWOOD, *Facsimiles of the Miniatures and Ornaments of Anglo-Saxon and Irish Manuscripts.* London, 1868.

——, *Palæographia Sacra Pictoria.* London, 1843–45.

(See also Cook's edition of *Judith*, under **Poetical Texts,** p. 237.)

**History of the English Language.**

KLUGE, BEHRENS, AND EINENKEL, *Geschichte der Englischen Sprache.* (In Paul's *Grundriss der Germanischen Philologie*, 2d ed., I. 926–1151.) Strassburg, 1899–.

**Grammar.**

MÄTZNER, *Englische Grammatik.* 3d ed. Berlin, 1885–89, 3 vols. (English Translation by C. J. Grece, London, 1874.)

KOCH, *Historische Grammatik der Englischen Sprache.* Kassel, 1863–78, 3 vols.

COSIJN, *Altwestsächsische Grammatik.* The Hague, 1883–88.

——, *Kurzgefasste Altwestsächsische Grammatik.* 2d ed. Leiden, 1893.

SWEET, *New English Grammar*, Parts I. and II. Oxford and New York, 1892–1898.

BÜLBRING, *Altenglisches Elementarbuch*, I. Teil: Lautlehre. Heidelberg, 1902.

**Phonology.**

SWEET, *History of English Sounds.* Oxford and New York, 1888.

MAYHEW, *Synopsis of Old English Phonology.* Oxford and New York, 1891.

COOK, *Phonological Investigation of Old English.* Boston, 1888.

**Syntax.**

CHASE, *Bibliographical Guide to Old English Syntax.* Leipzig, 1896.

WÜLFING, *Die Syntax in den Werken Alfreds des Grossen,* I.–II. Teil. Bonn, 1894–1901. (Contains a useful bibliography.)

SHEARIN, *The Expression of Purpose in Old English Prose.* (*Yale Studies in English* XVIII.) New York, 1903.

CALLAWAY, *The Absolute Participle in Anglo-Saxon.* Baltimore, 1888.

——, *The Appositive Participle in Anglo-Saxon.* (*Pub. Mod. Lang. Assoc.* XVI.) Baltimore, 1901.

**Prosody.**

SIEVERS, *Altgermanische Metrik,* pp. 120–149. Halle, 1893.

——, *Angelsächsische Metrik.* (In Paul's *Grundriss der Germanischen Philologie,* 1st ed., II. 1. 888–893; a very brief, but clear, sketch.) Strassburg, 1891.

**Dictionaries.**

BOSWORTH-TOLLER, *Anglo-Saxon Dictionary.* New York, 1882–98.

GREIN, *Sprachschatz der Angelsächsischen Dichter.* Göttingen, 1861–4.

COOK, *Glossary of the Old Northumbrian Gospels.* Halle, 1894.

LINDELÖF, *Glossar zur Altnorthumbrischen Evangelienübersetzung in der Rushworth Handschrift.* Helsingfors, 1897.

——, *Wörterbuch zur Interlinearglosse des Rituale Ecclesiæ Dunelmensis.* (*Bonner Beiträge zur Anglistik* IX.) Bonn, 1901.

HARRIS, *Glossary of the West Saxon Gospels.* (*Yale Studies in English* VI.) New York, 1899.

KLUGE, *Etymologisches Wörterbuch der Deutschen Sprache* (with Janssen's Index). 6th ed., Strassburg, 1899; 4th ed. translated, New York, 1891. (For comparison of Old English with German words.)

**Periodicals.**

*Anglia.* Halle, 1878–.

*Englische Studien.* Heilbronn, 1878–.

*Archiv für das Studium der Neueren Sprachen.* Berlin, 1846–. (Especially the recent volumes.)

*Beiträge zur Geschichte der Deutschen Sprache und Litteratur* (ed. by Paul and Braune). Halle, 1874–.

*Publications of the Modern Language Association of America.* Baltimore, 1886–.

*Modern Language Notes.* Baltimore, 1886–.

*The Journal of (English and) Germanic Philology.* Boston, London, and Leipzig, 1897–.

# APPENDIX II.

## CORRESPONDENCES OF OLD ENGLISH AND MODERN GERMAN VOWELS.

Only a selection of the more regular correspondences is here given. The student must not be surprised at the occurrence of correspondences which he cannot reconcile with these; profounder study will usually show the reason for the discrepancy. The great majority of instances, however, will be found to fall under the following heads. The graphic representations of the vowels, not their sounds, is all that is here considered, but this will be found of much assistance in tracing and fixing cognates.

### Old English Short Vowels and Diphthongs.

OE. **a** : Ger. *a* . . . . . **baðian** : *baden.*
OE. **æ** : Ger. *a* . . . . . **cræft** : *Kraft.*
Sometimes OE. **æ** : Ger. *e*. . . **hærfest** : *Herbst.*
OE. **e** : Ger. *e*. . . . . **brecan** : *brechen.*
OE. **ę** : Ger. *e* (*ee*) . . . . . **będd** : *Bett;* **hęre** : *Heer.*
OE. **i** : Ger. *i* . . . . . **fisc** : *Fisch.*
OE. **o** : Ger. *o* . . . . . **lof** : *Lob.*
OE. **u** : Ger. *u* . . . . . **burg** : *Burg.*
OE. **y** : Ger. *ü* . . . . . **fyllan** : *füllen.*
Sometimes OE. **y** : Ger. *u*. . . **hyldu** : *Huld.*
OE. **ea** (**20, 21**) : Ger. *a*. . . . . **hearpe** : *Harfe.*
OE. **eo** (**20, 21**) : Ger. *e* . . . . . **eorðe** : *Erde.*

OLD ENGLISH LONG VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS.

OE. **ā** : Ger. *ei* . . . . . **brād** : *breit.*

Sometimes OE. **ā** : Ger. *e* (*ee*) . . . **ār** : *Ehre;* **sāwol** : *Seele.*

OE. **ǣ** : Ger. *ei* . . . . . **hǣl** : *Heil.*

Sometimes OE. **ǣ** : Ger. *a* or Ger. *e*. { **lǣtan** : *lassen;* **ǣrest** : *erst.*

OE. **ē** : Ger. *ü* . . . . . **grēne** : *grün.*

OE. **ī** : Ger. *ei* . . . . . **īdel** : *eitel.*

OE. **ō** : Ger. *u* . . . . . **fōt** : *Fuss.*

OE. **ū** : Ger. *au* . . . . . **hūs** : *Haus.*

OE. **ēa** : Ger. *au* . . . . . **hēafod** : *Haupt.*

Before **h**, and dental consonants (**6**), OE. **ēa** : Ger. *o* . . . . . **dēað** : *Tod.*

OE. **ēo** : Ger. *ie* . . . . . **dēor** : *Tier.*

In tracing back the history of these vowels, many correspondences become clearer. Thus, take OE. **ō**: Ger. *u*. The Old High German correlative of **ō** is *uo*, that is, the one long vowel is diphthongized into two short ones. Of these it is the *u* which has survived. If now we consider that the **i**-umlaut of **ō** is **ē**, and of Ger. *u* is *ü*, we shall better understand such a pair as **grēne** : *grün.*

It should be observed that Ger. *ei* corresponds to OE. **ā**, **ǣ**, and **ī**, and Ger. *au* to OE. **ū** and **ēa**; similarly Ger. *o* to OE. **o** and **ēa**, Ger. *u* to OE. **u** and **ō**, etc. Note, too, that the *sound* of the vowel in Ger. *eitel*, *Haus*, corresponds precisely to the Mod. Eng. sound into which the OE. vowels of **īdel**, **hūs**, have respectively developed.

See Kluge, under **Dictionaries**, p. 241.

# APPENDIX III.

## ANDREW'S NEGOTIATIONS WITH THE STEERSMAN.

[This extract from the Greek is found on pp. 136–138 of Tischendorf's *Acta Apostolorum Apocrypha*, and corresponds to lines 235–349 of the Old English *Andreas*.]

Ἀναστὰς δὲ Ἀνδρέας τῷ πρωὶ ἐπορεύετο ἐπὶ τὴν θάλασσαν ἅμα τοῖς μαθηταῖς αὐτοῦ, καὶ κατελθὼν ἐπὶ τὸν αἰγιαλὸν ἴδεν πλοιάριον μικρὸν καὶ ἐπὶ τό πλοιάριον τρεῖς ἄνδρας καθεζομένους· ὁ γὰρ κύριος τῇ ἑαυτοῦ δυνάμει κατεσκεύασεν πλοῖον, καὶ αὐτὸς ἦν ὥσπερ ἄνθρωπος πρωρεὺς ἐν τῷ πλοίῳ· καὶ εἰσήνεγκεν δύο ἀγγέλους οὓς ἐποίησεν ὡς ἀνθρώπους φανῆναι, καὶ ἦσαν ἐν τῷ πλοίῳ καθεζόμενοι. ὁ οὖν Ἀνδρέας θεασάμενος τὸ πλοῖον καὶ τοὺς τρεῖς ὄντας ἐν αὐτῷ ἐχάρη χαρὰν μεγάλην σφόδρα, καὶ πορευθεὶς πρὸς αὐτοὺς εἶπεν Ποῦ πορεύεσθε, ἀδελφοί, μετὰ τοῦ πλοίου τοῦ μικροῦ τούτου; καὶ ἀποκριθεὶς ὁ κύριος εἶπεν αὐτῷ Πορευόμεθα ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ τῶν ἀνθρωποφά-

Then Andrew arose early, and went to the sea with his disciples, and, when he had gone down to the sea-shore, he saw a little boat, and in the boat three men sitting. For the Lord had prepared a ship by his own power, and he himself was as it were a steersman in the ship; and he brought two angels whom he made to seem as men, and they were seated in the ship. Andrew, therefore, when he saw the ship and the three men in it, rejoiced with very great joy, and, coming to them, said, Whither go ye, brethren, with this little ship? And the Lord answered and said unto him, We are journeying into the country of the man-eaters. Now Andrew, when he saw Jesus,

γων. ὁ δὲ Ἀνδρέας θεασάμενος τὸν Ἰησοῦν οὐκ ἐπέγνω αὐτόν· ἦν γὰρ ὁ Ἰησοῦς κρύψας τὴν ἑαυτοῦ θεότητα, καὶ ἦν φαινόμενος τῷ Ἀνδρέᾳ ὡς ἄνθρωπος πρωρεύς· ὁ δὲ Ἰησοῦς ἀκούσας τοῦ Ἀνδρέου λέγοντος ὅτι κἀγὼ εἰς τὴν χώραν τῶν ἀνθρωποφάγων πορεύομαι, λέγει αὐτῷ Πᾶς ἄνθρωπος φεύγει τὴν πόλιν ἐκείνην, καὶ πῶς ὑμεῖς πορεύεσθε ἐκεῖ; καὶ ἀποκριθεὶς Ἀνδρέας εἶπεν Πρᾶγμά τι μικρὸν ἔχομεν ἐκεῖ διαπράξασθαι, καὶ δεῖ ἡμᾶς ἐκτελέσαι αὐτό· ἀλλ' εἰ δύνασαι, ποίησον μεθ' ἡμῶν τὴν φιλανθρωπίαν ταύτην τοῦ ἀπάξαι ἡμᾶς ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ τῶν ἀνθρωποφάγων, ἐν ᾗ καὶ ὑμεῖς μέλλετε πορεύεσθαι. ἀποκριθεὶς δὲ ὁ Ἰησοῦς εἶπεν αὐτοῖς Ἀνέλθατε.

Καὶ εἶπεν Ἀνδρέας Θέλω σοί τι φανερὸν ποιῆσαι, νεανίσκε, πρὸ τοῦ ἡμᾶς ἀνελθεῖν ἐν τῷ πλοίῳ σου. ὁ δὲ Ἰησοῦς εἶπεν Λέγε ὃ βούλῃ. ὁ δὲ Ἀνδρέας εἶπεν αὐτῷ Ναῦλον οὐκ ἔχομέν σοι παρασχεῖν, ἀλλ' οὔτε ἄρτον ἔχομεν εἰς διατροφήν. καὶ ἀποκριθεὶς ὁ Ἰησοῦς εἶπεν αὐτῷ Πῶς οὖν ἀπέρχεσθε μὴ παρέχοντες ἡμῖν τὸν ναῦλον μήτε ἄρτον ἔχοντες εἰς διατροφήν; εἶπεν δὲ Ἀνδρέας τῷ Ἰησοῦ Ἄκουσον, ἀδελφέ· μὴ νομίσῃς ὅτι κατὰ τυραννίαν οὐ

knew him not, for Jesus was hiding his godhead, and appearing to Andrew as a steersman. Jesus hearing Andrew say, I also am going to the country of the man-eaters, saith unto him, Every one fleeth from that city, and why go ye thither? Andrew answered and said, We have a certain little business to perform there, and must needs finish it; if thou canst, do us this kindness to carry us to the country of the man-eaters, to which ye also are bound. Jesus answered and said unto them, Come.

And Andrew said, I will make known to thee somewhat, young man, before we enter into thy ship. Jesus said, Say what thou wilt. Then Andrew said unto him, We have no passage-money to give thee, neither have we bread for food. Jesus answered and said unto him, Why then do ye depart, seeing that ye neither give us passage-money nor have bread for food? Andrew said unto Jesus,

δίδομέν σοι τὸν ναῦλον ἡμῶν, ἀλλ' ἡμεῖς μαθηταί ἐσμεν τοῦ κυρίου ἡμῶν Ἰησοῦ Χριστοῦ τοῦ ἀγαθοῦ θεοῦ. ἐξελέξατο γὰρ ἡμᾶς τοὺς δώδεκα, καὶ παρέδωκεν ἡμῖν ἐντολὴν τοιαύτην λέγων ὅτι πορευόμενοι κηρύσσειν μὴ βαστάζετε ἀργύριον ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ μήτε ἄρτον μήτε πήραν μήτε ὑποδήματα μήτε ῥάβδον μήτε δύο χιτῶνας. εἰ οὖν ποιεῖς τὴν φιλανθρωπίαν μεθ' ἡμῶν, ἀδελφέ, εἰπὲ ἡμῖν συντόμως· εἰ οὐ ποιεῖς, φανέρωσον ἡμῖν, καὶ πορευθέντες ξητήσομεν ἑαυτοῖς ἕτερον πλοῖον. ἀποκριθεὶς δὲ ὁ Ἰησοῦς εἶπεν τῷ Ἀνδρέᾳ Εἰ αὕτη ἐστὶν ἡ ἐντολὴ ἣν ἐλάβετε καὶ τηρεῖτε αὐτήν, ἀνέλθατε μετὰ πάσης χαρᾶς ἐν τῷ πλοίῳ μου. ἀληθῶς γὰρ βούλομαι ὑμᾶς τοὺς μαθητὰς τοῦ λεγομένου Ἰησοῦ ἀνελθεῖν ἐν τῷ πλοίῳ μου ἢ τοὺς παρέχοντάς μοι χρυσίου καὶ ἀργυρίου· πάντως γὰρ ἄξιός εἰμι ἵνα ὁ ἀπόστολος τοῦ κυρίου ἀνέλθῃ ἐν τῷ πλοίῳ μου. ἀποκριθεὶς δὲ ὁ Ἀνδρέας εἶπεν Συγχώρησόν μοι, ἀδελφέ, ὁ κύριος παράσχῃ σοι τὴν δόξαν καὶ τὴν τιμήν. καὶ ἀνῆλθεν Ἀνδρέας μετὰ τῶν αὐτοῦ μαθητῶν εἰς τὸ πλοῖον.

Hearken, brother; think not that because of arrogance we give thee not our passage-money, since we are disciples of the good God, our Lord Jesus Christ. For he chose us, the twelve, and gave us this commandment, saying, As ye go to preach, carry neither money on the way, neither bread, nor scrip, nor shoes, nor staff, nor two coats. If, therefore, thou wilt do us this kindness, brother, tell us plainly; if thou wilt not, declare it unto us, and we will go and seek for ourselves another ship. Jesus answered and said unto Andrew, If this is the commandment which ye have received and do keep, enter with all joy into my ship; for verily I had rather that ye, the disciples of him who is called Jesus, should enter into my ship, than those who give me gold and silver; for I am certainly worthy that the apostle of the Lord should enter into my ship. Then Andrew answered and said, Agree with me, brother, and the Lord give thee glory and honor. And Andrew entered into the ship with his disciples.

# APPENDIX IV.

## SPECIMENS OF THE DIALECTS.

The three best sources of information on the OE. dialects are Sievers' *OE. Grammar*, Bülbring's *Altenglisches Elementarbuch*, and Professor E. M. Brown's work on Mercian. The last is in two parts — (Part I.) *Die Sprache der Rushworth Glossen* (Göttingen, 1891), comprising the vowels, and (Part II.) *The Language of the Rushworth Gloss* (Göttingen, 1892), comprising a continuation of the vowels, the consonants, and inflection.

In some respects the non-West Saxon dialects agree. These common features, so far as they relate to the vowels, have been signalized by Sievers, and are here extracted from § 150 of my edition of his Grammar: —

1. In place of the West Saxon **ǣ** = Germ. **ē**, West Germ. **ā**, stands the vowel **ē**.

2. The WS. **ie**, **īe** is wanting, and hence the same is true of the unstable **y**, **ȳ** (**i**, **ī**) (**19**).

3. The sounds **ea**, **eo** (**io**), as well as their corresponding long diphthongs, are not so accurately discriminated as in WS. In Northumbrian especially there is great confusion between **ea** and **eo**. Kentish has a preference for **ia** and **io**, the former standing as well for WS. **ea** as for **eo**.

4. The sound **œ** is of more extensive occurrence.

## I. Northumbrian.

### 1. Cædmon's Hymn.

According to Sweet (*Oldest English Texts*, p. 148), "The hymn of Cædmon is written at the top of the page [*i.e.* in the famous Moore MS. of Bede] in a smaller hand than that of the List of Kings which follows it. It is not impossible that the hymn may have been written later than the List [which, according to Sweet, was written 'most probably in 737'], to fill the blank space. But the hand is evidently contemporary."

The **ae** is not always joined into a digraph, and the signs of length and of **i**-umlaut (**ę**) are wanting. These have been supplied, together with the punctuation and the division into lines; in other respects the manuscript has been followed.

The translation of the Hymn, as given by Bede (*Hist. Eccl.* IV. 24), is as follows, though it should be observed that Bede adds, "Hic est sensus, non autem ordo ipse verborum quæ dormiens ille canebat":—

"Nunc laudare debemus auctorem regni cælestis, potentiam creatoris et consilium illius, facta patris gloriæ, quomodo ille, cum sit æternus deus, omnium miraculorum auctor extitit; qui primo filiis hominum cælum pro culmine tecti, dehinc terram custos humani generis omnipotens creavit."

With reference to the words, "**heben til hrōfe**," it is interesting that Alcuin (*Anglia* VII. 7) has, "ut primum Creator mundum *quasi domum* præpararet, et post introduceret habitatorem, id est, dominum domus";

cf. "lacunar, **hūshefen, oððe heofenhrōf**" (Wülker-Wright, *Vocabularies*, 432. 8).

Variations from the EWS. norm are: —

1. Final **-æs** instead of **-es**: **-rīcæs, metudæs, -cynnæs.**
2. Final **-i** for **-e**: **mæcti, ēci.**
3. Final **-æ** for **-e**: **āstęlidæ, tīadæ.**
4. Final **-æn, -en** for **-on**: **hefæn-, heben.**
5. Final **-un** for **-on**: **scylun.**
6. Final **-un** for **-an**: **middun-.**
7. Final **-ur** for **-er**: **fadur.**
8. Final **-ur** for **-or**: **wuldur-.**
9. Final **-ud** for **-od**: **metud-.**
10. Final **-in** for **-en**: **dryctin.**
11. Final **-ist** for **-est**: **ærist.**
12. Final **-u** for **-an**: **foldu.**
13. Final **-eg** for **-ig**: **hāleg.**
14. Final **-en** for **-end**: **scępen.**
15. **ā** for **ea** (**æ**): **āll-, uārd, bārnum.**
16. **e** for **eo**: **uerc, heben, hefæn-, metud-.**
17. **y** for **u**: **scylun.**
18. **ę** for **a, ǫ**: **ęnd.**
19. **ęli** for **eal**: **āstęlidæ.**
20. **ǣ** for **ie**: **ǣlda.**
21. **æ, e, ę** for **i, ie**: **mæcti, -mectig, scępen.**
22. **īa** for **ēo**: **tīadæ.**
23. **a** for **æ**: **-fadur.**
24. **ē** for **ā**: **suē.**
25. **ō** for **ēo** (**ō**): **scōp.**
26. **gi-** for **ge-**: **gihuæs.**
27. **d** for **ð** (**þ**): **-gidanc.**
28. **th** for **ð** (**þ**): **thā.**
29. **ct** for **ht**: **dryctin, mæcti, -mectig.**
30. **b** for **f**: **heben.**
31. **til** for **tō.**

Most of the foregoing variations are due either to the age of the document, or are common to at least two of the non-West Saxon dialects. The only ones

that seem peculiarly Northumbrian are 17, 31, and possibly 12. Of the rest, 16 and 25 do not agree with later Northumbrian (Lind.), and 22 looks not unlike Kentish. But 17 has that palatalization of **u** by preceding **sc** which we find in **scyūr**, **-scyade**, **scyldor**, **scyniga**, **scuia** (**ui** as in **druige** for **drȳge**), and even **shȳa** (WS. **scūa**), of the Lind. Gospels. **Til**, which in Old Norse replaces OE. **tō**, is found here and in Lind. Matt. 26. 31, besides being read in the Runic inscription on the Ruthwell Cross. **Foldu** resembles the **eorðu**, **-o** of Lind. Matt. 15. 35, 27. 45, etc., which is the regular form in these Glosses.

The Hymn is as follows: —

Nū scylun hęrgan hefænrīcæs uārd,
metudæs mæcti ęnd his mōdgidanc,
uerc uuldurfadur; suē hē uundra gihuæs,
ēci dryctin, ōr āstęlidæ.
Hē ærist scōp ælda bārnum
heben til hrōfe, hāleg scępen.
Thā middungeard mǫncynnæs uārd,
ēci dryctin, æfter tīadæ,
fīrum foldu, frēa āllmectig.

### 2. Bede's Death Song.

Of this Sweet says: "Preserved in the St. Gall MS. 254, of the ninth century, in the usual continental minuscule hand, evidently an accurate copy of an Old Northumbrian original."

As translated by Cuthbert, his pupil, it runs: —

"Ante necessarium exitum prudentior quam opus fuerit nemo existit, ad cogitandum videlicet, antequam hinc profiscatur anima, quid boni vel mali egerit, qualiter post exitum judicanda fuerit."

Its variations from EWS. are:—

1. It has some of the peculiarities of I. 1, such as (1) **gōdæs, yflæs,** (2) **ni,** (3) **-færæ, -hycggannæ, -iǫngæ, gāstæ, uueorthæ,** (8) **-snottur-,** (15) **thārf,** (28) **there, uuiurthit, thǫnc-, than, thārf, æththa, dēoth-, uueorthæ.**
2. Final **-a** for **-e**: **æþþa.**
3. Final **-it** for **-eð** (cf. **35**): **uuiurthit.**
4. Final **-id** for **-ed**: **dœmid.**
5. **ēi** for **īe**: **nēid-.**
6. **ē** for **ǣ**: **thēre.**
7. **iu** for **eo** (**ie**): **uuiurthit.**
8. **ēo** for **ēa**: **dēoth-.**
9. **æ** for **o**: **æththa.**
10. **œ̄** for **ē**: **dœmid.**
11. **hin-** (otherwise almost always poetical).
12. **cgg** for **cg**: **-hycggannæ.**
13. **i** for **g** (**ge**): **-iǫngæ.**

Of the foregoing only 8 and 13 are unmistakably Northumbrian. With **dēoth-** may be compared **ēoro,** Lind. Lk., p. 8, l. 15 (cf. Jn. 18. 26); **ēostro,** Lk. 22. 1, etc. (**15**); **ēoðe,** Matt. 27. 64, Lk. 14. 8 (cf. Matt. 10. 15); **ēoung,** Matt., p. 22, l. 15. The **iǫng** (for **gǫng** < **gang**) is simply an attempt to express the palatal **g** (**ge**); **geong** occurs frequently in the Lindisfarne Gospels, eight times uncompounded. Rushworth has **iarw-**, but not **iǫng** (p. 253, note 10). At least Anglian (North. Merc.) is (9) **æþþa**; as **eðða** (**eþþa**) it occurs in Rush. Matt. 5. 18, and in the Riddles ascribed to Cynewulf (44. 17).

The text is: —

Fore thēre nēidfæræ nænig ni uuiurthit
thǫncsnotturra than him thārf sīe,
tō ymbhycggannæ ær his hiniǫngæ
huæt his gāstæ gōdæs æththa yflæs
æfter dēothdæge dōemid uueorthæ.

### 3. The Day of Judgment.

The text is taken from Skeat's edition of Matthew. As far as practicable the readings have been conformed to the norms of the Lindisfarne Gospels (ca. 950). But as there is often great variation in the spelling and endings of the same word, normalizing has not been attempted in all cases. Where changes have been made, the MS. reading is given in a note. The equivalent for Lat. *et* is nearly always represented by a contraction, as is frequently that for *vel, aut;* these have been rendered by the usual words, **and, oððe.** The second of two alternative glosses has been enclosed in square brackets, and so has occasionally a superfluous word.

Variations from EWS. are (only the more important are registered): —

1. Of I. 1: (5, but not regularly, see foot-notes), (15) **ālle, -sāldes, -sāldon,** (21) **mæht,** (23) **fadores** (cf. 24, **suæ**); of I. 2: (10) **geblœdsad.**
2. Loss of final **-n**: **eatta, drinca, befora, ðęnde.**
3. Uncontracted ind. pres. 3 sing. (cf. I. 2. 3): **sittes, scēades, sętteð,** etc.
4. Plurals in **-as** (**s**), as well as **-að**: **bȳas, āgnigas, gaas.**
5. Change of gender: **-mæhtes.**
6. Plural of long neuters in **-o**: **cynno.**

7. Plural of adjectives and past participles in **-o**: **sōðfæsto, āwœrgedo.**
8. Weak plurals in **-o**: **ilco.**
9. Shortened plurals of verbs in **-o**, instead of **-e**: **sōhto.**
10. **ea** (representing **eo**) for **e**: **eatta.**
11. **œ** for **e** after **w** (denoted by **u**): **cuœðas.**
12. **ē** for **ēa** before palatals: **ēc.**
13. **ēg** for **āw**: **sēgon.**
14. **ē** for **y**: **dēdon.**
15. **i** for **y** before palatals: **drihten.**
16. Irregular umlaut: **cymmeð.**
17. Irregular gemination: **eatta, cymmeð, untrymmig.**
18. **cg** for **cc**: **ticgen-.**
19. **cg** for **g**: **hyncg-.**
20. **d** for **t** (**d** original): **geblœdsad.**
21. **ð** for **t**: **seðel.**
22. **ð** for **d**: **mið.**
23. **-ig** for **-ing**: **cynig.**
24. Inorganic initial **h**: **hriordadon.**
25. Loss of final **-e**: **rīc.**
26. The form **biðon.**
27. The form **hīa.**

Under the Northumbrian is printed the corresponding passage from the Vulgate, with collations of the Latin versions on which the Lindisfarne and Rushworth glosses are respectively based. The text is:—

Miððy uut'[1] cymes Sunu Mǫnnes in mæht his, and ālle ęnglas[2] mið him, ðā hē sittes ofer seðel godcundmæhtes[3] his. And gesǫmnad biðon befora hine ālle cynno,[4] and tōscēades hīa betuīh, suā[5] hiorde tōscēades[6] scīp[7] fǫm ticgenum. And hē sętteð ðā scīp ēc sōð [uut'] tō suīð-

[1] Abbreviation of **uutedlice** (**-tet-**), WS. **witodlice.**
[2] MS. **engles.**
[3] MS. **-mæht.**
[4] **cynne.**
[5] MS. **sua.**
[6] MS. **-as.**
[7] MS. **scipo**; this neuter is exceptional in its preponderance of plur. nom. acc. without ending.

rum his, ðā ticgeno sōðlice of winstrum. Ðonne [hē] cueðes ðe[1] cynig ðǣm ðā-ðe tō suīðrum his biðon [hīa], "Cymmeð gīe, geblǣdsad fadores mīnes, bȳas[2] [āgnigas[3]] gegearwad[4] īuh rīc frǫm frymðo middangeardes. Ic gehyncgerde [ic wæs hyncgrig[5]] for-ðon, and ðū gesāldes mē eatta; ic wæs ðyrstig, and gesāldon mē drinca[6]; gęst ic wæs, and gīe sǫmnadon mec[7]; nacod, and gīe clǣðdon [gīe wrigon] mec[7]; untrymig,[8] and gīe sōhton mec[7]; in carcern,[9] and gīe cuōmon[10] tō mē. Đā ǫndueardas [ǫndsuerigað] him sōðfæsto, cuœðas, Drihten, huœnne ðec wē sēgon hungrig [hyngrende], and wē hriordadon[10] ðec? ðyrstende [ðyrstig], and wē sāldon[11] ðē drinca[12]? huœnne[13] uutetli' ðec wē sēgon gęstig, and wē sǫmnadon ðec, oððe nacod, and wē āwrigon ðec? huœnne ðec wē gesēgon untrymig and in carcern, and wē cuōmon[10] tō ðē?" And geǫndweardeð ðe cynig, cuœðes ðǣm, "Sōðlice ic cuœðo īuh, ðęnde gīe dydon[14] ānum of ðisum brōðrum mīnum lȳtlum, mē gīe dydon." Đā cuœðes[15] and ðǣm ðā-ðe tō winstrum biðon, "Ofstīgað[16] gīe frǫm mē, āwœrgedo, in fȳr ēce,[17] se-ðe foregegearuuad is dīwle and ęnglum [ðegnum] his. Mec gęhyncgerde, and ne sāldo[18] gīe mē eatta; mec ðyrste, and ne sāldo gīe mē drinca; gęst ic wæs, and ne gesǫmnade gīe mec; nacod, and ne āwrigon gīe mec; untrymig[8] and in carcern, and ne sōhto gīe mec." Đā ǫndueardas and ðā ilco [hīa], cuœðendo, "Drihten, huœnne ðec wē sēgon hyncgrende,[19] oððe ðyrstende,[20] oððe gęst, oððe nacod, oððe untrymig, oððe in

[1] **Se** is about one-half more numerous than **ðe**.
[2] MS. **byes**.
[3] MS. **agneges**; for **-igas**, etc., **-as** and **-að** are frequently found in these verbs.
[4] MS. **gegearwað**.
[5] MS. **hincgrig**.
[6] MS. **dringe**.
[7] MS. **meh**.
[8] MS. **untrymmig**.
[9] MS. **carchern**.
[10] MS. **-un**.
[11] MS. **sealdon**.
[12] MS. **ðringe**.
[13] MS. **huonne**.
[14] MS. **dyde**.
[15] MS. **coeðes**.
[16] MS. **-es**.
[17] MS. **écce**.
[18] MS. **sealdo**.
[19] MS. **hyncgerende**.
[20] MS. **-a**.

carcern, and ne ęmbehtadon[1] wē ðē?" Ðā hē ǫnduearðeð ðǣm, cweðende, "Sōðlice ic cueðo īuh, ðā hwīle ne dyde gīe ānum of lȳtlum ðissum [suā lǫng gīe ne dēdon[2] ānum ðisra[3] metdmaasta], ne mē gīe dydon.[4]" And gaas[5] ðās in tintergo ēce, sōðfæsto[6] uut' in līf ēce.

Cum autem venerit Filius hominis in majestate sua, et omnes angeli cum eo, tunc sedebit super sedem majestatis suæ. Et congregabuntur ante eum omnes gentes, et separabit eos ab invicem, sicut pastor segregat oves ab hædis. Et statuet oves quidem a dextris suis, hædos autem a sinistris. Tunc dicet rex his, qui a dextris ejus erunt: "Venite, benedicti Patris mei, possidete paratum[7] vobis regnum a constitutione mundi. Esurivi enim, et dedistis mihi manducare; sitivi, et dedistis[8] mihi bibere; hospes eram, et collegistis[9] me; nudus,[10] et cooperuistis[11] me; infirmus, et visitastis me; in carcere eram,[12] et venistis ad me." Tunc respondebunt ei justi, dicentes: "Domine, quando te vidimus esurientem, et pavimus te? sitientem,[13] et dedimus tibi potum? quando autem te vidimus hospitem, et collegimus[14] te, aut nudum et cooperuimus te[15]? aut quando te vidimus infirmum, ąut[16] in carcere, et venimus ad te?" Et respondens rex, dicet illis: "Amen dico vobis, quamdiu fecistis uni[17] ex[18] his fratribus meis minimis, mihi fecistis." Tunc dicet et[19] his, qui a[20] sinistris[21]

[1] MS. **embigto.**
[2] Less common form for **dydon.**
[3] MS. **ðassa.**
[4] MS. **dyde.**
[5] MS. **gaes.**
[6] MS. **-fæste.**
[7] R. *regnum quod vobis paratum est ab origine mundi.*
[8] L. *dedisti.*
[9] L. *collexistis.*
[10] R. *nudus eram.*
[11] L. *operuistis.*
[12] L. om.; R. *fui.*
[13] R. *aut sitientem.*
[14] L. *colleximus.*
[15] L. om.
[16] L. *et.*
[17] R. *uni ex minimis his fratribus meis.*
[18] L. *de.*
[19] R. *rex.*
[20] L. *ad.*
[21] R. *sinistris ejus.*

erunt: "Discedite[1] a me, maledicti, in ignem æternum, qui paratus[2] est diabolo et angelis ejus. Esurivi enim, et non dedistis mihi manducare; sitivi, et non dedistis mihi potum[3]; hospes eram, et non collegistis[4] me; nudus, et non cooperuistis[5] me; infirmus et in carcere, et non visitastis me." Tunc respondebunt ei[6] et ipsi, dicentes: "Domine, quando te vidimus esurientem, aut sitientem, aut hospitem, aut[7] nudum,[7] aut infirmum, aut[8] in carcere, et non ministravimus tibi?" Tunc respondebit illis, dicens: "Amen dico vobis, quamdiu non fecistis uni de minoribus his, nec mihi fecistis." Et ibunt hi in supplicium æternum, justi autem in vitam æternam.

[1] L. *discendite.*
[2] L. *præparatus;* R. *quem præparavit pater meus diabolo.*
[3] R. *bibere.*
[4] L. *collexistis.*
[5] L. *operuistis.*
[6] L. om.
[7] R. om.
[8] L. *vel.*

## II. Mercian.

Mercian has been thus characterized by Brown (*ut supra*, Part I., p. 81, with which should be compared his Part II., p. 91): —

"There is naturally much general agreement with Northumbrian, since both are Anglian. Variations from North. are in some cases approximations to WS., but not in all. In certain respects Mercian stands quite by itself; in particular —

"1. OE. stable **e** [*i.e.* not **ę**] is usually retained in Mercian, yet is more or less frequently changed to **æ**.

"2. The **o**-umlaut of **a** scarcely occurs in WS., and not at all in either Kentish or Northumbrian, but is well developed in Mercian.

"3. The **u**-, **o**-umlaut of **e** to **eo**, and of **i** to **io**, **eo**, occurs at least more regularly in Mercian than in WS. and the other dialects.

"It is true that these peculiarities give no sharp outlines to Mercian, yet they sufficiently characterize it as a dialect, and not merely as Northumbrian modified by West Saxon scribes, or the reverse."

### 1. The Day of Judgment.

The text is from Skeat's edition of Matthew, normalized like the last. There is a difference of opinion about the date of the Gloss. Skeat says (ed. of Mark, p. xii) that it may be referred to the latter half of the tenth century, Brown (Part I., p. 83) would date it just before the decay of Latin studies to which Alfred testifies; the latter also infers that its origin was not near the Kentish border. The phonological and inflectional points of difference from both West Saxon and Northumbrian should be noted.

The passage is as follows: —

And[1] mið-þy[2] cymeþ þonne Sunu[3] Mǫnnes in ðrymme his, and ālle[4] ęnglas mið hine, þonne[5] gesiteþ[6] on sedle[7] his þrymmes. And gesǫmnade[8] bēoð beforan him ālle[4]

[1] Represented in MS. only by the abbreviation; **and** occurs but once in the Gospel, and is accordingly restored here; **a**, too, is more likely to occur in proclitics.

[2] Both **mið** and **mid** are found; here the following **þ** may have influenced.

[3] MS. **sune**

[4] MS. **ealle**; **a** is more common before **l** + cons., though **eall** and **healf** are somewhat exceptional.

[5] **þonne** is much commoner, and so **o** before nasals in general.

[6] MS. **gesitæþ**.

[7] This word has **þ** and **t** (**tt**), as well as **d**.

[8] MS. **gesomnede.**

þēode, and gescēadeþ[1] hiæ in twā,[2] swā hiorde[3] āscēadeþ[4] scēp from ticnum. And sęteþ þā scēp[5] on þā[6] swīðran hālfe,[7] his ticcen þonne on þā winstran hālfe.[7] Þonne cwæþ[8] se Cyning þæm þe on þā swīþran hālfe his bēon, "Cumaþ,[9] geblētsade mīnes Fæder, gesittað rīce þte ēow geiarwad[10] wæs from sętnisse middangeardes. For-þon-ðe mec[11] yngrade,[12] and ge sāldun mē etan; mec þyrste, and gē sāldun[13] mē drincan; cuma ic wæs, and gē feormadun mec[11]; nacud ic wæs, and gē wrigun[14] mec; untrum,[15] and gē nēosadun mīn; in carcerne[16] ic wæs, and ge cwōmun[17] tō mē." Þonne andswarigaþ[18] him[19] [þæm] sōþfæste,[20] cwæþende,[21] "Dryhten, hwonne[22] gesēgun[23] wē ðē hyngrende, and wē fēddun[24] þē? oþþe þyrstigne, and wē þē drincan sāldun? hwanne[22] þonne gesēgun[23] wē þē[11] cuman, and gefeormadun ðē[11]? oþþe nacudne, and wē þec[11] wrigun[14]? oþðe hwonne[22] wē þē[11] sēgun untrymne[15] oþðe in cwarterne,[25] and wē cwōmun[17] tō þē?" And andswarade se Cyning, cwæþ tō heom,[19] "Sōþ ic sæcge ēow, swā lǫnge swā gē dydun ānum þe[26] lǣsesta[26] þāra brōþre[26]

[1] MS. **gesceadiþ.**

[2] MS. **tu**, but less common.

[3] **heorde** also occurs.

[4] MS. **ascadeþ.**

[5] MS. **scæp.**

[6] Lat. omits *suis.*

[7] MS. **healfe.**

[8] Usual form for pres., as well as pret.; pres. also **cweþ.**

[9] MS. **cymeþ.**

[10] Less common than **gegearwad.**

[11] **mec**, **ðec** rather commoner in acc.

[12] Loss of initial **h** exceptional.

[13] MS. **salden.**

[14] MS. forms are **wriogan**, **wreogan**, but this verb is exceptional.

[15] With **i**-umlaut, and without.

[16] MS. **carkærn.**

[17] MS. **coman.**

[18] MS. **andswærigaþ.**

[19] Sing. **him**, plur. **heom.**

[20] **-fæste** rather more common.

[21] **cwæþende** nearly as common as **cweþende.**

[22] **hwanne** and **hwonne** about equal.

[23] MS. **gesagun.**

[24] MS. **fœddan.**

[25] MS. **quartern.**

[26] Here nom.; **þe** occasional for **se.**

mīne,[1] gē mē dydun.[2]" Þonne cwæþ se Cyning ēc tō þǣm þā-þe on þǣm winstran hālfe bēoþan, "Gewitaþ frǫm mē, āwærgde,[3] in ēce[4] fȳr, Þte wæs geiarwad[5] Fæder[6] mīn[6] dēofle and his ęnglum.[7] For-þon-þe mec[8] hyngrede, and gē ne sāldun mē etan; mec[8] ðyrste, and gē ne sāldun mē drincan; cuma[9] ic wæs, and gē ne feormadun mec[8]; nacud, and gē ne wrigun[10] mec[8]; untrum[11] and in carcerne,[12] and gē ne nēosadun mīn." Þonne andswarigað hīæ swǣlce,[13] cwæþende,[14] "Dryhten, hwanne[15] gesēgun[16] wē ðē[8] hyngrende, oþþe þyrstigne, oþþe cuman, oþðe untrum,[11] oþþe in carcerne,[17] and wē ne þegnadun[18] þē?" Þonne andswaraþ[19] heom,[20] cweþende,[14] "Sōþ ic sæcge ēow, swā lǫnge swā gē ne dydun ānum meodumra[21] þissa, ne mē gē ne dydun." And gæþ[22] hīæ in ǣce[4] tintergu,[23] þā sōþfeste[24] þonne in ǣce[4] līf.

[1] See p. 253, note 26.
[2] MS. **dydon**.
[3] MS. **awærgede**.
[4] **æce** rather more common.
[5] MS. **geiarward**.
[6] Cf. the Latin of this text.
[7] MS. **englas**.
[8] See p. 253, note 11.
[9] MS. **cuman**.
[10] See p. 253, note 14.
[11] See p. 253, note 15.
[12] MS. **carkern**.
[13] MS. **swilce**; the only other instance in the Gospel is **swælce**.
[14] See p. 253, note 21.
[15] See p. 253, note 22.
[16] See p. 253, note 23.
[17] MS. **carcrænnæ**.
[18] MS. **þegnedun**.
[19] MS. **andswareþ**.
[20] See p. 253, note 18.
[21] MS. **meoduma**.
[22] More common than **gāð**; influence of the sing.?
[23] Only instance of **u** in plur. of disyllabic neuters; cf. **ticcen**, above.
[24] See p. 253, note 20.

### 2. Psalm XX. (XXI.)

The Psalm is taken from the Vespasian Psalter as printed in Sweet's *Oldest English Texts*. This was formerly regarded as Kentish, and even yet Brown

(Part I., p. 82) is inclined to think that its Mercian is that of the region adjoining Kent. Sweet (p. 184) refers the gloss to the first half of the ninth century. The forms are less varied than in the last. The Latin is the Vulgate version, collated with that on which the gloss is based.

The text is: —

Dryhten, in megne ðīnum bið geblissad cyning; ǫnd ofer hælu ðīne gefīð[1] swīðlice! Lust sāwle his ðū sāldes him, ǫnd willan weolera his ðū ne biscęredes hine. For-ðon ðū forecwōme hine in blēdsunge[2] swētnisse[3]; ðū sęttes hēafde his bēg of stāne dēorwyrðum.[4] Līf bed, ǫnd ðū sāldes him lęngu dæga[5] in weoruld weorulde. Micel is wuldur his in hælu ðīnre; wuldur ǫnd micelne wlite ðū onsętes ofer hine. For-ðon ðū sęlest hine in blēdsunge in weoruld weorulde; ðū geblissas hine in gefīan mid ǫndwleotan[6] ðīnum. For-ðon cyning gehyhteð in Dryhtne, and in mildheortnisse ðes hēstan ne bið onstyred. Sīe [bið] gimēted hǫnd ðīn āllum fēondum ðīnum; sīe swīðre ðīn gemēteð ālle ðā-ðe ðec[7] fīgað. Ðū sętes hīe swē-swē ofen fȳres in tīd ǫndwleotan[8] ðīnes; Dryhten in eorre his gedrēfeð hīe, ǫnd forswilgeð hīe fȳr. Wēstem heara of eorðan ðū forspildes, and sēd heara frǫm bearnum mǫnna. For-ðon hīe onhældun[9] in ðē yfel; ðōhtun geðæht ðæt hīe ne mæhtun gesteaðulfestian. For-ðon ðū sętes hīe bec, in lāfum ðīnum ðu gearwas ǫndwleotan heara. Hęfe ūp, Dryhten, in megne ðinum; we singað and singað megen ðīn.

[1] MS. **gefihð**.
[2] We should expect **blēdsunge**.
[3] MS. **swētnisse**.
[4] MS. **deorwyrðem**.
[5] MS. **dęga**.
[6] In this word **io** is commoner; but the rule is **eo**.
[7] MS. **ðe**.
[8] MS. **ǫndwliotan**; see note 5.
[9] MS. **onhældon**.

Domine, in virtute tua lætabitur rex; et super salutare tuum exultabit vehementer. Desiderium cordis[1] ejus tribuisti ei, et voluntate labiorum ejus non fraudasti eum. Quoniam prævenisti eum in benedictionibus dulcedinis; posuisti in capite ejus coronam de lapide pretioso. Vitam petiit[2] a[2] te,[2] et tribuisti ei longitudinem dierum in sæculum, et in sæculum sæculi. Magna est gloria ejus in salutari tuo; gloriam et magnum decorem impones super eum. Quoniam dabis eum in benedictionem in sæculum sæculi; lætificabis eum in gaudio cum vultu tuo. Quoniam rex sperat[3] in Domino, et in misericordia Altissimi non commovebitur. Inveniatur manus tua omnibus inimicis tuis; dextera tua inveniat[4] omnes qui te oderunt. Pones eos ut clibanum ignis in tempore vultus tui; Dominus in ira sua conturbabit eos, et devorabit eos ignis. Fructum eorum de terra perdes; et semen eorum a filiis hominum. Quoniam declinaverunt in te mala; cogitaverunt consilia,[5] quæ[6] non potuerunt stabilire. Quoniam pones eos dorsum[7]; in reliquis tuis præparabis vultum eorum. Exaltare, Domine, in virtute tua; cantabimus et psallemus virtutes tuas.

[1] MS. *animæ.*
[2] MS. *petit.*
[3] MS. *sperabit.*
[4] MS. *inveniit.*
[5] MS. *consilium.*
[6] MS. *quod.*
[7] MS. *deorsum.*

## III. Kentish.

The preference for the **e**-sound (both long and short) is, according to Zupitza (*Haupt's Zeitschrift*, XXI. 4), characteristic of the Kentish dialect. Sievers remarks (§ 154) that a distinctive characteristic of Kentish is the substitution of **e**, **ē**, for **y**, **ȳ**, and to some extent the converse.

In our reproduction of the following pieces, **ę** is employed only where it is found in the MSS., in order to avoid confusion between the theoretical and the MS. **ę**.

### 1. Lufa's Confirmation of her Bequest.

The will of which this is the concluding portion dates from 832. It is printed by Sweet in his *Oldest English Texts*, pp. 446–447, and by Earle, *Land Charters*, pp. 165–166. Earle adds: "This piece is given in Thorpe's Analecta as a specimen of East Anglian; but Kemble remarked that Mundlingham is in Kent."

Note the **e** (**ē**) for **æ** (**ǣ**), **ia** (**īa**) for **eo** (**ēo**); **b** for **f** is of course not peculiar to Kentish (I. 1. 30).

The text is as follows:—

✠ Ic Luba, ēaðmōd Godes ðīwen, ðās forecwedenan gōd, and ðās elmessan, gesette and gefestnie, ob mīnem erfelande et Mundlinghām, ðēm hiium tō Crīstes cirican; and ic bidde, and an Godes libgendes naman bebīade, ðǣm men ðe ðis land and ðis erbe hebbe et Mundlingham, ðet hē ðās gōd forðlēste ōð wiaralde ende. Se man, se ðis healdan wille, and lēstan ðet ic beboden hebbe an ðisem gewrite, sē him seald and gehealden sīa hiabenlice blēdsung; se his ferwerne, oððe hit āgēle, sē him seald and gehealden helle wīte, būte hē tō fulre bōte gecerran wille, Gode and mannum. *Uene ualete.*

✠ Lufe þincggewrit.

### 2. The Kentish Hymn.

The Hymn is No. 8 of Grein's *Bibliothek* (II. 290–291). The text is conformed to that of Kluge in his *Lesebuch*, pp. 111–112.

To be noted are the **io, ia** for **eo** (**hiofen, hiafen**), **īo** for **ēo, e** for **æ** (**fegere, Feder, heleða, -fest**), **ǣ** for **ē**, *i.e.* **ōē** (**blǣtsiað, hrǣmig**) and for **īe** (**geflǣmdest**), and especially the **e** for **y** (**senna, gefelled**), and **ē** for **ȳ** (**ālēs, gerēna**). Standard West Saxon vowels are also found, and perhaps indicate a West Saxon scribe.

With respect to consonants, the omission of the middle one of three is noted by Zupitza as characteristic (**ænlum**). The loss of final **d** (**walden**) is found elsewhere in Kentish (Zupitza, p. 11); but see also I. 1. 14. **Nc** (**ngc, ncg**) for **ng** (**cyninc, cyningc**; cf. **þincg-**, p. 257, l. 12) is another mark (Zupitza, p. 13).

The Hymn is as follows:—

Wuton wuldrian weorada Dryhten,
hālgan hlīoðorcwidum hiofenrīces Weard,
lufian līofwendum līfęs Āgend,
and him simle sīo sigefęst wuldor
uppe mid ænlum and on eorðan sibb [5]
gumena gehwilcum goodes willan!
Wē ðē heriað hālgum stefnum,
and þē blǣtsiað bilewitne Fęder,
and ðē þanciað, þīoda Wālden,
ðīnes weorðlīcan wuldordrēames [10]
and ðāre miclan mægena gerēna,
ðe ðū God Dryhten gāstes mæhtum
hafest on gewealdum hiofen and eorðan,
ān ēce Fęder, ælmehtig God!
Đū eart cyninga Cyningc cwicera gehwilces; [15]
ðū eart sigefest Sunu and sōð Hęlend
ofer ealle gescęft angla and manna!
Đū Dryhten God on drēamum wunast
on ðāre upplīcan æðelan ceastre,
Frēa folca gehwæs, swā ðū æt fruman wǣre [20]

efenēadig Bearn āgenum Fæder!
Đū eart heofenlic līoht and ðæt hālige lamb,
ðe ðū[1] mānscilde middangeardes
for þīnre ārfęstnesse ealle tōwurpe,
fīond geflǣmdest, folle generedes, [25]
blōde gebōhtest bearn Israēla
ðā ðū āhōfe ðurh ðæt hālige trīow
ðīnre ðrōwunga ðrīostre senna,
þæt ðū on hǣahsetle heafena rīces
sitest sigehrǣmig on ðā swīðran hand [30]
ðīnum God-Fæder gāsta gemyndig.
Mildsa nū meahtig manna cynne,
and of leahtrum ālēs ðīne ðā līofan gescęft,
and ūs hāle gedō, heleða Sceppend,
niða Nergend, for ðīnes naman āre! [35]
Đū eart sōðlīce simle hālig,
and ðū eart āna ǣce Dryhten,
and ðū āna bist eallra Dēma
cwucra ge dēadra, Crīst Nergend,
for-ðan ðū on ðrymme rīcsast and on ðrīnesse [40]
and on ānnesse, ealles Wāldend,
hiofena hēahcyninc, Hāliges Gāstes
fegere gefelled in Fæder wuldre!

[1] MS. ðy.

# APPENDIX V.

## I-UMLAUT ILLUSTRATED FROM GOTHIC.

The earliest Germanic language represented by existing specimens is the Gothic. Much the most considerable part of these specimens consists of fragments of a translation of the Bible, or rather of the Bible with the exception of the Books of Kings, made by Wulfila (less correctly, Ulphilas), a Goth of the fourth century. While it would be a serious error to regard Gothic as the parent of the other Germanic tongues, it is undoubtedly true that in many respects it most nearly represents what we may conceive to have been the character of the Primitive Germanic language. In particular, the original vowels of stem-endings and inflectional terminations are often extant in Gothic, while by the time of Old English they are either lost, or exist in a modified form.

From what has been said, it is manifest that a comparison of Gothic forms with those of Old English is often very instructive. The phenomenon known as **i**-umlaut, for example, becomes much more intelligible through such a comparison, as a few illustrations will render evident.

In the revised version of 2 Cor. 10. 12, the marginal reading is, "For we are not bold to judge ourselves among . . . certain of them that commend themselves." The Gothic has, "Unte ni gadaursum *dōmjan* unsis silbans," etc. Here the English word *judge* is repre-

sented by the Gothic *dōmjan* (pronounced *dōmyan*), to which corresponds the OE. **dēman**. Again, for OE. **sēc(e)an** (114), **nęrian** (116), the Gothic has *sōkjan*, *nasjan* (*s* changing to **r**), as in Lk. 19. 10: "Qam auk sunus mans *sōkjan* jah *nasjan* þans fralusanans."

According to **103**, the ind. pres. 3 sing. of **forbēodan** is **forbīet** or **forbīett**. The corresponding Gothic form occurs in Lk. 8. 25: "Hwas siai sa, ei jah windam *faurbiudiþ* jah watnam?" (Who then is this, that he commandeth even the winds and the water(s)?) The stem of the Gothic verb *faurbiudiþ* is *biud-*, which in OE. is represented by **bēod-**. Umlaut is caused by the *-i-* of the ending *-iþ*, which is sometimes retained in OE. as **-(e)ð**, but frequently disappears, according to **23** and **34**. Similarly Gothic *fraliusiþ* is represented in OE. by **forlīest**, as in Lk. 15. 8, where, for the "if she lose one piece" of the English, the Gothic has, "jabai *fraliusiþ* drakmin ainamma." Again, take the OE. **hātan**, of which the ind. pres. 3 sing. is **hǣt(t)**. Here the Gothic infinitive is *haitan*, and the ind. pres. 3 sing. *haitiþ*. Thus, in Lk. 15. 9, "*gahaitiþ* frijondjos" (calleth together her friends).

In Mk. 1. 16, where our version has *net*, the OE. has **nętt**, and the Gothic *nati:* "wairpandans *nati* in marein." The doubling of **t** is to be accounted for according to **36**, as the Gothic stem-ending was *-ja*. For OE. **cynn** the Gothic has *kuni*, as in Mk. 8. 12: "Hwa þata *kuni* taikn sōkeiþ?" (What would be the OE. representatives of *taikn* and *sōkeiþ?*) In Mk. 7. 35, where the OE. has "**tungan bęnd**," the Gothic has "*bandi* tuggons."

Many more illustrations might be given, but these will no doubt suffice to render the principle clear.

# APPENDIX VI.

## SPECIMENS OF OLD GERMANIC DIALECTS.

The chief Germanic dialects cognate with the Old English are Gothic, Old High German, Old Saxon, Old Norse, and Old Frisian (cf. Sievers' *Gram. of OE.* 1, and my *Phonological Investigation of OE.*). Of these, Gothic is the oldest, and Old Norse and Old Frisian, in their present forms, the latest; the others are fairly contemporary with Old English. By a comparison of these tongues, the basic, unitary Germanic language is reconstructed. Thus, to take a few of the words introduced below, we gain the Germanic stems **ain-**, *one;* **gast-**, *guest* or *stranger;* **sīuk-**, *sick;* **kweþan**, *say;* others will readily be discovered by a little attention. In general, the Gothic forms stand nearest to the Primitive Germanic, but some Gothic words have died out, or are replaced by others in the remaining tongues. The Germanic forms of many English words are given in the *New English Dictionary*, with those of the cognate dialects, and in some cases the remoter Indo-European form.

As far as possible, the texts below repose upon the same original, Matt. 25. 38–46. This affords an opportunity for comparison with Selection III, pp. 134–136, and with the dialectic texts on pp. 256–262. There being no corresponding prose text of Old Saxon, the

poetic paraphrase, from the *Heliand*, is thrown to the end. The Old Frisian stands by itself, its documents being chiefly legal.

As the Gothic text of this chapter covers only verses 38 to 46, the corresponding selections have been limited to these verses.

## Gothic.

[From the version by Wulfila (ca. 311–383); see the article on Wulfila by Sievers, in Paul's *Grundriss der Germanischen Philologie*, Vol. 2. **w** has been substituted for the **v** used by the Germans in their editions, and the quantity of the vowels has been marked more regularly than usual; **ai** is generally long, but is short in **aiþþau** (cf. ON. *eða*), **fairra, garaihtans**; **ei** is always long (like Eng. *ee*).]

"Hwanuh þan þuk sēhwum gast, jah galaþōdēdum?[1] aiþþau naqadana, jah wasidēdum? hwanuh þan þuk sēhwum sīukana aiþþau in karkarai,[2] jah atiddjēdum[3] du þus?" Jah andhafjands sa þīudans[4] qiþiþ du im, "Amen qiþa izvis, jah þanei tawidēduþ ainamma þizē minnistanē brōþrē meinaizē, mis tawidēduþ." Þanuh qiþiþ jah þaim af hleidumein fērai, "Gaggiþ fairra mis, jus fraqiþanans,[5] in fōn þata aiweino,[6] þata manwidō unhulþin[7] jah aggilum is. Unte grēdags[8] was, jan ni gēbuþ mis matjan[9]; afþaursiþs was, jan ni dragkidēduþ[10] mik; gasts, jan ni galaþōdēduþ mik; naqaþs, jan ni wasidēduþ mik; sīuks jah in karkarai, jan ni gaweisōdēduþ meina." Þanuh andhafjand jah þai qiþandans, "Frauja,[11] hwan þuk sēhwum grēdagana, aiþþau afþaursidana, aiþþau gast, aiþþau naqadana, aiþþau sīukana, aiþþau in karkarai, jan ni

[1] See Glossary, **gelaðian.**
[2] From Latin.
[3] As if OE. ***ætēodon*** (from ***ætgangan***).
[4] See Gl. **ðēoden.**
[5] Like OE. **forcweden.**
[6] From same Indo-European root as Gr. *αἰών*, Lat. *œvum.*
[7] Cf. OE. **unhold(a).**
[8] Cf. Eng. *greedy.*
[9] Verb; cf. Gl. **męte.**
[10] **gk** for **nk.**
[11] See Gl. **frēa.**

andbahtidēdeima[1] þus?" Þanuh andhafjiþ im qiþands, "Amen qiþa izwis, jah þanei ni tawidēduþ ainamma þizē leitilanē, mis ni tawidēduþ." Jah galeiþand[2] þai in balwein[3] aiweinon, iþ þai garaihtans[4] in libain aiweinon.

[1] Cf. OE. **ambiht**, German *Amt.* [2] See Gl. **līðan.** [3] Cf. OE. **bealu.** [4] Cf. German *gerecht.*

## Old High German.

[The longer extract is from Sievers' edition of Tatian. The Latin version of the Gospel harmony by the Assyrian Tatian (second century) was translated by a monk of Fulda, A.D. 830–835. The dialect is East Frankish. The translation is, in general, much more literal than that of the Rhine Frankish version, a specimen of which, from the beginning of the ninth century, is given in a note (from Hench's edition of the Monsee Fragments).

**uu** is of course used for **w**.]

"Uuanne gisāhun uuir thih gast uuesentan, inti gihalōtunmēs[1] thih? oda nacotan, inti bithactumēs[2]? oda uuanne gisāhumēs thih unmahtigan oda in carkere, inti quāmunmēs zi thir?" Inti antlingenti ther cunig[3] quidit in, "Uuār quidih īu, sō lango sō ir tātut einemo fon thesēn mīnēn bruoderon minnistōn, thanne tātut ir iz mir." Thanne quidit her thēn thīe zi sīneru uuinistrūn sint, "Eruuīzzet fon mir, ir foruuergiton, in ēuuīn fīur, thaz dār garo ist themo dīufale inti sīnēn ęngilon. Mih hungrita, inti ir ni gābut mir ezzan; mih thursta, inti ir ni gābut mir trincan; ih uuas gast, inti ir ni gihalōtut mih; nacot, inti ir ni bithactut mih; unmahtic inti in carkere, inti ir ni uuīsōtut mīn." Thanne antlingent sīe inti quedent, "Trohtin,[4]

[1] Cf. German *holen.* [2] German *bedecken.* [3] German *König.*

[4] The Monsee Matthew has here:

"Truhtin, huuanne kasāhun uuir dih hungragan, odo durstagan, odo gast, odo nahhatan, odo sīuhhan, sō in carcere, enti ni ambahtitum dir?" Danne antuurtit im quidit, "Uuār īu sagem, sō lange sō ir iz nī tātut einhuuelihhemo dero minnistōno, noh mir iz nī tātut."

uuanne gisāhun uuir thih hungrentan, oda thurstentan, oda gast, oda nacotan, oda unmahtigan, oda in carkere, inti ni ambahtitumēs thir?" Thanne antlingit her in quedenti, "Uuār quidih īu, sō lango sō ir ni tātut einemo fon thēn minnirōn, noh mir ni tātut." Inti farent thiē in ēuuīnaz uuīzzi, thiē rehton in ēuuīn līb.

## Old (?) Norse.

[The Norse extract is from the version of Odd the Wise, which appeared in 1540, and is here reproduced from the text in Vigfusson and Powell's *Icelandic Prose Reader*, w being substituted for v. The editors say of Odd's work (p. 438): "It is well worthy to stand by the side of that of Tyndal or Luther, and higher praise could hardly be given to it. Like our own Version, it was made just at the right time, when the spoken language was in the main still pure and classical, but yet rich and flexible enough to be easily adapted to the idioms and vocabulary of the Greek and Hebrew."]

"Hwenar sāu wǣr þig hungraðan, og söddum þig? eðr þyrstan, swo wǣr gæfum þēr drekka? eðr hwenar sāum wǣr þig gęstkominn, og hȳstum[1] þig? eða nakinn, og klæddum þig? eða hwenar sāu wǣr þig sjūkan, eða ī myrkwastofu,[2] og kōmum til þīn?" Og konungrinn[3] mun[4] swara, og sęgja til þeirra, "Sannliga sęgi eg yðr, hwat þēr gjörðut[4] einum af þessum mīnum minztum brǣðrum, þat gjörðu þēr mēr." Þā mun hann og sęgja til þeirra sem til winstri handar eru, "Farit burt frā mēr, þēr bölwaðir,[5] ī eilīfan eld, þann sem fyri būinn er fjandanum og hans ārum. Þwīat hungraðr war eg, og þēr gāfut mēr eigi at[6] eta; þyrstr war eg, og þēr gāfut mēr eigi at drekka; gęstr war

[1] The verb **hȳsa**, from **hūs**, *house*.

[2] '*Mirkcloset*' (**stofa** = German *Stube*, Eng. *stove*).

[3] **-inn** is the postpositive article.

[4] Still used dialectally in England for *shall* or *will*; cf. the *Eng. Dial. Dict.*

[4] *Gar* is still used in Burns; cf. *New Eng. Dict.*

[5] See Gothic, p. 272, note 3.

[6] So in Eng. *ado*, from *at do*.

eg, og þēr hȳstuð mig eigi; nakinn war eg, og þēr klǣddut mig eigi; sjūkr og ī myrkwastofu war eg, og þēr witjuðut mīn eigi." Þā munu þeir swara og sęgja, "Herra, hwenar sāu wǣr þig hungraðan eða þyrstan, gęst eða nakinn, sjūkan eða ī myrkwastofu, og höfum þēr eigi þjōnat?" Þā mun hann swara þeim og sęgja, "Sannliga sęgi eg yðr, hwat þēr gjörðut eigi einum af þessum enum minztum, þat gjörðut þēr mēr eigi." Og munu þeir þā ganga ī eilīfar pīslir, en rēttlātir ī eilīfit līf.

## Old Frisian.

[Though the texts of Old Frisian are of a comparatively late period, its grammatical condition fairly entitles it to rank with Old High German and Old Saxon. The extract which follows is from a paraphrase of the Ten Commandments which serves as a preface to a certain code of laws (Richthofen, *Friesische Rechtsquellen*, pp. 131–132). Frisian is next of kin to Old English among the Germanic dialects (Sievers, *Gram.* 1; Siebs, *Zur Geschichte der Englisch-Friesischen Sprache*, Halle, 1889.]

Thīn God thet is thi ēna, ther skippere is himulrīkes and irthrīkes, tham skaltu thīania. Thu ne skalt thīnes Godis nǫma nāwet[1] īdle untfā, thermithi send ti urbēden[2] alle mēnētha.[3] Thu skalt firia[4] thene hēlega Sunnandi, hwante God hini ręste thā hi eskipin[5] hede himulrīke and irthrīke; thērumbe[6] skaltu ierne[7] firia thene hēlega Sunnandi. Thu skalt ēria[8] thīnne feder and thīnne mōder, thet tu theste[9] langor libbe. Thu ne skalt nenne mǫnslaga dūa.

[1] OE. **nāwiht**; see Gl. **nāht.**
[2] Eng. *forbid.*
[3] German *Meineid.*
[4] German *feiern.*
[5] With the prefix *e-* compare Eng. *y-* in *yclept.*
[6] German *darum.*
[7] OE. *georne.*
[8] German *ehren.*
[9] German *desto*, OE. **ðæs-ðe.**

## Old Saxon.

[Next to Old Frisian, Old Saxon is most nearly related to Old English. It is interesting, too, because a considerable part of an OE. poem, the *Genesis*, has been adapted from an Old Saxon original (see Cook and Tinker, *Select Translations from Old English Poetry*, pp. 104–105, 184–185). The most important text is the *Heliand*, written between 822 and 840, a versified harmony of the Gospels. Our extract consists of vv. 4405–4451 of the Munich MS.]

Huan gisah thi man ēnig
bethuungen an sulīcun tharabun? Huat, thu habes allarō thīodō giuuald,
iac sō samo therō mēdmō therō the īo mannō barn
geuunnun an thesaro uueroldi." Than sprikid im eft Ualdand God:
"Sō huat sō gi dādun," quidit he, "an īuues Drohtines namon,
gōdes fargāƀun an Godes ēra
thēm mannum the hēr minnistōn sindun therō nu undar thesaru męnegi stand[a]d,
ęndi þurh ōdmōdi arme uuārun
uueros, huand sie mīnan uuilleon fręmidun, — sō huat sō gi im īuuuaro uuelono fargābun,
gidādun thurh dīurida mīna, that antfeng īuuua Drohtin selbo,
thīu helpe quam te Hebencuninge. Bethīu uuili īu the hēlago Drohtin
lōnōn īuuu[an] gilōbon; gibid īuu līf ēuuig."
Uuęndid ina than Ualdand an thea uuinistron hand,
the Drohtin te thēm farduanun mannun, sagad im that sie sculin thea dād antgelden,
thea man iro mēngiuuerk: "Nu gi fan mi sculun," quidit he,
"farun sō farflocane an that fīur ēuuig
that thār gigareuuid uuard Godes andsacun,
fīundō folke be firinuuerkun,
huand gi mi ni hulpun than mi hunger ęndi þurst

uuēgde te uundrun, eftha ik geuuādies lōs
geng iāmermōd— uuas mi grōtun tharf;
than ni habde ik thār ēnige helpe than ik geheftid uuas,
an lithokospun bilokan, eftha mi legar bifeng,
suāra suhti; than ni uueldun gi mīn sīokes thār
uuīsōn mid uuihti. Ni uuas īu uuerd ēouuiht
that gi mīn gehugdin; bethīu gi an hęllie sculun
tholon an thīustre." Than sprikid imu ęft thīu thīod angegin:
"Uuola, Uualdand God," quedad sie, "huī uuilt thu sō uuit thit uuerod sprekan,
mahlien uuid these męnegi? Huan uuas thi īo mannō tharf,
gumonō gōdes? Huat, sie it al be thīnun gēbun ē[g]un,
uuelon an the[sa]ro uueroldi." Than sprikid ęft Uualdand God:
"Than gi thea armostun," quidid he, "ęldibarno,
mannō thea minnistōn an īuuuomu mōdsebon,
helidos farhugdun, lētun sea īu an īuuuomu hugi lēthe,
bedēldun sie īuuuaro dīurda, than dādun gi īuuomu Drohtine sō sama,
giuuęrnidun imu īuuuaro uuelonō; bethīu ni uuili īu Uualdand God
antfāhen Fader īuuua, ac gi an that fīur sculun
an thene dīopun dōd dīublun thīonon,
uurēdun uuidersakun, huand gi sō uuarhtun biuoran."
Than aftar thēm uuordun skēdit that uuerod an tuē,
thea gōdun ęndi thea ubilon. Farad thea fargriponon man
an thea hētun hęl hrīuuigmōde,
thea faruuarhton uueros, uuīti antfāhat,
ubil ęndilōs. Lēdid ūp thanen
hēr Hebencuning thea hlūttaron thēoda
an that langsame līoht; thār is līf ēuuig,
gigareuuid Godes rīki gōdarō thīadō.

# VOCABULARY

# VOCABULARY.

[The vowel æ follows **ad**, and ð follows **t**. The main or typical forms of words are those of Early West Saxon, the dialectic or late forms of the poetry and of Appendix IV being referred to that as the standard. Actual forms, when different from the type, are enclosed in parenthesis. Figures in parenthesis refer to the sections (and subdivisions) of the Grammar. Semicolons are employed to separate different *groups* of meanings; definitions separated by commas are more nearly synonymous. The sign < indicates derivation from. Modern English words cited in brackets, and not preceded by *cf.*, are direct derivatives; cognates thus cited are directly derived from the common ancestral form; where the relationship is more remote, or only a part of the word corresponds, *cf.* precedes. Old English words preceded by *cf.* or *see* are parallel or related forms. Direct derivatives included among the definitions are not repeated in brackets. The asterisk before a word indicates a theoretical form; for the manner in which such are framed see my *Phonological Investigation of Old English* (Ginn & Co.). The ending **-līc(e)** is assigned to adjectives and adverbs employed in the poetry; **-lic(e)** to those in prose.]

## A.

**ā**, *always;* repeated for emphasis, **ā ā ā**, *for ever and ever.* [Cf. Mod. Eng. *ay*, from an allied root; in ME. our word appears as *o, oo,* — so in Chaucer, *Tr. and Cress.* 2. 1034: 'for ay and *oo.*']

**ā-** (**142**).

**ā-belgan** (III. **104**), *anger, incense.*

**ā-bēodan** (II. **103**), *announce, communicate.*

**ā-beran** (IV. **105**), *carry, convey; sustain.*

**ā-blāwan** (R. **109**), *blow.*

**ā-bregdan** (III. **104, 28**), *liberate, disengage.* [Cf. Spenser's *abrade, abrayd, abraid,* e.g. *F. Q.* 3. 11. 8.]

**ā-būtan**, *about, around.*

**ac** (ah) (**4**), *but.*

**ā-cęnnan** (**113**), *produce, beget, bring forth.*

**ācol-mōd** (**58, 146**), *frightened, terrified.*

**adesa** (**53**), *adze, hatchet.*

**ādl** (**51.** *b*), *disease.*

**ā-drǣdan** (R. **110**), *fear.*

**ā-drēogan** (II. **103**), *endure.*

**ā-drīfan** (I. **102**), *expel.*

**ā-dūn(e)**, *down.* [< **of dūne**; see **dūn.**]

**æce**, see **ēce**.

**æcer** (**43**), *field.* [Cf. Mod. Eng. *broad acres, God's Acre*, the latter as in Longfellow's poem; Ger. *Acker.* Cognate with Lat. *ager*, Gr. ἀγρός.]

**ædre** (ēdre), *straightway, immediately, at once.*

**æfen** (**47.** 7), *evening* (but *evening* itself is from the derivative **æfnung**). [Ger. *Abend.*]

**æfen-glōmung** (**51.** 3), *evening twilight.* [Cf. Mod. Eng. *gloaming.*]

**æfestfull** (**146**), *envious.* [**æfest** is compounded of **æf-**, a parallel form of **of**, and **ēst**, q.v.]

**æfestian** (**118**), *envy, be envious at.*

**æfestig** (**146**), *envious.*

**æfre**, *ever, always;* **æfre ne**, *never.* [*afterward.*

**æfter**, *after; according to; about;*

**æfter-ðon-ðe**, *after.*

**æg-** (**142**).

**æg-flota** (**53**), *sea-floater, ship.*

**æg-hwā** (**88**), *every one;* neut. *every thing.*

**æg-hwanan** (**75**), *from all sides, on all sides.*

**æg-hwilc** (-hwylc) (**89**), *every* (*one*), *any* (*one*).

**ægðer ge . . . ge** (**202**), *both . . . and.*

**æht** (**51.** *b*), *council.*

**æht** (**51.** 1), *possession;* plur. *goods.* [Cf. **āgan.**]

**æl** (**51.** *b*), *awl.* [Ger. *Ahle.*]

**ælc** (**89.** *a*), *each, every, all.* [Mod. Eng. *each.*]

**ælde**, see **ielde.**

**ælmesse** (el-) (**53.** 1), *alms.* [See *New Eng. Dict.* s.v. *alms.*]

**æl-mihtig** (-mihti) (**57.** 3), *almighty.* [Ger. *allmächtig.*]

**Æl-myrcan** (**53**), plur. *Ethiopians.*

**ǣmetta** (**53**), *leisure.* [Cf. **ǣmtig.**]

**ǣmtig** (**57.** 3; **146**), *empty, void.* [Cf. **ǣmetta.**]

**ǣne**, *once.*

**ǣnig** (**89.** *a*; **154.** *a*; **146**), *any* (*one*). [< **ān**; Ger. *einig.*]

**æppel-bǣre** (**59, 146**), *fruit-bearing.*

**ǣr** (**47**), *copper.* [See **ār**, *copper;* cf. the Ger. adj. *ehern.*]

**ǣr**, adv., *before, formerly, aforetime, ago;* frequently to be regarded as a mere sign of the pluperfect tense.

**ǣr**, prep., *before.* [Mod. Eng. *ere.*]

**ǣr-dæg** (**43.** 2), *dawn, break of day.*

**ǣrend-wreca** (**53**), *ambassador, envoy.* [Cf. Mod. Eng. *errand;* OE. **wrecan** has a sense = *relate.*]

**ǣrest**, *first, at first, in the first place.* (Mod. Eng. *erst;* Ger. *erst.*]

**ǣr-ge-dōn** (**62**), *previously done, former.* [**ǣr** + **dōn.**]

**ærn** (**47**), *edifice.*

**ǣrra** (**67, 60**), *former.*

**ǣr-ðām-ðe**, *before.*

**ǣr-wacol** (**57, 146**), *wakeful, sleepless.*

**æsc-plega** (**53, 147**), *ash-play, spear-play.*

**æsc-rōf** (**58, 147**), *spear-valiant, valiant with the spear.*

**æt** (**47**), *food.* [Cf. **etan.**]

**æt** (**4**), *at; from; to* (*New Eng. Dict.* s.v. *at*, I. 11, 12).

**æt-** (**142**).

**æt-berstan** (III. **104**), *escape.*

**æt-bregdan** (III. **104, 162, 28**), *withdraw, take away.*

**æt-ēowian** (118), *appear.* [Cf. **ætīewan.**]
**æt-foran**, *before.*
**æt-gædere**, *together;* strengthening **samod,** — **samod ætgædere** = Lat. *simul.*
**æt-īewan** (113), *reveal, display.* [Cf. **ætēowian.**]
**æt nīehstan**, see **nīehstan.**
**ætȳwan**, see **ætīewan.**
**æðel-boren** (62; 57. 3; 147), *high-born, patrician.*
**æðel-borennes** (51. 5; 147), *noble birth, rank, station.*
**æðele** (59), *noble, gentle, illustrious.* [Cf. *Ethel, Athel-*, and Ger. *edel.*]
**æðeling** (43, 143), *noble one, hero, man.*
**æðða**, see **oððe.**
**æx** (51. *b*), *ax.* [Cf. Gr. ἀξίνη, Lat. *ascia* (*?*), Ger. *Axt* (the *t* a late addition).]
**ā-fǣran** (113), *frighten, terrify.*
**ā-feallan** (R. 109), *fall.*
**ā-fēdan** (113), *nourish, support.*
**ā-fierran** (113), *remove, banish, put away.* [< **feorr,** by 16.]
**ā-fiersian** (118), *drive away, banish.*
**ā-flīeman** (113), *put to flight, expel.*
**ā-gǣlan** (-gēlan) (113), *neglect.*
**āgan** (127), *own, possess, have.* [Cf. Mod. Eng. *ought*, and see Schmidt's *Shakespeare Lexicon*, s.v. *owe*, 2.]
**ā-gān** (141), *depart.*
**ā-gēan**, *back.* [< **ongēan.** Distinguish the meaning of this word from that of **bæcling.**]
**āgen** (57. 3), *own.* [Past part. of **āgan**; Ger. *eigen.*]
**āgend** (43. 6), *owner, possessor.*
**ā-gēotan** (II. 103), *pour out, dissipate, destroy.*
**ā-giefan** (V. 106), *give, pay.*
**ā-ginnan** (III. 104), *begin.* [Cf. Ger. *-ginnen.*]
**āgnian** (118), *appropriate.* [Cf. **āgan**; Ger. *eignen.*]
**ā-grōwan** (R. 109), *grow up, grow over.*
**ah**, see **ac.**
**ā-hębban** (VI. 107), *raise* (i.e. *utter*); *exalt; endure, suffer, undergo.* [Ger. *erheben.*]
**ā-hierdan** (113), *harden (embolden ?).* [Ger. *erhärten.*]
**ā-hliehhan** (VI. 107), *rejoice.* [Cf. Mod. Eng. *laugh*, Ger. *lachen.*]
**āhōf**, see **āhębban.**
**ā-hrēosan** (II. 103), *fall.*
**āht** (ōht) (47; 89. *b*), *something.*
**ā-hwęttan** (113), *excite, whet; supply, fulfil.* [Cf. Mod. Eng. *whet*, Ger. *wetzen.*]
**ā-lǣtan** (R. 110), *give up.* [Ger. *erlassen*].
**aldor**, see **ealdor.**
**ā-lęcgean** (115, note), *deposit.*
**ā-līefan** (113), *permit, allow.* [< **lēaf**, *leave;* Ger. *erlauben.*]
**ā-līehtan** (113), *illuminate, give light to.* [< **lēoht**; Ger. *erleuchten.*]
**ā-līesan** (-lēsan) (113), *deliver.* [Ger. *erlösen.*]
**ā-līesend** (43. 6), *redeemer.*
**ān** (79), *one, a, a single, alone; admirable;* wk. **āna**, *alone;* **on ān**, *anon, at once;* **ānra gehwilc**, *every one.* [Ger. *ein.*]
**and** (ǫnd), *and.*
**and-** (142).
**and-giet** (-git) (47), *sense, meaning, understanding.* [Cf. **gietan.**]

**and-gietfullice** (**76**), *clearly, intelligibly.*
**and-lang** (ǫndlang) (**58**), *livelong, whole, all . . . long.* [Cf. Ger. *entlang* and the Chaucerian *endelong* (*Knight's Tale* 1820).]
**an(d)-līcnes** (**51.** 5), *image.* [Cf. Mod. Eng. *likeness*, Ger. *Gleichniss*, for *(ge)leichniss.*]
**and-lifan** (**51.** *b*), *sustenance.*
**and-swarian** (ǫndswarian, ǫndsweorian) (**118**), *answer.*
**and-swaru** (ǫndswaru) (**51.** *a*), *answer.*
**and-weard** (**58, 146**), *present.*
**and-weardan** (ǫnd-) (**113**), *answer.*
**and-wlita** (**53**), *countenance, face;* also in the sense of 'angry countenance,' 'anger,' Lat. *vultus.* [Cf. Ger. *Antlitz.*]
**and-wyrdan** (**113**), *answer.* [Cf. Ger. *antworten.*]
**ān-feald** (**58**), *plain, simple.* [Cf. Ger. *Einfalt, einfältig.*]
**angel** (**43.** 4), *hook.* [Mod. Eng. *angle*, Ger. *Angel.*]
**an-ginn** (ongin) (**47**), *beginning; vehemence, impetuosity, violence.*
**an-grīslic** (**58**), *fierce, raging.* [Cf. Mod. Eng. *grisly.*]
**an-līc** (on-) (**58**), *like, similar.*
**anlīcnes**, see **andlīcnes.**
**ān-nes** (**51.** 5), *oneness, unity.*
**ān-rædnes** (**51.** 5), *boldness, confidence, assurance.*
**an-sīen** (**51.** *b*), *countenance.*
**an-timber** (**47**), *material, substance.*
**an-weald** (**43**), *power, rule, jurisdiction.* [Ger. *Anwalt.*]
**ār** (**43**), *messenger.*
**ār** (**51.** *b*), *honor; dignity, station.* [Ger. *Ehre.*]
**ār** (**47**), *copper.* [See **ǣr**, *copper;* Mod. Eng. *ore.*]
**ā-rǣcean** (**114**), *reach.* [Ger. *erreichen.*]
**ā-ræfnian** (**118**), *endure, stand.*
**ā-rǣran** (**113**), *lift.* [Cf. Mod. Eng. *rear.*]
**ā-rēadian** (**118**), *redden, blush.* [Cf. Ger. *erröthen.*]
**ā-ręccean** (**114**; **164.** *b*), *relate, narrate, say.*
**ā-rēdian** (**118**), *find, choose.*
**ā-rētan** (**113**), *gladden.*
**ār-fæst** (**58, 146**), *gracious, loving; glorious;* often translates Lat. *pius.* [See **ār**, *honor.*]
**ār-fæstnes** (**51.** 5), *kindness; compassion.*
**ār-ge-bland** (-blǫnd) (**47**), *commotion of the sea, mingling of the waves.* The word = **ēar(h)-geblǫnd**, *El.* 239; *Met.* 8 [30]; *Brun.* 26; see **ēargrund**, *depth of ocean;* **ēar**, *ocean.*
**ā-rīsan** (I. **102**), *arise.*
**ārodlice**, *immediately, forthwith.*
**ār-wela** (**53**), *oar-riches*, i.e. *sea.*
**ār-wierðe** (**59, 146**), *venerable.* [Cf. Ger. *ehrwürdig.*]
**ār-wierðnes** (**51.** 5), *reverence.*
**ār-ȳð** (**51.** *b*), *oar-billow, wave.*
**ā-scēadan** (R. **110**), *divide.*
**āscian** (āxian) (**118**; **159.** *b*; **32**), *ask.* [Ger. *heischen*, properly *eischen.*]
**ā-sęcgean** (**123**), *say, relate.*
**ā-sęndan** (**113**), *send.*
**ā-sęttan** (**113**), *place, deposit.*
**assa** (**53**), *ass.*
**ā-stǣnan** (**113**), *adorn, set.* [< **stān**, by **16.**]
**ā-stęllan** (**114**), *establish.*
**ā-stīgan** (I. **102**), *ascend, go aboard; descend.* [Ger. *ersteigen.*]

**ā-stręccean** (114), *prostrate.* [Cf. Mod. Eng. *stretch.*]
**ā-styrian** (118), *touch.* [Cf. Mod. Eng. *stir.*]
**ā-swębban** (115. *a*), *put to sleep*, i.e. *slay.*
**ā-syndrian** (118), *separate, sever, divide.* [Cf. Mod. Eng. *sunder.*]
**ā-tēon** (II. 103), *draw; inhale.*
**ā-tēorian** (118), *fail, give out.*
**ā-ðęnnan** (115. *a*), *apply, direct.* [Cf. Ger. *dehnen.*]
**ā-ðindan** (III. 104, 62, 60), *swell.*
**āðum** (43), *son-in-law.* [Ger. *Eidam.*]
**āðundnan**, see **āðindan.**
**ā-węccean** (114), *awaken, arouse.* [Ger. *erwecken.*]
**ā-węcgean** (115. *a*), *move.*
**ā-węndan** (113), *change, shift, transform.*
**ā-węndednes** (51. 5), *translation, version.*
**ā-wiergan** (113), *curse;* past part., *accursed.*
**ā-wiht** (89. *b*), *aught, a bit;* almost as an adv., *at all.* [Mod. Eng. *aught.*]
**ā-wrēon** (I. 102), *clothe.*
**ā-wrītan** (I. 102), *write.* [Cf. Ger. *reissen, ritzen.*]
**ā-wyrcean** (114), *perform, do.* [Ger. *erwirken.*]
**āxian** (32), see **āscian.** [Mod. Eng. dial. *axe.*]

## B.

**bæc**, *back.*
**bæcling**, *back;* **on bæcling**, *back.*
**bæð** (47. 4), *bath.* [Ger. *Bad.*]
**bæð-stęde** (44, 147), *gymnasium.*
**bæð-weg** (43, 215), *bath-way, bath-road.*
**baldor**, see **bealdor.**
**bān** (47, 24), *bone.* [Ger. *Bein, (Elfen)bein.*]
**bana** (53), *slayer, murderer.* [Mod. Eng. *bane.*]
**bāsnian** (118), *wait, bide one's time.*
**bāt** (43), *boat.*
**baðian** (118), *bathe.* [Ger. *baden.*]
**be**, *near; concerning; according to; on.* [See *New Eng. Dict.* s.v. *by.*]
**be-** (142).
**bēacen** (47, 24), *portent? standard?* [Mod. Eng. *beacon.*]
**beadu** (51. *a*), *battle, war.*
**beadu-rōf** (58), *valiant in war.*
**beadu-wang** (43), *battle-plain, field of battle.*
**bēag** (43), *torque, armilla, bracelet, collar, crown.* [Cf. **būgan**, 103.]
**beald** (24), *bold.* [Ger. *bald.*]
**bealdor** (baldor) (43), *ruler, king.* [See **beald.**]
**bearn** (47, 38), *son, child.* [Scotch *bairn;* cf. **beran.**]
**bēatan** (R. 109), *beat, smite, strike.*
**be-bēodan** (II. 103), *command, bid; commend.*
**be-būgan** (II. 103), *encircle, encompass, surround; extend.*
**be-byrgan** (113), *bury, inter.*
**be-clȳsan** (113), *enclose, shut up.* [< Lat. *clūsus*, by 16.]
**bēc-ræding** (51. 3), *reading.*
**be-cuman** (IV. 105), *come, befall, arrive, attain, fall.* [Ger. *bekommen.*]
**be-cweðan** (V. 106), *say, declare.* [Mod. Eng. *bequeathe.*]

**be-dǣlan** (113, 177), *deprive.*
**będd** (47), *bed, couch.* [Ger. *Bett.*]
**beēodon**, see **begān.**
**be-fæstan** (113), *commit, give over.*
**be-fōn** (R. 110), *embrace, grasp, comprehend.*
**be-foran**, *before.*
**be-gān** (141), *practise, pursue, ply.*
**be-gang** (43), *circuit, compass.*
**be-gangan** (R. 109), *practise; ply.*
**bēgen** (79), *both.*
**be-gietan** (-gitan) (V. 106), *acquire, obtain, reach.*
**be-gyrdan** (113), *begird.* [Ger. *-gürten.*]
**be-hātan** (R. 110; 164. *a*), *promise.*
**be-healdan** (R. 109), *behold.*
**be-hēfe** (59, 165), *useful.*
**bēhð** (51. *b*), *sign, proof.*
**be-hygdig** (57), *shrewd, sagacious.*
**bęlg** (43), *bellows.*
**be-limpan** (III. 104), *belong, pertain.*
**be-lūcan** (II. 103), *belock* [Shak.], *enclose.*
**be-mīðan** (I. 102), *conceal, disguise.* [Ger. *-meiden.*]
**bēn** (51. *b*), *prayer, petition, entreaty, supplication.* [See **bēna**, and cf. Mod. Eng. *boon.*]
**bēna** (53), *petitioner, suppliant.* [See **bēn.**]
**be-næman** (113, 177), *deprive, strip.*
**be-neoðan**, *beneath.*
**bēod** (43), *table.*
**bēodan** (II. 103), *offer; command.* [Ger. *bieten.*]
**bēon**, see **wesan.**
**beorg** (21, 24), *hill, mountain.* [Ger. *berg*, and Mod. Eng. *(ice)-berg.*]
**beorht** (58, 64, 21), *bright, fair, brilliant, radiant, glorious.* [Mod. Eng. *bright* is due to metathesis (31).]
**beorhte**, *brightly.*
**beorhtnes** (51. 5), *brightness.*
**beorn** (43, 21), *warrior, hero, man.*
**bēor-scipe** (44. 1; 143), *banquet, feast.*
**bera** (53), *bear.*
**beran** (IV. 105; 184. *a*), *bear, carry;* **berende**, *productive* (155. *b*).
**be-rēafian** (118), *despoil.* [Mod. Eng. *bereave*, Ger. *berauben.*]
**be-scierian** (bi-scerian) (116), *withhold.*
**be-sēon** (V. 106, 101), *look* (often almost *turn*). [Ger. *besehen.*]
**be-sittan** (V. 106), *sit in, hold.* [Ger. *besitzen.*]
**be-sorgian** (118, 142), *grieve for, be concerned about;* translates Lat. *dolere.* [Ger. *besorgen.*]
**be-stīeman** (-stēman) (113), *wet, moisten.*
**be-swīcan** (I. 102), *deceive.*
**be-swīcian** (118), *escape.*
**bęt**, adj., *better.*
**bęt**, adv. (77), *better.*
**be-tǣcean** (114), *assign.*
**bętst** (66), *best.*
**be-tweoh**, *among.*
**be-twēon**, *toward.*
**be-twēonan**, *among;* **betwēonan him**, *towards one another.*
**be-tweox**, *among, between.*
**be-tyrnan** (113), *revolve.*
**be-ðęccean** (114), *cover, protect.* [Ger. *bedecken.*]
**be-wǣfan** (113), *clothe.* [See **wǣfels.**]

**be-węndan** (**113**; **184**. *b*), *turn.* [Ger. *bewenden.*]
**be-windan** (III. **104**), *encompass.* [Ger. *bewinden.*]
**be-wrecan** (V. **106**), *surround* (lit. *beat around*).
**bibliotheca** (Lat.), *library.*
**bīdan** (I. **102**; **156**. *l*), *await, wait.*
**biddan** (V. **106**; **156**. *b*; **159**. *b*), *ask, request, implore, beseech; bid; seek.* [Ger. *bitten.*]
**bīegan** (**113**), *bow, bend.* [Causative of **būgan** (**103**), from **bēag**, pret. sing., by **16**; cf. Ger. *beugen.*]
**bīema** (**53**), *trumpet, clarion.* [Cf. Chaucer, *Nun's Priest's Tale* 578.]
**big-leofa** (**53**, **20**), *food, sustenance.* [Cf. **libban.**]
**bile-wit** (**57**), *merciful.* [See *New Eng. Dict.* s.v. *bilewhit.*]
**bill** (**47**), *broadsword, falchion.* [Ger. *bille.*]
**bindan** (III. **104**), *bind.* [Ger. *binden.*]
**binnan**, *within.* [Ger. *binnen.*]
**bīoð**, see **wesan.**
**bī-rihte** (-ryhte), *beside.*
**bisceop** (**43**), *bishop.* [< Lat. *episcopus*, Gr. ἐπίσκοπος, from ἐπί, *upon*, and σκέπτομαι, *look*; cf. Ger. *Bischof.* A Continental borrowing, ca. A.D. 400.]
**biscerian**, see **bescierian.**
**bisgian** (**118**), *occupy, engross.* [See **bisig.**]
**bisgu** (**51**. *a*), *concern, trouble.* [See **bisig.**]
**bisig** (**57**), *busy.*
**bītan** (I. **102**), *bite.* [Ger. *beissen.*]
**biter** (**57**), *bitter, baneful, grievous.* [Ger. *bitter*; cf. **bītan** ]
**bið**, see **wesan.**
**blæc** (**57**. 2), *black.*
**blǣcan** (**113**), *bleach, fade.* [Mod. Eng. *bleach.*]
**blǣd** (**43**), *breath; abundance, blessedness.* [Cf. **blāwan.**]
**blǣst** (**43**), *flame.* [Cf. **blāwan.**]
**blāwan** (R. **109**), *blow.* [Cf. Ger. *blähen*, Lat. *flare.*]
**blētsian** (**118**, **33**), *bless.* [< **blōd.**]
**blētsung** (**51**. 3; **144**; **33**), *blessing, benediction.*
**blēwð**, see **blōwan.**
**blīcan** (I. **102**), *shine.* [Ger. *-bleichen.*]
**blinnan** (III. **104**), *cease.* [See Spenser, *F. Q.* 3. 5. 22.]
**bliss** (**51**. *b*; **34**), *joy.* [< **blīðe.**]
**blisse-sang** (**43**, **147**), *song of gladness.*
**blissian** (**118**, **34**), *rejoice.* [< **bliss.**]
**blīðe** (**59**, **24**), *blithe, merry, jovial, joyous, gladsome.*
**blīðe** (**70**), *joyously.*
**blōd** (**47**, **24**), *blood.* [Ger. *Blut.*]
**blōdig** (**57**. 3; **146**), *bloody.* [Ger. *blutig.*]
**blōstma** (**53**), *blossom.* [Cf. **blōwan**, and Lat. *flos.*]
**blōwan** (R. **109**, **24**), *blossom, bloom.* [Mod. Eng. *blow*; cf. Ger. *blühen*, Lat. *florere.*]
**bōc** (**52**, **24**), *book.* [Ger. *Buch.*]
**bōc-cræft** (**43**, **147**), *literature.*
**Bōc-læden** (**47**), *Latin.* [< OE. **bōc** + Lat. *Latinus.*]
**bōc-land** (**47**, **147**), *freehold estate.*
**bodian** (**118**), *proclaim, preach.* [Mod. Eng. *bode.*]
**bolca** (**53**), *gangway.*

**bold-wela** (**53**, **215**), *Eden*, *Paradise* (lit. *house-wealth*).
**bord** (**47**), *shield*.
**bord-stæð** (**47**. 4), *shore*, *strand*. [Cf. Ger. *Gestade*.]
**bōsm** (**43**, **24**), *bosom*, *surface* (cf. Shakespeare, *Tr. and Cress.* 1. 3. 112). [Ger. *Busen*.]
**bōt** (**51**. *b*), *repentance*, *amendment*.
**brād** (**58**, **24**), *broad*, *spacious*. [Ger. *breit*.]
**brādnes** (**51**. 5), *breadth*, *face*, *surface*.
**brædan** (**113**; **184**. *b*), *spread*, *dilate*, *expand*. [< **brād**, by **16**; Ger. *breiten*.]
**brand-stefn** (brǫnd-stæfn) (**43**), *lofty-prowed* (reading **brant-stefn**; cf. **hēahstefn naca**, *Andr.* 265, **brante cēole**, *Andr.* 273).
**brant** (**58**), *high*, *lofty*.
**breahtm** (brehtm) (**43**; **21**. *a*), *beat*, *pulsation*, *stroke* (of wings).
**brecan** (IV. **105**), *break*; *break away*, *burst away*, *hurry*, *speed*. [Ger. *brechen*.]
**bregdan** (III. **104**), *draw*. [Mod. Eng. *braid*.]
**breogo** (brego) (**45**, **20**), *leader*, *king*.
**brehtm**, see **breahtm**.
**breomo**, see **brim**.
**brēost** (**47**, **24**), *breast*.
**Breoton** (**54**, **20**), *Britain*; *Briton*.
**brim** (**47**, **20**), *billow*, *ocean*, *deep*.
**brim-hęngest** (**43**), *wave-steed*, *sea-horse*, i.e. *ship*. [Cf. Ger. *Hengst*, and the OE. proper name *Hęngist*, associated with *Horsa*.]
**brim-stæð** (**47**. 4; **147**), *shore of the sea*. [Cf. Ger. *Gestade*.]
**brim-strēam** (**43**, **147**), *ocean-stream*, *current*.
**bringan** (**114**), *bring*, *carry*, *take*. [Ger. *bringen*.]
**brǫndstæfn**, see **brandstefn**.
**brōðor** (**46**. 1; **24**), *brother*. [Ger. *Bruder*.]
**brūcan** (II. **103**; **156**. *e*; **17**), *hold*, *possess*, *enjoy*, *make use of*. [Mod. Eng. *brook*, Ger. *brauchen*.]
**brūn** (**58**, **24**), *burnished*, *glistening*; *dusky*. [Ger. *braun*; see *New Eng. Dict.* s.v. *brown*.]
**brycg** (**51**. *b*; **24**), *bridge*. [Ger. *Brücke*.]
**brytta** (**53**), *dispenser*.
**Bryttas** (**43**), plur., *Britons*.
**bufan**, *above*. [< **be** + **ufan**.]
**būr** (**43**, **24**), *dining-room*; *private apartment*, *boudoir*, *bower*. [Mod. Eng. *bower*.]
**burg** (**52**. 1; **24**), *city*. [Mod. Eng. *borough*, Ger. *Burg*.]
**burg-geat** (**47**, **147**), *city-gate*.
**burg-lēode** (**44**. 4; **147**), *city-people*, *citizens*.
**burh-sittende** (**61**, **28**), *city-dwellers*, *citizens*.
**burh-weall** (**43**, **28**), *city-wall*.
**būtan**, prep. (**24**), *without*, *outside of*, *except*, *besides*. [< **be** + **ūtan**; cf. the Scotch 'but and ben.']
**būtan**, conj., *except*.
**bycgean** (**114**), *buy*.
**byrd** (**51**. *b*), *birth*, *extraction*.
**byrig**, see **burg**.
**byrne** (**53**), *hauberk*, *corslet*, *mail-coat*.
**byrn-hama** (-hǫma) (**53**), *hauberk*, *corslet*.
**bȳsen** (**51**. *b*), *example*, *illustration*; *suggestion*.

## C.

**cald**, see **ceald**.

**camp** (**43**), *fight, battle.* [Ger. *Kampf.*]

**campian** (**118**), *strive, struggle, fight.* [< **camp**.]

**camp-wīg** (cǫmp-) (**47**), *combat.*

**carcern** (**47**), *prison.* [< Lat. *carcer*, under influence of **ærn**.]

**cāsere** (**44**. 1), *emperor, Cæsar.* [Lat. *Cæsar.*]

**ceald** (cald) (**58**; **21**. *a*), *cold.* [Ger. *kalt.*]

**ceaster** (**51**. 4), *city.* [Lat. *castra*; Mod. Eng. *Chester, -caster, -cester.*]

**ceaster-(ge)-waran** (**53**), plur., *citizens.*

**cēder-bēam** (**43**), *cedar-tree, cedar.* [< Lat. *cedrus* + **bēam**.]

**cęmpa** (**53**), *soldier.* [< **camp**.]

**cēne** (**59**), *valiant.* [Ger. *kühn*, Mod. Eng. *keen.*]

**cēol** (**43**), *ship.*

**ceorl** (**43, 24**), *layman.* [Mod. Eng. *churl*, Ger. *Kerl*; cf. Chaucer, *Knight's Tale* 1601.]

**cēosan** (II. **103**; **184**. *a*; **37**), *choose, seek.* [Archaic Ger. *kiesen*; cf. Chaucer, *Knight's Tale* 737.]

**cīegan** (**113**), *call.*

**ciele** (**44, 18**), *cold.* [Mod. Eng. *chill*; cf. Ger. *Kühle.*]

**cīepan** (**113**), *sell.* [Cf. Ger. *-kaufen.*]

**cierran** (cirran) (**113**; **184**. *a*; **18**), *turn; turn back.*

**cild** (**50, 38, 24**), *child.*

**cild-hād** (**43, 143**), *childhood.*

**cining**, see **cyning**.

**cirice** (**53**. 1), *church.* [Ger. *Kirche*; see *Phil. Soc. Dict.* s.v. *church.*]

**cirran**, see **cierran**.

**cist** (**51**. *b*), *chest.* [< Lat. *cista*, OE. orig. **cest**, then **ciest** (**18**), **cist**.]

**clǣne** (**57, 24**), *pure.* [Mod. Eng. *clean*, Ger. *klein.* The Ger. word has come to its present meaning through the series 'pure,' 'clean,' 'neat,' 'delicate,' 'fine,' 'tiny,' 'small.']

**clǣnnes** (**51**. 5), *chastity.*

**cleofu** (**20**), see **clif**.

**cleopian** (clypian) (**118, 20**), *call.* [Cf. our poetical *clepe, yclept*, and *Haml.* 1. 4. 19.]

**clif** (**47, 20**), *cliff.* [Cf. Ger. *Klippe.*]

**clifer-fēte** (**59**), *claw-footed.*

**clypian**, see **cleopian**.

**cnapa** (**53**), *boy, lad.* [Cf. Ger. *Knabe.*]

**cnēo** (**47**. 3; **27**), *knee.* [Ger. *Knie*; cf. Lat. *genu.*]

**cnēoris** (like **51**. 5), *tribe, nation.*

**cniht** (**43**), *young man, youth.* [Ger. *Knecht*, Mod. Eng. *knight.*]

**cnyssan** (**115**. *a*), *smite.*

**collen-ferhð** (-fyrhð) (**58**), *inspirited, elated.*

**cōm**, see **cuman**.

**cǫmpwīg**, see **campwīg**.

**costnung** (**51**. 3; **144**), *temptation.*

**cræft** (**43**), *power; skill, cleverness; art, trade, occupation.* [Mod. Eng. *craft*, Ger. *Kraft.*]

**crēopan** (II. **103**), *creep, crawl.*

**Crīst** (**43**), *Christ.* [< Lat. *Christus.*]

**cucu** (**27**; in this form irregular, according to the declensions of

this book; see also **cwic**), *living, live, alive.*

**culter** (**43** ?), *coulter.* [< Lat. *culter.*]

**cuma** (**53**), *stranger, visitant, guest.*

**cuman** (IV. **105**), *come.* [Cf. Ger. *kommen.*]

**cumbol** (**47**), *banner, standard.*

**cunnan** (**130**), *know, know how, can.* [Ger. *können.*]

**cunnian** (**118**; **156.** *d*), *make trial of.*

**cūð** (**58**), *known, manifest;* the combination of **cūð** and **oncnāwen**, *Andr.* 527, presents a difficulty — perhaps for **cūðe**, adv. [Cf. **130.**]

**cūðlīce** (**70**), *certainly; kindly.*

**cwæð** (pret.), see **cweðan.**

**cwealm** (**43**), *death.* [Mod. Eng. *qualm;* cf. **cwęllan.**]

**cweart-ern** (**47**), *prison.* [Perhaps modified from Lat. *carcer*, under the influence of **ærn.**]

**cwęllan** (**114**), *kill.*

**cwēn** (**51.** 1; **24**), *queen, princess.*

**cweðan** (V. **106, 37**), *say, speak.* [Cf. Mod. Eng. *quoth.*]

**cwic** (**57, 27**), *alive, living.* [See **cucu.** Cf. Mod. Eng. '*quick* and dead,' 'cut to the *quick.*']

**cwic-sūsl** (**51.** *b*), *hell-torment* (lit. *living torment*).

**cwide** (**44**), *remark.*

**cwuc**, see **cwic.**

**cymlīce** (**70**), *finely, beautifully.*

**cyne-helm** (**43**), *crown.*

**cynelic** (**57, 146**), *royal.*

**cyne-rīce** (**48, 145**), *kingdom.*

**cyne-rōf** (**58**), *royally brave.*

**cyne-setl** (**47**), *throne.*

**cyning** (cining) (**43, 143, 24**), *king.* [Ger. *König.*]

**cynn** (**47**), *kind; tribe, nation, people.*

**cyn-rēn** (**47**), *generation.*

**Cyrenisc** (**57**), *of Cyrene.*

**Cyrenense**, *Cyrene.*

**cyssan** (**113**), *kiss.* [Ger. *küssen.*]

**cȳðan** (**113, 30**), *announce, make known, show.* [< **cūð**, by **16**; Ger. *-künden.*]

**cȳððu** (**51.** *a*; **144**), *native land.*

## D.

**dǣd** (**51.** 1), *deed, act;* **mid dǣde**, *indeed, in fact.*

**dæg** (**43.** 2; **24**), *day.* [Ger. *Tag.*]

**dæg-candel** (**51.** *b*; **215**), *candle of day.*

**dæges** (**74**), *by day.*

**dæg-hwǣmlice** (**70**), *daily, day by day.*

**dæg-rēd** (**47**), *dawn.*

**dǣl** (**43**; **78.** 4; **24**), *part; amount, quantity, number.* [Ger. *Teil.*]

**dǣlan** (**113**; **164.** *a*), *distribute, dispense, bestow.* [Ger. *teilen*, Mod. Eng. *deal.*]

**dǣl-lēas** (**58**; **155.** *a*; **146**), *destitute, devoid.*

**dagung** (**51.** 3), *dawn.*

**dēad** (**58, 24**), *dead.* [Ger. *tot.*]

**dēað** (**43**), *death.* [Ger. *Tod.*]

**dēað-dæg** (dēoth-) (**43.** 2), *death-day.*

**dēma** (**53**), *judge.*

**dēman** (**113, 90, 17**), *doom, condemn.* [Cf. Chaucer, *Knight's Tale* 1023.]

**dēofol** (**43, 24**), *devil, demon.* [< Lat. *diabolos;* so Ger. *Teufel.*]

**dēop** (**58, 24**), *deep.* [Ger. *tief.*]

**dēope** (**70**), *deeply.* [Cf. Chaucer, *K. T.* 1782.

**dēoplīc** (57), *profound.*
**dēor** (47), *beast, animal.* [Ger. *Tier.*]
**dēor-cynn** (47), *kind (race) of animals.*
**dēor-wierðe** (59, 146), *precious.*
**dēor-wurð** (58, 146), *precious.*
**dęrian** (116), *harm, injure.* [Cf. Chaucer, *K. T.* 964.]
**dīc** (43), *dike.*
**dīcian** (118, 90), *ditch, dike.*
**dīegelnes** (51. 5), *retreat.*
**dīere** (dȳre) (59), *precious, valuable.* [Ger. *teuer.*]
**dihtan** (47), *plan, design.* [< Lat. *dictum.*]
**dohtor** (52. 2), *daughter.* [Ger. *Tochter.*]
**dōm** (43, 17), *judgment; reputation, glory; choice, decision.*
**dōmlīce** (70), *gloriously.*
**dōm-weorðung** (51. 3), *honor.*
**dōn** (140), *do; make; put.* [Ger. *thun.*]
**drēam** (43), *joy, bliss.* [Ger. *Traum*, Mod. Eng. *dream*, but in different sense.]
**dręnc** (43), *drink.*
**drēorig** (57), *headlong? melancholy?*
**drihten**, see **dryhten.**
**drihtguma**, see **dryhtguma.**
**drinc** (dryne) (43), *drink.*
**drincan** (III. 104), *drink.* [Ger. *trinken.*]
**drohtað** (43), *(mode, way of) life.*
**drȳgnes** (51. 5), *dryness, dry land.*
**dryhten** (43. 4. *c*; 154. *d*), *lord.*
**dryhtenlic** (57), *lordly, of the lord.*
**dryht-guma** (driht-) (53), *retainer, vassal.*
**drync**, see **drinc.**
**dugan** (128), *avail.* [Ger. *taugen.*]
**duguð** (dugoð) (51. *b*), *host, band; sustenance; benefit.* [Ger. *Tugend.*]
**dūn** (51. *b*), *mountain, hill.*
**dūst** (47), *dust.* [Ger. *Dunst.*]
**dynnan** (115. *a*), *clash.*
**dȳre**, see **dīere.**
**dyrstig** (57), *rash, headstrong.* [Cf. **durran**, 132.]
**dyrstignes** (51. 5), *presumption, temerity.*

## E.

**ēa** (52), *river.*
**ēac**, *also, likewise;* **ēac swilce**, *also;* **swilce ēac**, *also, moreover, as also, likewise;* **swā ēac**, *also.* [Ger. *auch.* Mod. Eng. *eke.*]
**ēad-giefa** (-gifa) (53), *bliss-giver, happiness-giver.*
**ēadig** (57. 3; 146), *happy, blessed.*
**ēadiglīce** (70), *blissfully, in bliss.*
**ēadignes** (51. 5), *bliss.*
**ēage** (53. 2), *eye.* [Ger. *Auge.*]
**ēagor-strēam** (43), *ocean-stream.*
**ēag-ðȳrel** (47), *window.* [**ðȳr-** < **ðurh**, by 16 and 29.]
**eahta** (78; 154. *c*; 21), *eight.* [Ger. *acht.*]
**ēalā**, *O.*
**ēa-lād** (51. *b*), *ocean-way.*
**eald** (65, 58, 21, 19, 17), *old.*
**eald-fēond** (46. 3), *ancient foe.*
**eald-genīðla** (53), *ancient, inveterate enemy.*
**eald-hęttend** (43. 6), *ancient enemy.*
**ealdor** (aldor) (43. 4), *chief; king.*
**ealdor** (47), *life.*
**ealdor-dōm** (43), *primacy, supremacy, chief place.*
**ealdor-duguð** (51. *b*), *nobility, leaders.*

**ealdor-mann** (46), *leader, head, prince, noble.*
**ealdor-scipe** (44. 1; 143), *primacy, supremacy, chief place.*
**ēa-līðende** (61; or 43. 6 ?), *ocean-traversing.*
**eall** (58, 35, 24), *all, every;* **eall swā**, *just as, also;* **ealne weg**, *always;* **mid ealle** (175), *completely;* **ðurh ealle**, *entirely.*
**ealles** (71), *in all.*
**eal-swā**, *also, as.* [Ger. *also.*]
**eard** (43), *country.*
**eardian** (118), *dwell.*
**earfoðlīce** (70), *distressfully, hard.* [Cf. Ger. *Arbeit.*]
**earfoðnes** (51. 5), *hardship.*
**earfoð-rīme** (59), *difficult to number.*
**earg** (58), *cowardly.* [Ger. *arg.*]
**earm** (58, 21), *poor, wretched.* [Ger. *arm.*]
**earmlic** (57), *humble, lowly.* [Cf. Ger. *ärmlich.*]
**earmlice** (70), *miserably.*
**earn** (43), *eagle.*
**earnung** (51. 3), *merit, desert.*
**ēastan** (75), *from the east.*
**Ēast-ęngle** (44. 4), plur., *East Angles*, i.e. *East Anglia.*
**ēast-norðerne** (59), *northeasterly.*
**Ēastron** (53, irregular), *Easter.* [Ger. *Ostern.*]
**ēast-sæ** (43; 51. *b*), *sea on the east.*
**ēast-sūð-dæl** (43), *southeast quarter.*
**ēaðe** (77), *easily, unhesitatingly;* comp. **īeð**, irreg. **ēað**.
**ēað-mēdu** (51. *a*), *reverence; humility, kindness.*
**ēað-mōd** (58, 146), *humble, lowly.*
**ēað-mōdlice** (70), *humbly.*
**ēað-mōdnes** (51. 5), *humility, reverence.*
**Ēbrēas** (54), plur., *Hebrews.* [< Lat. *Hebræus.*]
**Ēbrēisc** (57, 146), *Hebrew.*
**ēce** (59), *everlasting, eternal.*
**ęcg** (51. *b*), *edge.*
**ed-** (142).
**ed-nīwian** (118), *renew.*
**ēdre**, see **ǣdre**.
**ed-wīt** (47), *abuse, insolence.* [Cf. **wīte**, and Mod. Eng. *twit.*]
**efen-ēadig** (57), *co-blessed, equally blessed.* [Among moderns, Bishop Ken seems most to have employed such compounds as these.]
**efne** (emne), *behold; just.*
**ęft**, *again, once more; afterward; back.*
**ęft-hweorfan** (III. 104), *return.*
**ęgesa** (53), *dread, fear, terror; peril.* [Related to ON. *agi*, from which Mod. Eng. *awe.*]
**ęgeslic** (57), *dreadful, terrible.* [See **ęgesa.**]
**ęglan** (113), *plague, harass, afflict.* [Mod. Eng. *ail.*]
**ęgle** (59), *grievous, hateful.* [See **ęglan.**]
**Egypta** (54), plur., *Egyptians.*
**ēhtan** (113), *pursue.*
**ęlcung** (51. 3), *delay, postponement.*
**ęle** (44), *oil.* [< Lat. *oleum.*]
**ęllen** (47), *courage.*
**ęllen-rōf** (58), *strenuous in courage, of undaunted courage.*
**ęlles** (71), *else.* [**ęl-** = *other.*]
**ęllor-fūs** (58, 30), *bound elsewhither.* [**ęl-** = *other.*]
**elmesse**, see **ælmesse**.
**elp** (43), *elephant.* [< Lat. *elephas.*]

**ęl-ðēodig** (57. 3), *foreign.* [From **ęl-** = *other*, and **ðēod**, q.v.]

**emne**, see **efne.**

**emniht** (52, but no *visible* umlaut), *equinox.* [< **efen-niht**; cf. **emne** for **efne.**]

**ęnde** (44), *end.* [Ger. *Ende.*]

**ęndian** (118, 90), *end.*

**ęngel** (43. 4; 23; 10), *angel.* [< Lat. *angelus*, Gr. ἄγγελος.]

**Ęngle** (44. 4), *the Angles, English.* [Of the invaders of Britain Bede says (*Hist. Eccl.* I. 15): "Advenerant autem de tribus Germaniæ populis fortioribus, id est, Saxonibus, Anglis, Jutis. . . . Porro de Anglis, hoc est, de illa patria quæ Angulus dicitur, et ab eo tempore usque hodie manere desertus inter provincias Jutarum et Saxonum perhibetur, Orientales Angli, Mediterranei Angli, Merci, tota Nordanhymbrorum progenies, id est, illarum gentium quæ ad Boream Humbri fluminis inhabitant cæterique Anglorum populi sunt orti." Cf. also the pun of Pope Gregory the Great (*Hist. Eccl.* II. 1): "Rursus ergo interrogavit, quod esset vocabulum gentis illius. Responsum est, quod Angli vocarentur. At ille, 'Bene,' inquit; 'nam et angelicam habent faciem, et tales angelorum in cælis decet esse coheredes.'"]

**Ęnglisc** (57), *English.* [Note that any term corresponding to 'Anglo-Saxon,' as the designation of a language, does not exist in Old English. See the *Phil. Soc. Dict.* s.vv. *Anglo-Saxon* and *English;* Bailey's Dictionary (1783) is the first authority given for the English term 'Anglo-Saxon' in its application to the tongue.]

**ēode**, see **gān.**

**eorl** (43), *hero, man.* [Not to be translated 'earl' in these texts.]

**eornoste** (70), *sharply, vehemently.* [Cf. Mod. Eng. *earnest*, Ger. *Ernst.*]

**eornostlice** (70), *then, accordingly, thus.*

**eorre**, see **ierre.**

**eorðe** (53. 1), *earth; ground; land.* [Ger. *Erde.*]

**eorðlic** (57, 146), *earthly.*

**eorð-tilð** (51. *b*; 147), *agriculture.* [Cf. Mod. Eng. *tilth.*]

**eorð-waran** (53), plur., *dwellers on earth.*

**eorð-weall** (43), *rampart of earth, earthwork.* [**weall** = Lat. *vallum;* one of the oldest Germanic words borrowed from Latin.]

**ēower** (81, 83), *your, of you.*

**erbe**(-), **erfe**(-), see **ierfe**(-).

**ēst** (51. 1; 165; 43; 30), *provision; consent, will.* [Cf. **unnan, æfestfull**, and Ger. *Gunst.*]

**ēste** (59, 165), *bountiful.* [Cf. **ēst.**]

**ēstlīce** (70), *willingly.* [Cf. **ēst.**]

**etan** (V. 106), *eat.* [Ger. *essen.*]

**ēðel** (43. 4. *a*), *country, native land, home.*

**ēðel-rīce** (48), *fatherland.*

**ēðel-weard** (43), *guardian of his country.*

## F.

**fæc** (47), *time, period, interval, space.* [Ger. *Fach.*]

**fæder** (43. 8; 24), *father.* [Ger. *Vater.*]

**fæge** (59), *fated, death-doomed.* [Scotch *fey*, Ger. *feige.*]
**fæger** (57), *fair, beautiful, agreeable, lovely.*
**fægernes** (51. 5), *beauty.*
**fægn** (58), *glad, joyous.*
**fægre** (70; vowel long in poetry), *fairly.*
**fægð** (51. *b*), *certain death(?)*
**fæmne** (53), *virgin, maiden, damsel.*
**færinga** (70), *suddenly, on a sudden.*
**færlice** (70), *suddenly.* [Cf. **āfæred**, and Mod. Eng. *fear.*]
**fæst** (58), *fixed, stable.* [Ger. *fest*, properly *fast.*]
**fæsten** (47), *fortification.* [Cf. Mod. Eng. *fastness.*]
**fæsten-geat** (47), *fortress-gate.*
**fæst-hafol** (57; 155. *d*), *tenacious.* [**hafol** from the root of **habban.**]
**fæstnes** (51. 5), *firmament.*
**fæstnung** (51. 3), *hold, stay, support.*
**fæt** (47. 4), *utensil, implement.*
**fǣted** (57), *beaten?;* **fǣted gold**, *gold leaf?*
**fǣted-sinc** (47), *treasure of plated articles?*
**fæðm** (43), *embracing arms; body; expanse, surface.* [Mod. Eng. *fathom.*]
**fāg** (58), *gleaming, glittering.*
**fāh** (58; but used as noun), *foe, enemy.* [Mod. Eng. *foe.*]
**fāmig-heals** (58), *foamy-necked, foamy-throated.* [Cf. Ger. *Hals.*]
**faran** (VI. 107; 184. *a*), *go.*
**faroð** (faruð) (43), *shore;* more generally, as in the next three words, it appears to mean *surge* (and so, possibly, p. 212, l. 12).
**faroð-lācende** (61, 215), *surge-swimming.* [See **lācan.**]
**faroð-rīdende** (61, 215), *surge-riding.*
**faroð-strǣt** (51. *b*; 215), *surge-street, street over the billows.* [**strǣt** < Lat. *strāta.*]
**faru** (51. *a*), *adventure.*
**feallan** (R. 109), *fall.* [Ger. *fallen.*]
**fealu** (57. 5), *dusky* (as often translated; but perhaps rather its literal signification), *yellow* (as Tennyson applies it, *Geraint and Enid* 829, 'And white sails flying on the *yellow* sea'; but Tennyson, in *The Battle of Brunanburh*, translates **fealone flōd** by '*fallow* flood'). [Cf. Ger. *fahl*, *falb*, and our '*fallow* deer.']
**fēa-sceaft** (58), *destitute.*
**fēawe** (58), plur., *few.*
**fęccean** (119, irreg.), *fetch.*
**fēdan** (113), *feed, nourish, support.* [< **fōd-**, by 16.]
**fela** (indecl. adj.; 154. *a*), *much; numerous, many (things).*
**feoh-ge-strēon** (47), *riches.* [See **gestrēon**, and Mod. Eng. *fee.*]
**feohtan** (III. 104, 21), *fight.* [Ger. *fechten.*]
**fēon** (113), *hate.*
**fēond** (143; 46. 3; 24), *foe, enemy.* [Mod. Eng. *fiend*, Ger. *Feind;* see **fēon.**]
**fēore**, see **feorh.**
**feorh** (43, 47, 29), *life, soul.*
**feorh-nęru** (51. *a*), *sustenance.* [Cf. **nęrian.**]
**feormian** (118), *take in, entertain.*
**feor(r)** (67; 35. *a*), *far, distant.* [Mod. Eng. *far.*]
**feorr**, *far, from (to) a distance.*

**feorran** (75), *from afar, from of old.* [Cf. Ger. *fern.*]
**fēorða** (78), *fourth.* [Ger. *vierte.*]
**fēower** (78), *four.* [Ger. *vier.*]
**fēower-tīene** (78), *fourteen.* [Ger. *vierzehn.*]
**fer-**, see **for-**.
**fēran** (113), *go, journey.* [Cf. Ger. *führen.*]
**ferhð** (fyrhð) (43, 47), *mind.*
**fęrian** (-ig(e)an) (116), *ferry, carry.*
**fēða** (53), *troop.*
**feðer** (51. *b*; 24), *wing, pinion.* [Ger. *Feder*, Mod. Eng. *feather.*]
**fiellan** (fyllan) (113), *fell, slay.* [Ger. *fällen*, Mod. Eng. *fell.*]
**fierd** (51. 1), *expedition, campaign.* [Ger. *Fahrt;* cf. **faran.**]
**fierding** (51. *b*), *warfare.*
**fierd-wīc** (fyrd-) (47), plur., *camp.*
**fierst** (fyrst) (43), *period, space, interval.* [Ger. *Frist.*]
**fīfta** (78, 30), *fifth.* [Ger. *fünfte*, Gr. πέμπτος.]
**fīgað**, see **fēon.**
**findan** (III. 104), *find, devise; encounter.* [Ger. *finden.*]
**fīras** (43, 29), plur., *men.*
**firgen-strēam** (firigend-) (43), *mountain-stream*, i.e. *ocean-stream.*
**firmamentum** (Lat.), *firmament.*
**fisc** (43, 24), *fish.* [Ger. *Fisch*, Lat. *piscis.*]
**fisc-cynn** (47), *sort of fish.*
**fiscere** (44, 143), *fisher(man).* [Ger. *Fischer.*]
**fiscnoð** (43), *fishing.*
**fiðer-fēte** (59), *four-footed.*
**fiðru** (47), plur., *wings.* [Cf. **feðer**, and Ger. *Gefieder.*]
**flǣsc** (47, 24), *flesh.* [Ger. *Fleisch.*]
**flān** (43), *arrow.*
**flax-fēte** (59), *web-footed.*
**flēogan** (II. 103), *fly.* [Ger. *fliegen.*]
**flēon** (II. 103), *flee.* [Ger. *fliehen.*]
**flocc** (43), *company.*
**flōd** (43), *flood.* [Ger. *Flut.*]
**flōd-wielm** (-wylm) (43), *seething of the flood.*
**flota** (53), *vessel* (lit. *float*).
**flōwan** (R. 109), *flow.*
**flyht** (43), *flight.*
**fnǣst** (43), *breath.*
**fōda** (53), *food.*
**fōdor** (47), *fodder.* [Ger. *Futter.*]
**folc** (47), *folk, people, nation.* [Ger. *Volk.*]
**folc-stęde** (44), *folkstead, battle-ground.*
**folc-toga** (53), *leader of the people, commander.* [**toga** < same root as **tēon**; cf. Ger. *Herzog*, OE. **hęretoga**, and the meaning of Lat. *dux.*]
**folde** (53), *earth.*
**folgian** (118; 164. *f*), *attend, serve.* [Ger. *folgen;* cf. **fylgan.**]
**folm** (51. *b*), *hand.* [Cognate with Lat. *palma.*]
**fōn** (R. 110), *catch; reach forth.*
**fōr** (51. *b*), *journey.*
**fōr**, see **faran.**
**for** (166, 175, 4), *for; before; of; on; in* (Fr. *selon*).
**for-** (142).
**for-bærnan** (113), *scorch, parch.*
**for-dilgian** (118), *destroy.* [Ger. *vertilgen.*]
**for-dōn** (142), *destroy.* [Shak.]
**for-drīfan** (I. 102), *drive, impel.* [Ger. *vertreiben.*]

**fore**, *before.*
**fore-** (**142**).
**fore-cuman** (IV. **105**), *anticipate, forestall, prevent.*
**fore-cweden** (**62**), *aforesaid.*
**fore-ge-gearwian** (**118**), *prepare.*
**fore-ge-scrīfan** (I. **102**), *prescribe.* [Ger. *vorschreiben;* Lat. *scribo* underlies both.]
**fore-sǣd** (**62**), *aforesaid.* [Past part. of **foresęcgean.**]
**fore-scēawung** (**51.** 3), *providence.* [Cf. Ger. *Vorsehung.*]
**fore-sęttan** (**113**), *close in.* [Ger. *vorsetzen.*]
**fore-sprecen** (**62**), *aforesaid.* [Past part. of **foresprecan.**]
**fore-tȳnan** (**113**), *cut off.* [Cf. **tūn**, and **16.**]
**for-giefan** (V. **106, 18**), *give, grant.* [See **giefan**; Ger. *vergeben.*]
**for-gieldan** (-gildan) (III. **104**; **24**; **18**; **164.** *h*), *requite, recompense; pay, give.* [Ger. *vergelten.*]
**for-gietan** (V. **106, 18**), *forget.* [Ger. *vergessen.*]
**for-grindan** (III. **104**), *wear out* (like Lat. *conterere*).
**forht** (**58**), *afraid, terrified.*
**forhtian** (**118**), *tremble.*
**for hwon**, *why.*
**for hwȳ**, *why.*
**for-ierman** (**113**), *ruin, reduce to poverty.* [< **earm**, by **16**; cf. Ger. *verarmen.*]
**for-lǣtan** (R. **110**), *let, allow; let go; lay down; leave, leave off; abandon, forsake; lose.* [Ger. *verlassen.*]
**for-lēosan** (II. **103**), *lose.* [Cf. Mod. Eng. *forlorn*, and Ger. *verlieren.*]
**for-liden** (**62**), *shipwrecked.* [Past part. of **forlīðan.**]
**for-lidennes** (**51.** 5), *shipwreck.*
**forma** (**60, 68, 78**), *first.*
**for-niman** (IV. **105**), *waste, desolate, consume;* **fornumen bēon**, *perish, decay.*
**for-spildan** (**113**), *destroy.*
**for-swelgan** (III. **104**), *devour.*
**for-swīgian** (**118**), *keep secret, conceal.* [Ger. *verschweigen.*]
**for-tredan** (V. **106**), *tread down, tread under foot.* [Ger. *vertreten.*]
**forð**, *forth.*
**for-ðām**, *because, for this reason, therefore.*
**for-ðām-ðe**, *because.*
**for-ðan**, *wherefore.*
**forð-ā-tēon** (II. **103**), *bring forth.*
**forð-bringan** (**114**), *bring forth.*
**forð-faran** (VI. **107**), *pass away, depart;* **forðfaren**, *deceased, dead.* [Ger. *fortfahren.*]
**forð-fōr** (**51.** *b*), *departure.*
**forð-ge-lēoran** (**113**), *pass away, die.*
**forð-lǣstan** (-lēstan) (**113**), *continue, supply.*
**for-ðon** (**-ðe**), *for, because; therefore; wherefore.*
**forð-tēon** (II. **103**), *perform, represent, exhibit; bring forth.*
**forð-weard**, *advanced.*
**for-wandian** (**118**), *reverence; hesitate;* **forwandiende**, *deferential, diffident.*
**for-weorðan** (III. **104**), *perish.*
**for-wiernan** (**113**; **156.** *j*), *refuse, deny.*
**for-witan** (**126**), *know in advance.*
**for-wyrcean** (**114**), *forfeit.* [Ger. *verwirken.*]

**fōt** (46), *foot.* [Ger. *Fuss.*]
**fracoð** (57, 165), *odious, abominable.* [<*fra-cūð, cf. Mayhew, *OE. Phon.* § 160.]
**frægn,** see **frignan.**
**frætwa** (-we) (51. *a*), plur., *ornaments.*
**frætwian** (118), *adorn, bedeck.*
**frætwung** (51. 3), *array.*
**fram,** *from; by; of; from among.*
**fram-gān** (141), *make headway.*
**framlīce** (frǫm-) (70), *promptly, bravely.*
**frēa** (53), *lord.*
**frēcne** (59), *perilous, fearful, direful, terrible.*
**frēcne** (70), *fearlessly, dauntlessly, valiantly.*
**frēcnes** (51. 5; 144), *danger, peril.*
**frēfran** (115. *b*), *comfort, cheer.*
**frǫmde** (59), *foreign, alien.* [Ger. *fremd.*]
**frǫmman** (115. *a*; 117; 164. *e*), *benefit, profit.* [Cf. the **fram-** (16) in **framgān.**]
**frēo** (irreg. plur. **frige**), *free.*
**frēod** (51. *b*), *good-will, kindness.*
**frēolīce** (70), *freely.* [Ger. *freilich.*]
**frēond** (46. 3), *friend.* [Ger. *Freund,* Goth. *frijōnds,* pres. part. of *frijōn,* to love; cf. **fēond.**]
**frēond-scipe** (44. 1; 143), *friendship.* [Cf. Ger. *Freundschaft,* with a different ending.]
**frēorig** (57; 174. *d*), *cold, benumbed.*
**freoðu** (freoðo) (51. *a*), *defense.* [Ger. *Friede.*]
**frige,** see **frēo.**
**frignan** (III. 104), *ask, inquire.*
**frið** (47), *countenance, support, aid, protection.* [Cf. **freoðu,** and Mod. Eng. *Frede(rick).*]
**frōd** (58), *old.*
**frōfor** (51. *b*), *comfort, consolation; sustenance.*
**frǫmlīce,** see **framlīce.**
**fruma** (53), *beginning, first.*
**frum-gār** (43), *primipile, captain, chief.* [Cf. **fruma.**]
**frum-sceaft** (51. *b*), *creation.* [Cf. **fruma.**]
**frymð(u)** (51, 144), *creation.* [Cf. **fruma,** and 16.]
**fugol** (43. 4), *bird.* [Ger. *Vogel,* Mod. Eng. *fowl.*]
**fugol-cynn** (47), *kind of birds.*
**fūl** (58), *vile, foul.* [Ger. *faul;* more remotely related are Lat. *pus, puteo.*]
**full** (58), *full.* [Ger. *voll.*]
**ful(l)**, adv., *full.*
**full-frǫmman** (115. *a*; 117), *finish.*
**fultum** (43), *help, aid, assistance, support.*
**fultumian** (118, 90), *assist.*
**furðra** (67), *first* (lit. *former*).
**furðum,** *even; whatever.*
**fūs** (58, 30), *ready.*
**fylgan** (113), *follow.* [Cf. **folgian,** and Ger. *folgen.*]
**fyllan** (113), *fill.* [<**full,** by 16; Ger. *füllen.*]
**fyllan,** see **fiellan.**
**fyllu** (51. *a*), *fill, feast.*
**fȳr** (47), *fire.* [Ger. *Feuer.*]
**fyrdwīc,** see **fierdwīc.**
**fyrhð,** see **ferhð.**
**fyrmest** (78. 1; 69), *first.*
**fȳr-spearca** (53), *spark.*
**fyrst,** see **fierst.**
**fȳsan** (113; 184. *b*), *hasten.* [<**fūs.**]

## G.

**gād** (**51**. *b*), *goad.*
**gærs** (**47**, **31**), *herb*, *grass.* [Ger. *Gras.*]
**gaful-rǣden** (**51**. 5; **144**), *fare.*
**gagates** (Lat.), *jet.*
**gālnes** (**51**. 5), *lust*, *lewdness.* [Cf. Ger. *Geil(heit).*]
**gān** (**141**), *go.* [Ger. *gehen.*]
**gang** (gǫng) (**43**), *course; circuit*, *revolution.*
**gangan** (R. **109**), *go.*
**gār** (**43**), *spear*, *javelin.* [Cf. Mod. Eng. *garlic.*]
**gār-ge-winn** (**47**), *battle of spears.* [See **gewinn.**]
**gārsecg** (**43**), *ocean.* [See p. 211, note 3.]
**gāst** (**43**), *spirit*, *ghost.* [Ger. *Geist.*]
**gāst-ge-hygd** (**47**), *thought of the mind.*
**gāst-ge-rȳne** (**48**, **215**), *secret of the soul*, *thought of the heart*(?). [See **gerȳne.**]
**gāt** (**52**), *goat.* [Ger. *Geiss.*]
**gē** (**18**).
**ge . . . and, ge . . . ge** (**202**), *both . . . and.*
**ge-** (**142**).
**ge-ǣmetgian** (**118**), *release*, *disengage.* [Cf. **ǣmetta**, **ǣmtig.**]
**ge-āgnian** (**118**), *inherit*, *occupy*, *take possession of.* [See **āgnian.**]
**ge-and-weard** (**58**), *present.* [See **andweard.**]
**ge-and-weardan** (-ǫnd-) (**113**), *answer.* [See **andweardan.**]
**gēar** (**47**, **18**), *year.* [Ger. *Jahr.*]
**gēara**, *formerly*, *of yore.*
**geare** (**70**), *well.* [See *yare(ly)* in Shakespeare, *Temp.* 1. 1, and elsewhere.]
**gēarlic** (**57**), *yearly*, *annual.* [Ger. *jährlich.*]
**gearu-ðancol** (gearoðǫncol) (**57**), *ready-witted.* [See **geare, ge-ðancol, ðancolmōd.**]
**gearwian** (**118**), *prepare.* [See **geare.**]
**geat** (**47**; **18**), *gate.*
**ge-āxian** (**118**), *learn*, *discover.* [See **āscian.**]
**ge-bed** (**47**, **142**), *prayer.* [Ger. *Gebet;* cf. **biddan.**]
**ge-beorg** (**47**), *defense*, *protection; outlook* (*on*).
**ge-bēorscipe** (**44**. 1), *banquet*, *feast.* [See **bēorscipe.**]
**ge-beran** (IV. **105**), *bear.* [See **beran.**]
**ge-bīdan** (I. **102**), *await*, *wait.* [See **bīdan.**]
**ge-biddan** (V. **106**), *pray.* [See **biddan.**]
**ge-bīegan** (**113**), *bend*, *curve.* [See **bīegan.**]
**ge-bierhtan** (**113**), *grow bright*, *shine.* [< **beorht**, by **16.**]
**ge-bilod** (**57**), *billed.*
**ge-bisgian** (-bysgian) (**118**), *fatigue*, *weary*, *exhaust.* [See **bisig.**]
**ge-bland** (-blǫnd) (**47**), *mingling*, *mixture*, *confusion.*
**ge-blandan** (-blǫndan) (R. **110**), *mingle.*
**ge-blēdsian**, see **geblētsian.**
**ge-blēod** (**58**), *hued*, *colored.*
**ge-blētsian** (-blēdsian) (**118**), *bless.* [See *New Eng. Dict.* s.v. *bless.*]
**ge-blissian** (**118**), *rejoice*, *make joyful;* **geblissod wesan**, *joy.* [See **blissian.**]

**geblǫnd(an)**, see **gebland(an)**.
**ge-blōwan** (R. **109**), *blow*. [See **blōwan**.]
**ge-brec** (**47**), *uproar*, *din*. [Cf. **brecan**.]
**ge-bringan** (**114**), *waft*, *carry*, *convey*. [See **bringan**.]
**ge-bycgean** (**114**), *buy*; *redeem*. [See **bycgean**.]
**ge-byrd** (**51**. *b*), *birth*, *extraction*, *lineage*. [Ger. *Geburt*; see **byrd**.]
**gebysgian**, see **gebisgian**.
**ge-cēosan** (II. **103**), *choose*, *select*.
**ge-cīegan** (**113**), *call*. [See **cīegan**.]
**ge-cierran** (**113**, **18**), *turn*; *return*. [See **cierran**.]
**ge-cneordnes** (**51**. 5), *accomplishment*.
**ge-cost** (**58**; **174**. *d*), *tried*, *trusty*.
**ge-cwēman** (**113**), *please*.
**ge-cwēme** (**59**), *pleasing*, *acceptable*.
**ge-cwēmlice** (**70**), *acceptably*, *agreeably*.
**ge-cweðan** (V. **106**), *say*, *speak*. [See **cweðan**.]
**ge-cȳðan** (**113**; **164**. *b*), *announce*; *prove*, *evince*, *show*, *exhibit*, *display*; *designate*. [See **cȳðan**.]
**ge-dǣlan** (**113**), *divide*, *separate*. [See **dǣlan**.]
**ge-dafenian** (**118**; **164**. *k*), *befit*.
**ge-dafenlic** (**57**), *fitting*, *suitable*.
**ge-deorf** (**47**), *labor*, *toil*.
**ge-dīcian** (**118**), *construct*. [< **dīc**; see **dīcian**.]
**ge-dīersian** (-dȳrsian) (**118**, **90**), *exalt*, *magnify*, *celebrate*. [< **dīere**.]
**ge-dōn** (**140**), *do*, *perform*; *make*. [See **dōn**.]
**ge-drēfan** (**113**), *disturb*, *agitate*, *trouble*. [Cf. Ger. *trüben*.]
**gedȳrsian**, see **gedīersian**.
**ge-ēacnian** (**118**), *increase*, *augment*. [< **ēac**.]
**ge-earnian** (**118**), *merit*. [See **earnung**.]
**ge-ed-nīwian** (**118**), *renew*. [See **ednīwian**.]
**ge-ęnde-byrdan** (**113**), *order*, *arrange*.
**ge-ęndian** (**118**), *end*, *come to an end*. [< **ęnde**; see **ęndian**.]
**ge-ęndung** (**51**. 3), *end*, *close*.
**ge-fæstnian** (**118**), *fasten*, *confirm*, *establish*.
**ge-faran** (VI. **107**), *experience*, *suffer*. [See **faran**, and **142**, **ge-**(2).]
**ge-fēa** (**53**), *pleasure*, *joy*, *delight*, *gladness*.
**ge-feallan** (R. **109**), *fall*, *chance*. [See **feallan**.]
**ge-feoht** (**47**), *battle*.
**ge-feohtan** (III. **104**), *fight*. [See **feohtan**.]
**ge-fēon** (V. **106**; **156**. *c*; **29**), *rejoice*.
**ge-feormian** (**118**), *take in*, *entertain*. [See **feormian**.]
**ge-fēra** (**53**, **142**), *companion*, *fellow*.
**gefēran** (**113**), *undertake*, *experience*. [See **fēran**.]
**ge-fęrian** (**116**), *ferry*, *carry*, *bear*. [See **fęrian**.]
**ge-fēr-rǣden** (**51**. 5; **144**), *company*, *fellowship*, *society*.
**ge-fēr-scipe** (**44**. 1; **143**), *attendance*, *companionship*; *retinue*.
**geflīeman** (-flǣman) (**113**), *put to flight*.
**ge-flit** (**47**), *strife*, *dispute*. [Cf. Ger. *Fleiss*.]
**ge-frætwian** (**118**), *adorn*. [See **frætwian**.]

**ge-frēfran** (115. *b*), *console, cheer.* [See **frēfran.**]
**ge-fręmman** (115. *a*), *effect, perform, work, perpetrate.* [See **fręmman.**]
**ge-fultumian** (118), *assist, help.* [See **fultumian.**]
**ge-fyllan** (113, 156), *fill; end, finish, accomplish.* [See **fyllan.**]
**ge-fyrn**, adv., *a long time ago.*
**ge-gada** (53), *associate, companion.*
**ge-gaderian** (118), *gather.*
**ge-gaderung** (51. 3), *gathering together, assembly, congregation.*
**ge-gān** (141), *go; win, obtain.* [See **gān.**]
**ge-gearcian** (118), *prepare.* [Cf. **geare.**]
**ge-gearwian** (118), *prepare.* [See **gearwian**, and cf. **gegierwan.**]
**ge-gierela** (53), *garment; raiment, apparel.*
**ge-gierwan** (-gyrwan) (113), *prepare.* [Cf. **gegearwian.**]
**ge-glęngan** (113), *adorn.* [< **glęng.**]
**ge-gōdian** (118), *enrich.* [< **gōd.**]
**ge-gręmman** (115. *a*), *irritate, enrage.* [See **gręmian.**]
**ge-grētan** (113), *greet, salute.*
**ge-gyrwan**, see **gegierwan.**
**ge-hāl** (58), *whole, intact.* [See **hāl.**]
**ge-hālgian** (118), *hallow.* [< **hālig.**]
**ge-hātan** (R. 110), *promise, pledge; call.* [See **hātan.**]
**ge-healdan** (R. 109), *observe, keep; reserve; maintain, sustain.* [See **healdan.**]
**ge-hēawan** (R. 109), *cut down, slay.* [See **hēawan.**]
**ge-hęrian** (116), *glorify.* [See **hęrian.**]
**ge-hīeran** (113), *hear.* [See **hīeran.**]
**ge-hīersum** (57, 146), *obedient.*
**ge-hīersumian** (118; 164. *f*), *obey.*
**ge-hīersumnes** (51. 5), *obedience.*
**ge-hladan** (VI. 107), *lade, load, freight.*
**ge-hogian** (118), *consider, have in mind.*
**ge-hrīnan** (I. 102), *attack.*
**ge-hū**, *in every direction.* [See **hū.**]
**ge-hwā** (89. *c*; 154. *b*), *each (one).* [See **hwā.**]
**ge-hwilc** (-hwylc) (89. *a*; 154. *b*), *each (one), every (one);* **ānra gehwilc**, *every (one).* [See **hwilc.**]
**ge-hyhtan** (113), *hope, trust.* [< **hyht.**]
**ge-hȳran**, see **gehīeran.**
**ge-innian** (118), *give, bestow (on).*
**ge-in-seglian** (118), *seal.* [< Lat. *sigillum.*]
**ge-læccean** (114), *catch, seize.* [Cf. Shak., *Macb.* 4. 3. 195.]
**ge-lǣdan** (113), *bring, carry.* [See **lǣdan.**]
**ge-lǣred** (62), *taught, educated, trained, skilled, skilful.* [Past part. of **lǣran.**]
**ge-lǣstan** (113), *stand by, assist.* [See **lǣstan.**]
**ge-laðian** (118), *invite.* [See **laðian.**]
**ge-lēafa** (53), *faith.* [Ger. *G(e)laube.*]
**ge-leornian** (118), *learn.* [See **leornian.**]
**ge-lęttan** (113), *hinder.* [Ger.

*-letzen;* cf. Shak., *Haml.* 1. 4. 85, and (Auth. Vers.) Rom. 1. 13.]

**ge-līc** (**58, 163**), *like.* [< **līc**, *body;* cf. Ger. *gleich.*]

**ge-līca** (**53**), *like, equal.*

**ge-līce** (**70**), *similarly, likewise.*

**ge-licgan** (V. **106**), *border.* [See **licgan.**]

**ge-līcnes** (**51.** 5), *likeness.* [Ger. *Gleichniss.*]

**ge-līefan** (**113**; **156.** *g*), *believe.* [Ger. *g(e)lauben.*]

**ge-līf-fæstan** (**113**), *make alive, endow with life.* [See **līf.**]

**ge-limp** (**47**), *adventure, misfortune.*

**ge-limpan** (III. **104**), *happen, befall.*

**ge-limplic** (**57**), *adapted.*

**ge-lōgian** (**118**), *place, set.*

**ge-lōmlice** (**70**), *frequently.*

**ge-lufian** (**118**), *love.* [See **lufian.**]

**ge-lystan** (**113, 190**), *desire.* [See **lystan**, and Ger. *gelüsten.*]

**ge-maca** (**53**), *mate, compànion.*

**ge-mæccea** (**53**), *mate, consort, spouse.*

**ge-mǣne** (**59**), *common, universal.*

**gemǣnelice** (**70**), *in common.*

**ge-mǣre** (**48**), *boundary, end.*

**ge-mang** (-mǫng) (**47**), *troop, phalanx.*

**ge-manig-fieldan** (**113**), *multiply.*

**ge-męngan** (**113**; **184.** *b*), *mingle, associate.*

**ge-meotu**, see **gemet.**

**ge-met** (**47, 20**), *boundary; sort; effect; law.*

**ge-mētan** (**113**), *find, encounter.* [See **mētan.**]

**ge-miltsian** (**118**; **164.** *g*; **33**), *pity, have compassion on.* [< **milts.**]

**ge-miltsiend** (**43.** 6), *pitier.*

**gemǫng**, see **gemang.**

**ge-munan** (**134**), *remember, be mindful.*

**ge-myndig** (**57**), *mindful.*

**ge-myngian** (**118**), *recount, relate.*

**gēna**, see **gīena.**

**ge-nacodian** (**118, 162**), *strip.* [< **nacod.**]

**gēn-cwide** (**44, 28**), *reply.* [See **cwide.**]

**ge-neahhe** (**70**), *often, frequently.*

**ge-nēa-lǣcan** (**113**), *approach, draw nigh.* [See **nēalǣcan.**]

**ge-nęmnan** (**115.** *b*), *name.* [See **nęmnan.**]

**ge-nēosian** (**118**), *visit.* [See **nēosian.**]

**ge-nęrian** (**116**), *save.*

**ge-niman** (IV. **105**), *take, seize.* [See **niman.**]

**ge-nyhtsum** (**57, 146**), *abundant.* [Cf. **nugan** (**136**), Ger. *genügen*, and Mod. Eng. *enough.*]

**ge-nyhtsumian** (**118**; **164.** *e*), *avail, suffice, be sufficient for, be of use.*

**geofon** (**47**), *ocean.*

**geoguð** (**51.** *b*; **18**), *youth.* [Ger. *Jugend.*]

**gēomor-mōd** (**58, 18**), *sorrowful-minded.* [Cf. Ger. *Jammer.*]

**geond** (**18**), *along, through, throughout, over.* [Cf. Mod. Eng. *beyond.*]

**geong** (**58, 65, 18**), *young.* [Ger. *jung.*]

**ge-openian** (**118**), *open.* [< **open**; cf. Ger. *öffnen.*]

**georn** (**58**; **155.** *e*; **21.** *b*), *eager.* [See **giernan.**]

**georne** (**70**), *surely, certainly.* [Ger. *gern.*]

**georn-full** (**58**), *busied, occupied.*
**georn-fulnes** (**51.** 5), *piety, zeal.*
**geornlice** (**70**), *assiduously, zealously.*
**georran** (III. **104**), *rattle.*
**gēotan** (II. **103**), *stream.* [Ger. *giessen.*]
**ge-rǣdan** (**113**), *read;* **gerǣd is,** *reads.* [Cf. Ger. *rathen;* see **rǣdan.**]
**ge-ręccean** (**114**), *interpret, expound.* [See **ręccean.**]
**ge-rēnian** (**118, 28**), *adorn.*
**ge-reord** (**47**), *repast.*
**ge-reordian** (**118, 90**), *feed, refresh.*
**ge-ręstan** (**113**; **184.** *b*), *rest, repose.* [< **ręst.**]
**ge-rētan** (**113**), *refresh, invigorate, cheer.* [< **rōt,** *glad.*]
**ge-riht** (**47**), *direct way.* [See **riht.**]
**ge-rīm-cræft** (**43**), *arithmetic, chronology.*
**ge-rȳne** (**48**), *mystery.* [< **rūn,** by **16.**]
**ge-sǣgan** (**113**), *lay low.*
**ge-sǣlan** (**113, 190**), *happen, befall, chance.*
**ge-sǣlig** (**57.** 3), *delightful.* [Cf. Ger. *selig.*]
**ge-samnian** (-sǫmnian) (**118**), *gather.*
**ge-scēadan** (R. **110**), *separate.*
**ge-sceaft** (**51.** *b*), *creature, creation.*
**ge-scēawian** (**118**), *behold.* [See **scēawian.**]
**ge-scieldan** (-scyldan) (**113**), *defend, protect.* [Cf. **scield.**]
**ge-scieldnes** (**51.** 5), *defense, protection.*
**ge-scieppan** (VI. **107**), *create.* [See **scieppan.**]
**ge-scierpan** (**113**), *clothe, apparel.*
**ge-scierpla** (-scirpla) (**53**), *raiment, apparel.*
**ge-scrēpe** (**59**), *suitable, adapted.*
**ge-scrifen** (**62**), *prescribed, fixed, regular, customary.* [Past part. of **gescrīfan** < Lat. *scribo.*]
**ge-scrȳdan** (**113, 16**), *clothe.* [See **scrȳdan.**]
**ge-scyldan,** see **gescieldan.**
**ge-sēcean** (**114**), *visit, gain, touch, attain.* [See **sēcean.**]
**ge-sęcgean** (**123**), *say; give (thanks).* [See **sęcgean.**]
**ge-sęllan** (**114**), *give.* [See **sęllan.**]
**ge-sęndan** (**113**), *send, throw.* [See **sęndan.**]
**ge-sēon** (V. **106**), *see;* **gesegen is,** *seems,* Lat. *videtur.*
**ge-setennes** (**51.** 5), *institute, ordinance.*
**ge-sętnes** (**51.** 5), *narrative.*
**ge-sęttan** (**113**), *set, place; occupy; appoint, settle; compose.* [See **sęttan.**]
**ge-sewenlic** (**57**), *visible.*
**ge-sīene** (-sȳne) (**59**), *visible.*
**ge-sihð** (**51.** 1), *countenance.*
**ge-sittan** (V. **106**), *sit; possess, inherit.* [See **sittan.**]
**ge-sīð** (**43**), *companion.* [Cf. **sīð,** and Ger. *Gesinde.*]
**ge-slēan** (VI. **107**), *smite, strike.* [See **slēan.**]
**ge-smierwan** (**113**), *anoint.*
**ge-smyltan** (**113, 17**), *calm.* [< **smolt,** *serene;* cf. **smylte.**]
**gesǫmnian,** see **gesamnian.**
**ge-spann** (**47**), *clasp, network.*
**ge-spōwan** (R. **109, 190**), *succeed.*
**ge-sprec** (**47**), *conversation.* [Ger. *Gespräch;* cf. **sprecan.**]

**ge-standan** (VI. **107**), *assail.* [See **standan.**]
**ge-staðelian** (-staðolian) (**118**), *establish, render steadfast; restore.*
**ge-staðolfæstian** (-steaðulfestian) (**118**), *establish, perform.*
**ge-stīgan** (I. **102**), *ascend to.* [See **stīgan.**]
**ge-stillan** (**113**), *still, pacify, quiet; subside.* [See **stillan.**]
**ge-strangian** (**118**), *strengthen.* [< **strang.**]
**ge-stregdan** (III. **104**), *sprinkle.*
**ge-strēon** (**47**), *profit, gain.* [Cf. **strēonan.**]
**ge-strēowian** (**118**), *strew.*
**ge-sund** (**58**), *well.* [Ger. *gesund.*]
**ge-swęncan** (**113**), *torment, vex, wear out.* [See **swęncan.**]
**ge-swęngan** (**113**), *swinge, toss.*
**ge-sweotolian** (**118**), *manifest; bewray, expose, discover.* [< **sweotol.**]
**ge-swęrian** (VI. **107**), *swear.* [See **swęrian.**]
**ge-swīcan** (I. **102** ; **156.** *k*), *cease; fail.* [See **swīcan.**]
**ge-swinc** (**47**), *toil, effort.* [Cf. **swincan.**]
**ge-swing** (**47**), *rolling, undulation.* [Cf. **swingan.**]
**ge-syndig** (**57.** 3), *fair, favoring, propitious.* [< **gesund,** by **16.**]
**gesȳne,** see **gesīene.**
**ge-syngian** (**118**), *sin.* [Cf. **synfull.**]
**getācnian** (**118**), *signify, indicate.* [See **tācnian.**]
**ge-tācnung** (**51.** 3), *sign.* [< **tācen.**]
**ge-tǣcean** (**114**), *point out, direct; appoint; teach.* [See **tǣcean.**]
**ge-tæl** (**47**), *reckoning.*
**ge-tēon** (II. **103**), *bring up; play.* [See **tēon.**]
**ge-timbran** (**115.** *b*), *furnish, supply* (lit. *construct*).
**ge-trymman** (**115.** *a*), *fortify.* [See **trymman.**]
**ge-ðanc** (**47**), *thought, mind.*
**ge-ðancol** (-ðancul) (**57**), *considerate.* [See **ðancolmōd, gearoðancol.**]
**ge-ðeaht** (**47**), *counsel, advice.*
**ge-ðeahtend** (**43.** 6), *counsellor.*
**ge-ðęncean** (**114**), *remember.* [See **ðęncean.**]
**ge-ðræc** (**47**), *commingling, turbulence, tumult.*
**ge-ðrǣstan** (**113**), *afflict.*
**ge-ðrēan** (**113**), *dismay.* [See **ðrēan.**]
**ge-ðrēatian** (**118**), *rebuke.* [See **ðrēatian.**]
**ge-ðring** (**47**), *throng, rush.*
**ge-ðungen** (**62**), *excellent.* [< **ðēon,** *thrive.*]
**ge-ðwǣrian** (**118**), *agree.*
**ge-ðwǣrnes** (**51.** 5), *concord, agreement.*
**ge-ðȳn** (**113**), *restrain.*
**ge-ðyncean** (**114**), *seem, appear;* **geðūht is,** *seems.* [See **ðyncean.**]
**ge-un-trumian** (**118**), *enfeeble, debilitate, prostrate;* **geuntrumod,** *sick,* Lat. *infirmus.* [< **untrum.**]
**ge-wǣgan** (**113**), *plague, molest.*
**ge-wǣtan** (**113**), *wet, moisten.*
**ge-wealc** (**47**), *welter.*
**ge-weald** (**47**), *control, rule, dominion.* [Ger. *Gewalt;* see **wealdend.**]
**ge-węndan** (**113**), *turn; return, depart, go; translate.* [See **węndan.**]

**ge-weorc** (47), *work.* [See **weorc.**]
**ge-weorp** (47), *smiting.*
**ge-weorðan** (III. 104), *become, be; make; happen; convert.* [See **weorðan.**]
**ge-weorðian** (118), *distinguish.* [See **weorðian.**]
**ge-wieldan** (113), *rule, have dominion over.* [<**geweald**, by 16; see Mod. Eng. *wield.*]
**ge-wiht** (47), *weight.* [Ger. *Gewicht.*]
**ge-wilnian** (118; 156. *a*), *desire.* [See **wilnian.**]
**ge-winn** (47), *labor, toil; hardship, distress.* [See **winnan.**]
**ge-winna** (53), *enemy.* [See **winnan.**]
**ge-winnfullic** (57), *laborious, toilsome, fatiguing.*
**ge-wislice** (70, 76), *openly, plainly.*
**ge-wissian** (118), *guide, direct.*
**ge-witan** (126), *find out, learn.* [See **witan.**]
**ge-wītan** (I. 102; 184. *a*), *depart, go.*
**ge-witt** (47), *understanding.*
**ge-writ** (47), *writing, writ; letter; document, instrument, will.*
**ge-wrītan** (I. 102), *write.*
**ge-wuna** (53), *custom, wont.*
**ge-wunian** (118), *be wont, use; dwell.* [See **wunian.**]
**ge-wyrcean** (114), *make, build.* [See **wyrcean.**]
**giefan** (gifan) (V. 106, 18), *give.* [Ger. *geben.*]
**giefeðe** (gifeðe) (48), *chance.*
**giefu** (gifu) (51. *a*), *gift; boon.*
**gīeman** (113; 156. *f*), *rule over.*
**gīena** (gēna), *yet.*
**giernan** (113), *desire; solicit (the hand of), woo.* [<**georn**, by 16.]
**giest-hūs** (47), *inn.* [Cf. Mod. Eng. *guest-chamber.*]
**giestran-dæg** (gystran-) (43), *yesterday.*
**gīet** (gīt, gȳt), *yet; still; as yet, hitherto.*
**gif**, *if.* [Not related to **giefan.**]
**gifeðe**, see **giefeðe.**
**gifu**, see **giefu.**
**gim-cynn** (47), *gems of every kind.*
**gimm** (43), *gem, precious stone.* [Borrowed from Lat. *gemma* before ca. 650.]
**ginn** (58), *spacious, ample.*
**gingra** (65, 53), *disciple.*
**gīo**, *formerly, long ago, once upon a time.* [See **īu.**]
**gīt**, see **gīet.**
**glæs** (47), *glass.*
**glēaw** (58), *prudent, wise.*
**glēawlīce** (70), *shrewdly, judiciously, wisely.* [*lishment.*
**glęng** (51. *b*), *adornment, embel-*
**glīdan** (I. 102), *glide.* [Ger. *gleiten.*]
**gōd** (58, 5, 4), *good.* [Ger. *gut.*]
**gōd** (47), *prosperity;* plur., *goods, good things, property; benefactions.*
**God** (43, 5, 4), *God.* [Ger. *Gott;* according to Kluge, the 'Being invoked.']
**god-cund** (58), *divine.* [*godhead.*
**god-cundnes** (51. 5), *divinity,*
**godcundmiht** (-mæht) (51. 1), *majesty.* [*Divine Father.*
**God-Fæder** (43. 8), *God-Father*
**god-spell** (47), *gospel.*
**gōd-wębb** (47), *purple.*
**gold** (47), *gold.*

**gold-frætwa** (**51**. *a*), plur., *golden ornaments.*
**gold-hord** (**47**), *treasure.*
**gold-lēaf** (**47**), *gold leaf.*
**gǫng**, see **gang**.
**grǣg** (**58**), *gray.* [Ger. *grau.*]
**gram** (**57**), *fierce, raging.*
**grǫmman** (**115**. *a*), *enrage.* [< **gram**, by **16**.]
**grēne** (**59**), *green.* [Ger. *grün.*]
**grēot** (**47**), *dust; shingle.* [Ger. *Griess.*]
**grētan** (**113**), *greet, salute; take leave of.* [Ger. *grüssen.*]
**grēwð**, see **grōwan**.
**grindan** (**III. 104**), *whirl.* [Mod. Eng. *grind.*]
**grōwan** (**R. 109**), *grow.*
**grund** (**43**), *earth; bottom; sea* (perhaps orig. *shallow, shoal*). [Ger. *Grund*, Mod. Eng. *ground.*]
**gryre-hwīl** (**51**. *b*), *period of terror.*
**gurron**, see **georran**.
**guma** (**53**), *man, hero.* [Mod. Eng. (*bride*)*groom.*]
**gūð** (**51**. *b*; **30**), *war.* [Ger. *-gund*, in *Hildegund*, e.g.; cf. *Gondibert.*]
**gūð-fana** (**53**), *gonfalon, standard.* [See Mod. Eng. *gonfalon*; cf. Ger. *Fahne*, Mod. Eng. *vane.*]
**gūð-freca** (**53**), *warrior.*
**gūð-rinc** (**43**), *warrior.*
**gūð-sceorp** (**47**), *war-trappings.*
**gyden** (**51**. *b*; **17**), *goddess.*
**gylden** (**146, 17**), *golden.*
**gystran-dæg**, see **giestran-dæg**.
**gȳt**, see **gīet**.

## H.

**habban** (**121, 188**), *have; possess; accept, keep; receive.* [Ger. *haben*; cf. Lat. *habere.*]
**hād** (**43**), *sex.*
**hādor** (**57**), *bright, serene.* [Ger. *heiter.*]
**hǣl** (**47**), *salvation; rescue, escape.* [Ger. *Heil.*]
**Hælend** (**43**. 6), *Saviour, Jesus.* [Ger. *Heiland.*]
**hæleð** (**43**. 9), *hero, man.* [Ger. *Held.*]
**hǣlu** (**51**. *a*), *salvation; rescue.*
**hærfest** (**43**), *harvest.* [Ger. *Herbst*; cf. Lat. *carpere*, Gr. καρπός.]
**hærn** (**51**. *b*), *ocean.*
**hǣs** (**51**. *b*), *order, direction, command.* [Cf. Mod. Eng. *behest*, Ger. *Geheiss.*]
**hǣtu** (**51**. *a*), *heat.* [**hāt**, by **16**.]
**hǣðen** (**57**. 3), *heathen.* [Cf. Ger. *Heide*, and Mod. Eng. *heath*; so Lat. *paganus* < *pagus.*]
**hāl** (**58**), *whole, hale*; **hāl gedōn**, *save.* [Ger. *heil.*]
**hālig** (**57**. 3; **146**), *holy.* [< **hāl**; Ger. *heilig.*]
**hālsian** (**118**), *conjure, implore, entreat.* [< **hāl**.]
**hām** (**74, 24**), *home.* [Ger. *heim.*]
**hand** (**51**. 1. 3), *hand.* [Ger. *Hand.*]
**hār** (**58**), *hoar(y), gray.*
**hāt** (**58**), *hot, fervent.* [Ger. *heiss.*]
**hātan** (**R. 110**), *call; command*; **hātte**, *is, was called.* [Ger *heissen*; cf. archaic Eng. *hight.*]
**hē** (**81**).
**hēa**, see **hēah**.
**hēa-clif** (**47**), *lofty cliff.*
**hēa-dēor** (**47**), *high-deer.* [Cf. Ger. *Hochwild*; without a prefix, OE. **dēor** rarely, if ever, means 'deer.']
**hēafod** (**47**. 1, 6; **23**), *head.* [Ger. *Haupt*, Lat. *caput*, for **cauput.*]

**hēafod-ge-rīm** (47), *number by heads, poll.*
**hēah** (hēa) (65; 58. 1; 17), *high; great.* [Ger. *hoch.*]
**hēah-cyning** (43), *high king.*
**hēah-ge-strēon** (47), *sumptuous, superb treasure.* [See **gestrēon.**]
**hēah-setl** (hǣah-) (47), *throne.*
**hēah-stefn** (58), *lofty-prowed.*
**healdan** (R. 109), *hold; observe, maintain; keep, reserve.* [Ger. *halten.*]
**healf** (51. *b*), *hand*, i.e. *side.*
**healf** (58), *half.* [Ger. *halb.*]
**hēalic** (57, 146), *lofty.*
**heall** (51. *b*), *hall.* [Ger. *Halle.*]
**hēan** (58), *lowly, servile, of low degree; poor.*
**hēanes** (51. 5), *height, highest point.*
**hēanne**, see **hēah.**
**hēap** (43), *crowd, swarm, throng, assemblage.* [Ger. *Haufe.*]
**heard** (58; 21. *a*; 24), *brave, intrepid.* [Ger. *hart.*]
**hearde** (70), *painfully, grievously.*
**hearm** (43; 21. *a*), *injury.* [Ger. *Harm.*]
**hearpe** (53. 1; 21. *a*), *harp, lyre.* [Ger. *Harfe.*]
**hearpe-nægl** (43), *plectrum.*
**hearpe-strȩng** (43), *harpstring.*
**hearpian** (118, 90), *harp, play the harp.* [Ger. *harfen.*]
**hēaðu-līðend** (hēaðo-) (43. 6), *seafarer.*
**heaðu-rinc** (heaðo-) (43, 21), *warrior.*
**heaðu-wǣd** (51. *b*), *warlike garment, martial weed.*
**hēawan** (R. 109), *hew, cleave.*
**hębban** (VI. 107), *elevate, lift;* **hębban ūp**, *be exalted.*
**hefon**, see **heofon.**
**hęfig** (57), *grievous, irksome.*
**hęfigian** (118), *become worse.*
**hęfignes** (51. 5), *burden.*
**hēhðo**, see **hīehðu.**
**helan** (IV. 105), *conceal.* [Cf. Chaucer, *Nun's Priest's Tale* 235; Ger. *hehlen.*]
**hęll** (51. *b*), *hell.* [Ger. *Hölle.*]
**helm** (43), *helmet; protector.* [Ger. *Helm.*]
**help** (51. 5; 5), *help.* [Cf. Ger. *Hilfe.*]
**hēo** (81).
**hēof** (43), *mourning, weeping.*
**heofon** (43. 4. *d*; 20), *heaven.*
**heofon-candel** (51. *b*; 215), *candle of heaven.*
**heofon-cyning** (43), *king of heaven.*
**heofone** (53. 3), *heaven.*
**heofon-fȳr** (47), *celestial fire, fire from heaven.*
**heofon-lēoma** (53), *radiance of heaven.*
**heofonlic** (57), *heavenly, celestial, of heaven.*
**heofonlice** (70), *from heaven.*
**heofon-rīce** (48), *kingdom of heaven, heavenly kingdom.*
**heofon-ðrymm** (43), *glory of heaven.*
**heolfrig** (57), *gory.*
**heolstor** (47), *darkness.*
**heonan** (75), *hence.*
**heorte** (53. 1; 24; 21. *b*), *heart.* [Ger. *Herz.*]
**hēr** (75, 24), *here.* [Ger. *her.*]
**hēr-æfter**, *hereafter.*
**hęre** (44. 2; 18), *army, host.* [Ger. *Heer;* cf. Mod. Eng. *harbor, heriot.*]
**hęre-folc** (47), *army.*
**hęre-pæð** (hęrpað) (43), *highway.* [Cf. Ger. *Heerstrasse.*]

**hęre-rēaf** (47), *plunder, spoil.*
**hęre-strǣt** (51. *b*), *highway*, lit. *military road.* [Ger. *Heerstrasse.*]
**hęre-wǣðða** (53), *warrior.*
**hęrgian** (118), *harry, ravage, lay waste.* [Ger. *(ver)heeren.*]
**hęrian** (116), *praise.*
**hęriges**, see **hęre.**
**hęrpað**, see **hęrepæð.**
**hēt**, see **hātan.**
**hī** (81).
**hider** (75), *hither.*
**hīehsta**, see **hēah.**
**hīehðu** (hēhðo) (51. *a*), *height, high.*
**hīenan** (113), *insult, oppress.* [< **hēan**, by 16.]
**hīenð** (51. *b*), *injury, harm.* [< **hēan**, by 16.]
**hīeran** (hȳran) (113, 117), *hear.*
**hiera, hiere** (81, 83).
**hīernes** (51. 5), *obedience.*
**higerōf**, see **hygerōf.**
**hiht**, see **hyht.**
**hiium**, see **hīwan.**
**hild** (51. 5), *conflict, battle.* [Orig. Hild, goddess of war.]
**hilde-lēoð** (47), *battle-lay.*
**hilde-nǣdre** (53. 1; 215), *battle-adder, arrow.* [See *New Eng. Dict.* s.v. *adder.*]
**hilde-wǣpen** (47. 1), *battle-weapon.*
**him, hine, his, hit** (81, 83).
**hin-gang** (-iǫng) (43), *departure.* [Ger. *Hingang.*]
**hīw** (47), *kind; color.* [Cf. Spenser, *F. Q.* 3. 6. 33, 35.]
**hīwan** (53), plur. *brethren, brotherhood, conventual household, chapter.*
**hlǣfdige** (53. 1), *lady.* [Cf. p. 222, note 2.]
**hlæst** (47), plur., *wares, merchandise, cargo.* [Ger. *Last;* cf. **hladan.**]
**hlāf** (43), *bread; food.* [Archaic Ger. *Laib;* Mod. Eng. *loaf.*]
**hlāford** (43), *lord.* [< **hlāf** + **weard.**]
**hlāford-lēas** (58), *lordless, without a leader.*
**hlāford-scipe** (44. 1), *lordship, rule.*
**hlanc** (58), *lank, gaunt.*
**hlēo** (47. 3), *shelter; protector.* [Mod. Eng. *lee.*]
**hlēotan** (II. 103), *obtain, gain.* [Cf. Ger. *Loos*, Mod. Eng. *lot.*]
**hlēoðor-cwide** (44), *narrative, story; hymn.*
**hlēoðrian** (118), *speak; proclaim.*
**hleoðu**, see **hlið.**
**hlīfian** (118), *tower.*
**hlimman** (hlymman) (III. 104), *resound.*
**hlið** (47, 20), *hill.*
**hlōðian** (118), *pillage, plunder.*
**hlūde** (70), *loudly.*
**hlūtor** (hlutter) (57), *pure, clear.*
**hlymman**, see **hlimman.**
**hlynnan** (115. *a*), *roar, boom.*
**hōc** (43), *hook.*
**hof** (47), *building, dwelling, abode.*
**holm** (43), *ocean, sea.*
**holm-ðracu** (51. *a*), *tossing of the sea, boisterous sea.*
**holm-weard** (43), *warden of the sea.*
**holm-weg** (43), *path of the ocean.*
**holt** (47), *grove, forest.* [Ger. *Holz;* cf. Chaucer, *Prol.* 6.]
**hōlunga** (70), *in vain.*
**horig** (57), *squalid.*
**horn-boga** (53), *bow of horn.*
**horn-fisc** (43), *sword-fish ?*
**horn-scip** (47), *beaked ship.*

**hors** (47, 31), *horse.* [Ger. *Ross.*]
**hosp** (43?), *reproach, abuse.*
**hrædlice** (70), *with speed; immediately.*
**hrædnes** (51. 5), *celerity.*
**hræfn** (hrefn) (43), *raven.* [Ger. *Rabe.*]
**hrǣw** (47), *corpse.*
**hran** (43), *whale.*
**hran-rād** (hrǫn-) (51. *b*), *path of the whale.*
**hraðe** (70), *quickly.*
**hrefn**, see **hræfn.**
**hrēmig** (57; 174. *d*), *exulting.*
**hrēoh** (58), *rough, fierce, rude.*
**hrēohnes** (51. 5), *tempest.*
**hrēosan** (II. 103), *fall.*
**hrēran** (113), *agitate, toss.* [Ger. *rühren.*]
**hring** (43), *ring.* [Ger. *Ring.*]
**hrōf** (43, 24), *roof.*
**hrǫnrād**, see **hranrād.**
**hrȳðer** (47), plur., *cattle.*
**hū**, *how.*
**hund** (78, 79), *hundred.*
**hund-seofontig** (78), *seventy.*
**hund-tēontig** (78), *a hundred-(fold).*
**hunger** (43), *famine, starvation.* [Ger. *Hunger.*]
**hungrig** (57), *hungry, an hungered.* [Ger. *hungrig.*]
**hup-seax** (47), *hip-dagger.*
**hūs** (47), *house.* [Ger. *Haus.*]
**hwā** (88; 89. *c*), *who; any one.*
**hwæl** (43. 2), *whale.* [Cf. Ger. *Wall(fisch).*]
**hwæl-męre** (44), *whale-mere, whale-sea.*
**hwænne**, see **hwonne.**
**hwǣr** (75), *where.*
**hwæt**, *what.*
**hwæt-hwega** (-hwugu) (89. *b*; 154. *b*), *something.*
**hwætlice** (70, 76), *quickly.*
**hwæðer**, *whether.*
**hwæðre** (-ere), *yet, still, nevertheless.*
**hwanan** (hwanon) (75), *whence.*
**hwaðerian** (118), *rage.*
**hwealf** (58), *vaulted, hollow.*
**hwelan** (IV. 105), *roar, thunder.*
**hwēol** (47), *wheel.* [Cognate with Gr. κύκλος, Mod. Eng. *cycle, (bi)cycle.*]
**hweorfan** (hwyrfan) (III. 104), *return; turn; move.*
**hwęttan** (113), *incite.*
**hwider** (75), *whither.*
**hwīl** (51. *b*), *while, time;* **ðā hwīle ðe**, *the while that, while.*
**hwilc** (hwylc) (88; 89. *a*), *which, what; any.*
**hwīlum** (72), *sometimes; a while.* [Mod. Eng. *whilom;* cf. Chaucer, *Knight's Tale* 1.]
**hwōn**, *somewhat, a little.*
**hwone**, see **hwā.**
**hwonne** (hwænne, hwœnne), *when; until.*
**hwylc**, see **hwilc.**
**hwyrfan**, see **hweorfan.**
**hyge-rōf** (hige-) (58), *valiant-souled.*
**hyge-ðancol** (57), *thoughtful-minded.*
**hȳhsta**, see **hīehsta.**
**hyht** (hiht) (43) *hope; joy, gladness, bliss; bent.*
**hyldu** (hyldo) (51. *a*), *kindness.* [Cf. Ger. *Huld.*]
**hyngran** (115. *b*; 190), *hunger.*
**hȳran**, see **hīeran.**
**hyre**, see **hiere.**
**hyrned-nębb** (58, 17), *horny-beaked.*
**hyrst** (51. *b*), *ornament.*

## I.

**ic** (81).

**īdel** (57), *empty, void*, Lat. *inanis* (Auth. Vers. 'without form'). [Ger. *eitel;* cf. Shak., *Oth.* 1. 3. 140, 'deserts idle.']

**īdelnes** (51. 5), *idleness, indolence.*

**ides** (51. *b*), *maid, nymph, woman.* [From the Norse mythology we learn that this Germanic word signified 'demi-goddess,' or perhaps 'female guardian-angel,' as well as 'maid'; it was applied to giantesses and Norns, to heroic women, resembling the Valkyries, such as Brunhild and Gudrun, and to goddesses, such as Freyja. Cf. the remarks of Tacitus, *Germania* 8: "They even believe that the sex has a certain sanctity and prescience, and they do not despise their counsels, or make light of their answers. In Vespasian's days we saw Veleda, long regarded by many as a divinity."]

**īe**, see **ēa**.

**īecan** (ȳcan) (113, 33), *augment, aggravate.* [< **ēac**.]

**ielde** (ælde) (44. 4), plur. *men.*

**ieldra**, see **eald**.

**ieldu** (51. *a*; 19; 17), *age.* [Mod. Eng. *eld;* see Chaucer, *K. T.* 1589.]

**ielfete** (53. 1), *swan.*

**ierfe** (48), *inheritance.*

**ierfe-land** (47), *heritable land, inheritance.*

**ierman** (113), *afflict.* [< **earm**, by 16.]

**iermðu** (51. *a*), *poverty.* [< **earm**; see 144.]

**iernan** (III. 104, 31), *run; revolve.*

**ierre** (eorre) (48), *wrath.*

**ierre** (59), *wrathful.*

**ierð** (51. *b*), *field of corn, crop.*

**ierðling** (43, 143), *plowman, husbandman, farmer.*

**īeð**, see **ēaðe**.

**īg-land** (47), *island.*

**ilca** (86), *same.* [Cf. Chaucer, *Prol.* 64.]

**in**, prep., *in; into; by; through.*

**in**, adv., *in.*

**in-beran** (IV. 105), *carry in.*

**in-gān** (141), *enter.*

**in-gangan** (R. 109), *enter.*

**in-ge-bringan** (114), *bring in.*

**innan**, *within.*

**inne** (69), *within, inside.*

**in-segel** (47), *seal.* [Borrowed from Lat. *sigillum*, ca. A.D. 500; the form *sigil* is earlier, ca. 400.]

**in-sittan** (V. 106), *sit within.*

**intinga** (53), *cause; account.*

**in-tō**, *into.*

**in-weardlice** (70), *fervently, ardently.*

**īsern** (47), *iron.* [Ger. *Eisen.*]

**īsern** (57), *iron.*

**īu** (see **gīo**), *of old, formerly.*

## L.

**lā**, *indeed, O.*

**lāc** (47), *present, gift.*

**lācan** (R. 110), *bound, leap, toss; sail.*

**lād** (51. *b*), *way, journey.*

**lǣce-cræft** (43), *remedy.* [Mod. Eng. *leechcraft;* cf. Spenser, *F. Q.* 3. 3. 18.]

**lǣdan** (113), *lead, bring, take; carry; produce.* [Ger. *leiten.*]

**Læden** (47), *Latin.*

**lǣran** (113, 17), *teach, direct.*

**lǣring-mǣden** (47), *pupil.*

**lǣs** (**51.** *b*, but irregular; the termination **-we** as in **beadu**, **51.** *a*), *pasture.* [Archaic Mod. Eng. *leasow.*]

**lǣs, lǣs(es)t**, see **lȳtel**, and **ðȳ-lǣs-ðe.**

**lǣstan** (**113**), *carry out, perform, do.* [Ger. *leisten*, Mod. Eng. *last.*]

**Lǣstinga ēa**, *Lastingham* (near Whitby).

**lǣtan** (R. **110**), *let, allow.* [Ger. *lassen.*]

**lǣððu** (**51.** *a*), *affliction.* [< **lāð**, by **16.**]

**lāf** (**51.** *b*), *remnant;* **tō lāfe**, *left.*

**lago-**, see **lagu-.**

**lagu** (**45**), *ocean, sea.*

**lagu-fæsten** (**47**), *ocean, deep.*

**lagu-flōd** (lago-) (**43**), *sea-flood.*

**lagu-lād** (lago-) (**51.** *b*), *ocean-journey.*

**lagu-strēam** (**43**), *ocean-stream.*

**lām** (**43**), *dust* (lit. *loam*). [Ger. *Lehm;* more remotely cognate (ablaut relation) with Lat. *limus.*]

**lamb** (**50**), *lamb.*

**land** (**47, 24**), *land, country;* **hēr on lande**, *in this country.* [Ger. *Land*, and cf. *hier zu Lande.*]

**land-būend** (lǫnd-) (**43.** 6), *dweller in the land.*

**land-ge-mǣre** (**48**), *border.*

**land-scearu** (**51.** *a*), *land.*

**lang** (**58, 65**), *long.* [Ger. *lang.*]

**lange** (**70, 77**), *long* (of time).

**lang-sweored** (**57**), *long-necked.* [Cf. Koch, *Gram.* III. 71; Mätzner, I. 470.]

**lār** (**51.** *b*), *study; instruction, teaching; counsel, guidance.* [Ger. *Lehre*, Mod. Eng. *lore.*]

**lārēow** (**43**), *teacher, master; learned man.* [< **lār** + **ðēow.**]

**lāst** (**43**), *track, footprint.* [Mod. Eng. *last* (for shoes), Ger. *Leist-e*(*n*).]

**lāttēowdōm** (**43, 14**), *guidance.* [Cf. the etymology of **lārēow.**]

**lāð** (**58**), *hostile; hateful.*

**laðian** (**118**), *summon.* [Ger. (*ein*)*laden.*]

**lēad** (**47**), *lead.* [Ger. *Lot.*]

**lēaf** (**51.** *b*), *leave, permission.* [Ger. (*Ur*)*laub*, (*Er*)*laub*(*niss*).]

**lēaf** (**47**), *leaf.* [Ger. *Laub.*]

**leahtor** (**43**), *sin, iniquity.*

**lēan** (**43**), *reward, recompense.* [Ger. *Lohn.*]

**lęcgean** (**115**, note), *place, put, set.* [From the second stem (**92**) of **licgan**, by **16**; Ger. *legen*, Mod. Eng. *lay.*]

**lęnctenlic** (**57**), *vernal.*

**lęncten-tīd** (**51.** 1), *spring.* [Cf. Ger. *Lenz*, Mod. Eng. *Lent.*]

**lęng**, see **lange.**

**lęngra**, see **lang.**

**lęngu** (**51.** *a*), *length.*

**lēo** (Lat.), *lion.*

**lēoda** (lēode) (**44.** 4), plur., *people.* [Ger. *Leute.*]

**lēod-mearc** (**51.** *b*), *region.* [Cf. Mod. Eng. *margrave, Marches, marquis.*]

**lēof** (**58, 64, 165**), *dear, well-beloved;* sb. *sir, master;* comp. *dearer, preferable.* [Ger. *lieb*, Mod. Eng. *lief, lieve;* cf. Spenser, *F. Q.* 3. 2. 33.]

**leofa**, see **libban.**

**lēofwęnde** (**59**), *friendly;* **lēofwęndum**, *ardently, fervently.*

**lēoht** (**47**), *light.* [Ger. *Licht.*]

**lēoht** (**58**), *bright, radiant.* [Ger. *licht.*]

**lēoht-fruma** (53), *author of light;* for **līfes lēohtfruma** cf. Jn. 8. 12, Acts 3. 15. [Cf. **fruma**.]
**lēoma** (53), *light, radiance, brightness.*
**leomu**, see **lim**.
**leornian** (118), *learn.* [Ger. *lernen.*]
**leornung** (51. 3), *study.* [Mod. Eng. *learning.*]
**lēoð** (47), *poetry, verse.* [Ger. *Lied.*]
**lēt**, see **lǣtan**.
**libban** (122), *live.* [Ger. *leben.*]
**licgan** (V. 106), *lie; rest.* [Ger. *liegen.*]
**līc-hama** (53), *body.* [**hama** = *shape, cover;* cf. Ger. *Leichnam.*]
**līc-ham-lēas** (58, 146), *bodiless, incorporeal.*
**līc-hamlic** (57), *bodily.*
**līcian** (118 ; 164. *k*), *please.* [Mod. Eng. *like;* cf. Spenser, *F. Q.* 2. 7. 27.]
**lid** (47), *vessel, craft, bark.* [Cf. **līðan**.]
**lid-weard** (43), *shipmaster.*
**lid-wērig** (57), *weary with voyaging.*
**līefan** (113), *allow, permit.* [< **lēaf**; Ger. *(er)lauben.*]
**līeg** (43), *thunderbolt, levin.*
**līeget** (47. 7), *lightning.*
**līehting** (51. 3), *lighting, illumination.* [< **lēoht**, by 16.]
**līf** (47), *life.* [Ger. *Leib.*]
**lifde, lifgende**, see **libban**.
**līflic** (57), *of life.* [Ger. *leiblich;* cf. Spenser, *F. Q.* 2. 7. 20.]
**lim** (47, 20), *limb, bough, branch.*
**lind** (51. *b*), *linden shield, shield.*
**lind-wīgend** (-wiggend) (43. 6), *shield-warrior.*
**liss** (51. *b*), *gentleness, tenderness;* (**mid**) **lissum**, *gently, tenderly.*
**līðan** (I. 102), *set out; sail, cruise.*
**līðe** (59, 30), *good, obliging, friendly; gentle, mild.* [Ger. *(ge)lind;* cf. Spenser, *Virgil's Gnat* 221.]
**līðe** (70), *gently.*
**loc** (47), *lock.*
**locen**, see **lūcan**.
**lōcian** (118), *look.*
**lof** (43), *honor, praise;* **in lofe**, *praising.* [Ger. *Lob.*]
**loft** (47), *air, sky.*
**lǫnd-**, see **land-**.
**lor** (47), *destruction;* **tō lore weorðan**, *perish.*
**lūcan** (II. 103), *link? weave? close?*
**lufe** (53. 1), *love.* [*adore.*
**lufian** (118, 119), *love; worship,*
**lufiend** (43. 6), *lover.*
**lufiendlic** (57), *loving.*
**luflice** (70), *dear.*
**lufu** (51. *a*; 53. 3; 24), *love.*
**lungre**, *speedily.*
**lust** (43), *joy, desire, longing.* [Ger. *Lust;* cf. Spenser, *F. Q.* 4. 4. 44.]
**lyfdon**, see **libban**.
**lyft** (47 ; 51. *b*), *air;* **under lyfte**, cf. our 'under the sun.' [Cf. Ger. *Luft.*]
**lyre** (44), *loss.* [Stem formed from that of the third stem of **lēosan**, *lose*, by 16.]
**lystan** (113), *list, like, cause enjoyment.* [< **lust**, by 16; cf. Spenser, *F. Q.* 2. 7. 18, 19.]
**lȳt** (58), (*but*) *few.*
**lȳt**, adv., (*but*) *little.*
**lȳtel** (57, 66), *little;* comp. *less(er) smaller;* superl. *least.*
**lȳt-hwōn** (58), (*but*) *few.*

## M.

**mā** (77), *more, further; rather.*

**mā-cræftig** (57), *very expert? expert in seamanship?* [In favor of the latter may be quoted Grimm's note in his edition of *Andreas und Elene*, p. 103: "257. mācräftig, und nochmals A. 472 der comparativ mācräftigra. daher es selbst unpassend aus dem comparativ mā, magis gedeutet würde, der sonst nirgends und in keinem andern dialect bei zusammensetzungen verstärkt. Auch scheint der sinn etwas bestimmteres zu fordern, ein des meeres, der schiffahrt kundig; ich vermute ein altes subst. mā, synonym und wurzel von mere, mācräftig = merecräftig."]

**mādm**, see **māðm**.

**mæcg**, see **męcg**.

**mæden** (47, 38, 28), *girl, maiden, damsel.*

**mæg**, see **mugan**.

**mægen** (47. 1), *power, strength; virtue; force, band.* [Eng. *main.*]

**mægen-ēacen** (57), *abundant in might, powerful.*

**mægen-ðrymm** (43), *glory, majesty.*

**mægen-ðrymnes** (51. 5), *glory, majesty.*

**mægð** (51. *b*), *tribe, nation, province.*

**mægð** (52), *maid, maiden.* [Ger. *Magd.*]

**mægð-hād** (43, 143), *virginity.*

**mæg-wlite** (44), *appearance, aspect.* [Cf. **andwlita.**]

**mælan** (113), *speak.*

**mære** (59), *renowned; splendid; great.*

**mærðu** (51. *a*), *achievement, famous exploit.* [Cf. **mære.**]

**mæsling** (47), *brass.*

**mæsse-prēost** (43), *priest.* [**mæsse** < Lat. *missa, mass;* **prēost** < *presbyter*, from what Greek word?]

**mæst** (43), *mast.*

**mæst**, see **micel.**

**męð** (51. *b*), *ability, capacity.*

**męðel-hēgende** (meðel-) (61), *speech-uttering, council-attending.*

**mæw** (43), *gull, sea-mew.* [Ger. *Möwe.*]

**magan**, see **mugan.**

**magu-ðegn** (43), *vassal, retainer.*

**man** (89. *e*), *one.*

**mān-full** (58. 2), *wicked, evil.*

**mangere** (44, 143), *merchant.* [Mod. Eng. *-monger.*]

**manian** (118), *admonish.*

**manig** (57), *many.*

**manig-feald** (58, 146), *manifold.*

**mann** (mǫnn) (46, 35, 17), *man.* [Ger. *Mann;* cf. Tacitus, *Germania*, Ch. II., and the proper name Manu.]

**manna** (53; cf. 53. 3), *man.*

**mann-cynn** (man-) (47), *mankind.*

**mān-scyld** (-scild) (51. *b*), *sin, iniquity.*

**māra**, see **micel.**

**marman-stān** (43), *marble.*

**māðm** (43), *treasure, jewel.*

**meahte**, see **mugan.**

**meahtig**, see **mihtig.**

**męcg** (mæcg) (43), *disciple* (lit. *man*).

**mēd** (51. *b*), *meed, reward.* [Cf. **meorð.**]

**med-micel** (57), *short.*
**medome** (meodume) (59), *little, least.*
**medu-burg** (medo-) (52), *mead-city.* [Cf. Ger. *Met.*]
**medu-wērig** (medo-) (57), *mead-weary, drunken with mead.*
**męnigu** (51. *a*), *company, number.* [Ger. *Menge;* cf. Spenser, *F. Q.* 1. 12. 9.]
**męnnisc** (57, 146), *human.* [< **mann**, by 16; cf. Ger. *Mensch.*]
**meodume**, see **medome.**
**meorð** (51. *b*), *reward.* [Cf. **mēd.**]
**meotud** (43), *creator.* [As it were, the 'Meter,' 'Apportioner,' 'Fixer of Bounds.']
**męre** (44), *mere, sea.* [Ger. *Meer;* cf. Mod. Eng. *mermaid.*]
**męre-bāt** (43), *sea-boat, vessel.*
**męre-faroð** (43), *sea-waves (sea-voyage ?).*
**meregreote** (53), *pearl.*
**męre-līðend** (43. 6) *seafarer.*
**męre-strēam** (43), *ocean-stream.*
**męre-swīn** (47), *dolphin.*
**męre-ðissa** (-ðyssa) (53), *ocean-scourer, rusher through the deep.*
**męrgen** (43), *morning.*
**mētan** (113), *meet; find; find out.*
**męte** (44), *food.* [Mod. Eng. *meat.*]
**mēðe** (59), *fatigued, weary.* [Ger. *müde.*]
**meðel-**, see **mæðel-.**
**micel** (mycel) (57), *much, great, large; long; loud.* [Cf. Scotch *mickle*, Eng. *much*, and Spenser, *Shep. Cal., Feb.* 109.]
**miclum** (myclum) (72), *greatly.*
**mid** (57; 166. 1), *middle.*
**mid** (168; 172. 1; 177), *with;* **mid ealle** (175), *completely.*
**middan-geard** (43), *world.* [Cf Cleasby and Vigfusson's *Icelandic-English Dictionary*, s.v. *miðr-garðr:* "The earth (Miðgarð), the abode of men, is seated in the middle of the universe, bordered by mountains and surrounded by the great sea (úthaf); on the other side of this sea is the Út-garð (*outyard*), the abode of giants; the Miðgarð is defended by the 'yard' or 'burgh' As-garð (*the burgh of the gods*), lying in the middle (the heaven being conceived as rising above the earth). Thus the earth and mankind are represented as a stronghold besieged by the powers of evil from without, defended by the gods from above and from within."]
**mid-ðām-ðe**, *when.*
**mid-ðȳ**, *when, while.*
**mid-ðȳ ðe**, *when, while.*
**miht** (51. 1), *power, might.* [Ger. *Macht.*]
**miht**, see **mugan.**
**mihtig** (57), *mighty.* [Ger. *mächtig.*]
**mild-heortnes** (51. 5), *mercy, compassion, loving-kindness.*
**milts** (51. 5), plur. as sing., *mercy, loving-kindness.* [< **mild**, *mild*, by 33.]
**miltsian** (mildsian) (118), *have mercy upon.*
**mīn** (83, 81), *my.*
**mis-** (142).
**mislic** (57), *various.*
**mislice** (70), *variously, in different ways;* **mislice geblēod**, *variegated.*

**mis-līcian** (118), *displease.*
**missenlic** (57), *various* (*kinds of*).
**mis-ðyncean** (114; 164. *l*), *misjudge;* **ðē misðyncð**, Lat. *male suspicaris.* [Cf. Milton, *P. L.* 9. 289, Shak., *3 Hen. VI.* 2. 5. 108, *Ant. and Cleop.* 5. 2. 176.]
**mōd** (47, 146), *heart, soul, mind; courage.* [Ger. *Mut.*]
**mōd-ge-ðanc** (43), *thought of the heart, counsel.* [Cf. Ger. *Gedanke.*]
**mōdig** (57), *noble-minded, magnanimous, courageous.* [Ger. *mutig.*]
**mōdiglīc** (57), *high-souled.*
**mōdignes** (51. 5), *pride, arrogance.*
**mōdor** (52. 2), *mother.* [Ger. *Mutter*, Lat. *mater.*]
**mōna** (53), *moon.* [Cf. Ger. *Mond*, where *d* is a late addition.]
**mōnað** (43. 4. *a*), *month.* [Ger. *Monat.*]
**mǫn(n)**, see **man(n)**.
**morgen** (43), *morning.* [Ger. *Morgen*, Mod. Eng. *morn.*]
**morgen-giefu** (51. *a*), *dowry, marriage portion.*
**morðor** (47), *deadly injury.* [Mod. Eng. *murder.*]
**mōtan** (137), *may.* [Cf. Spenser, *F. Q.* 1. 9. 27.]
**mugan** (135), *can, be able.*
**mund** (51. 5), *hand.*
**munt** (43), *mountain.* [Lat. *mont(em).*]
**munuc** (43), *monk.* [Ger. *Mönch.*]
**murcnung** (51. *b*; 144), *sorrow, unhappiness, lamentation.*
**muscule** (Lat.), *mussel.*
**mycel**, see **micel**.
**myclum**, see **miclum**.
**myngian** (118), *admonish, ad jure.*
**mynian** (118), *direct, inspire.*
**mynster** (47), *monastery.*

## N.

**nā** (nō), *not even, by no means, not at all; no.*
**nabban** (121, 29), *have not.*
**naca** (53), *bark.* [Ger. *Nachen.*]
**nacod** (57), *naked; clothed in a tunic only* (p. 168).
**nǣdl** (51. *b*), *needle.* [Ger. *Nadel.*]
**nǣdre, næddre** (53. 1), *serpent.*
**nǣfre**, *never.*
**nǣnig** (89. *a*), *no one.*
**nære, nǣron, nǣs**, see **138**.
**nāht** (nōht) (47; 89. *b*; 27), *naught, nothing; not.*
**nā-hwǣr**, *nowhere.*
**nā-hwider**, *nowhither.*
**nālæs** (nālas), *not at all.*
**nama** (53, 24), *name.* [Ger. *Namen.*]
**nān** (89. *a*; 154. *b*), *no* (*one*).
**nāt**, see **126**.
**nātes-hwōn**, *not at all.*
**ne** (ni), *not.*
**nē**, *nor;* **nē . . . nē** (202), *neither . . . nor.*
**nēah** (58, 67, 60), *nigh, near;* **æt nīehstan**, *at length, finally.*
**nēah**, adv., *near, nigh at hand;* superl. *nearly.*
**nēah** (nēh), prep., *near.*
**nēa-lǣcan** (113), *approach.*
**nearunes** (nearo-) (51. 5), *anguish, agony.*
**nearu** (51. *a*), *difficulty;* **nearu ðrōwian**, *be in straits.* [Cf. Mod. Eng. *narrow.*]

**nēat** (47), *cattle.* [Cf. Mod. Eng. 'neatherd,' 'neat's-foot oil,' 'neat cattle.' Shakespeare has (*Wint. T.* 1. 2. 124): 'The steer, the heifer, and the calf Are all called *neat*; *Cymb.* 1. 1. 148: 'Would I were A *neatherd's* daughter.']

**nefne**, *except.*

**nēh**, see **nēah**, prep.

**nellan** (139), *will not.* [See Chaucer, *Prol.* 550, Spenser, *F. Q.* 1. 6. 17; 1. 9. 15, Shak., *Haml.* 5. 1. 19.]

**nęmnan** (115. *b*), *mean* (lit. *name*).

**nēosian** (nēosan) (118; 156. *m*), *seek, look for.*

**nēowolnes** (51. 5), *abyss, deep.* [Orig. from **nihol-**, ***nihold-**, ***nihald-**, *sloping.*]

**nęriend** (nęregend) (43. 6), *Savior.*

**nīed** (51. *b*), *need, necessity; use.*

**nīed-faru** (nēid-) (51. *a*), *needful journey.*

**nīed-ðearflic** (57), *needful, necessary.*

**nīehst**, see **nēah**, adv.

**nīehsta**, see **nēah**, adj.

**nīeten** (47. 1), *creature, beast, cattle.* [< **nēat**, by 16.]

**nīeten-cynn** (47), *kind of cattle.*

**niht** (52), *night.*

**nihtes** (74), *by night.*

**niht-lang** (58), *night-long, of a night, one night.*

**nihtlic** (57), *night.*

**niman** (IV. 105), *take; seize; capture, catch; pluck up.* [Ger. *nehmen*; cf. a character in Shak., *M. W.*]

**nis**, see 138.

**nið** (43), *man.*

**niðerlic** (57), *low-lying.* [Cf. Ger. *nieder.*]

**nīð-hęte** (44), *malignant foe.*

**nīð-hycgende** (61), *evil-scheming.*

**nīð-plega** (53), *hostile play, martial game.*

**nō**, see **nā**.

**nōht**, see **nāht**.

**noldon**, see **nellan**.

**norð** (69), *northward.*

**norðan**, *from the north.*

**norð-dæl** (43), *northern part, north.*

**notian** (118; 164. *o*), *use.*

**nū**, *now; yet.*

**nyste**, see **nytan**.

**nytan** (126), *know not.* [See Chaucer, *Prol.* 284.]

## O.

**of-** (142).

**of**, *of; from; out of; by.*

**ofen** (43), *oven.*

**ofer**, *over; across; upon; in.*

**ofer-** (142). [Ger. *über-.*]

**ofer-brædan** (113), *suffuse.*

**ofer-cuman** (IV. 105), *overcome, overthrow.*

**ofer-gān** (141), *overcome, come upon.*

**ofer-hygd** (51. *b*), *pride, arrogance;* **mid oferhygdum**, *arrogantly, haughtily, superciliously.*

**ofer-rædan** (113), *read through.*

**ofer-swīðan** (113), *overcome, conquer.*

**ofer-ðęccean** (114), *cover over.*

**ofer-winnan** (III. 104), *conquer, subdue, overthrow.*

**ofer-wrēon** (I. 102), *cover over.*

**ofestlīce** (ofost-, ofst-) (70), *quickly, forthwith.*

**ofet** (47), *fruit.* (Ger. *Obst*, properly *Obs.*]
**ofostlīce**, see **ofestlīce.**
**of-slēan** (VI. 107), *slay, kill.*
**of-stīgan** (I. 102), *descend.*
**ofstlīce**, see **ofestlīce.**
**oft**, *often, frequently.*
**of-tredan** (V. 106), *tread down, trample upon.* [Ger. *abtreten.*]
**of-ðyncean** (114), *offend, grieve, vex.*
**ōht**, see **āht.**
**olfend** (43), *camel.* [< Lat. *elephantem?*]
**on**, *on, upon; in; into; with;* **on ān**, see **ān.**
**on-** (142).
**on-ælan** (113), *inflame.*
**on-cierran** (-cyrran) (113), *turn.*
**on-cnāwan** (R. 109), *know; perceive; recognize; acknowledge.*
**on-cweðan** (V. 106), *address, call unto.*
**ǫnd**(-), see **and**(-).
**on-drædan** (R. 110; 159. *a*), *fear.*
**ōnettan** (113), *hasten, hurry.*
**on-fangennes** (51. 5), *reception.*
**on-fōn** (R. 110; 164. *j*), *receive, accept.*
**on-gēan**, adv., *again, back.*
**on-gēan**, prep., *against; toward; opposite.* [Cf. Ger. *entgegen*, for *engegen.*]
**on-ge-slēan** (VI. 107), *slay.*
**on-gierwan** (113), *divest, strip.* [Cf. **geare.**]
**on-gietan** (-gitan) (V. 106, 18), *perceive, learn, understand.* [Cf. **andgiet.**]
**ongin**, see **anginn.**
**on-ginnan** (III. 104), *begin.*
**ongitan**, see **ongietan.**
**on-hieldan** (-hældan) (113), *intend.*
**on-hrēosan** (II. 103), *fall upon.*
**on-hrēran** (113), *stir up, agitate.*
**on-innan**, *into, among.*
**onlīc**, see **anlīc.**
**on-līehtan** (113), *light, illuminate.* [< **lēoht**, by 16.]
**on-līesan** (113), *release.*
**on-lūcan** (II. 103), *unlock.*
**on-sęndan** (113), *send.*
**on-sęttan** (113), *lay.*
**on-spannan** (R. 109), *open.*
**on-styrian** (116), *move.*
**on-tȳnan** (113), *open.* [< **tūn**, by 16.]
**on-wacan** (VI. 107), *awake.*
**on-weg**, *away.*
**on-windan** (III. 104), *retreat.* [Cf. Ger. *entwinden.*]
**on-winnan** (III. 104), *assail.*
**on-wrīðan** (I. 102), *uncover, disclose.*
**on-wunian** (118), *inhabit.*
**open** (57), *open.* [Ger. *offen.*]
**ōr** (47), *beginning.*
**or-** (142).
**ōra** (53), *vein? ore?*
**ōreta**, see **ōretta.**
**ōret-męcg** (-mæcg) (43), *warrior.*
**ōretta** (53), *combatant.*
**orf** (47), *cattle.*
**or-feorme** (59), *deprived, abandoned, forsaken.*
**organa** (Lat.), plur., *organs.*
**or-giete** (-gete) (59), *manifest.*
**or-mæte** (59), *boundless; enormous.*
**or-mōdnes** (51. 5), *despair, desperation.*
**oroð** (47. 6), *breath.*
**ort-geard** (43), *garden* (*orchard?*).
**orðian** (118), *breathe.* [< **oroð.**]
**ōð**, *until.*
**ōð-** (142).

**ōðer** (**80**; **89.** *a*; **24**), *other; second; rest of.*
**ōð-ðæt**, *until.*
**oððe** (æðða), *or.*
**ōð-ðringan** (III. **104**), *wrest away.*

P.

**pæll** (**43**), *purple garment.*
**pard** (Lat.), *panther.*
**pęning** (**43**), *penny* (but this does not represent the Latin, which has *sestertia*, not *sestertios*; the latter would represent four cents each, the former about forty-three dollars each). [Cf. Ger. *Pfand.*]
**Piht** (**43**), *Pict.*
**plega** (**53**), *game, play.*
**plegian** (**118**), *play; act.*
**pliht** (**43**), *peril, risk.* [Ger. *Pflicht*, Mod. Eng. *plight.*]
**pund** (**47**), *pound*, Lat. *talentum, pondus.* [< Lat. *pondus.*]
**purpre** (**53.** 1), *purple garment.* [< Lat. *purpura.*]

R.

**racian** (**118**; **164.** *i*), *rule, govern, sway.*
**rǣd** (**43**), *counsel, advice; order(s); benefit.* [Ger. *Rat*; archaic Mod. Eng. *rede*; cf. Shak., *Haml.* 1. 3. 51.]
**rǣdan** (**113**), *read.* [Cf. Ger. *(er)raten.*]
**rǣd-snottor** (**57**), *discreet in counsel.*
**rǣs-bora** (**53**), *counselor.*
**rǣswa** (**53**), *chief, leader.*
**rāh-dēor** (**47**), *roebuck.*
**rand** (rǫnd) (**43**), *shield.*
**rand-wīgend** (-wiggend) (**43.** 6), *shield-warrior.*
**rēad** (**58**), *red.* [Ger. *rot.*]
**rēaf** (**47**), *raiment, apparel.* [Ger. *Raub*, Mod. Eng. *robe*, through Fr. *robe*; cf. Ital. *roba.*]
**rēaf-lāc** (**47**), *rapine, plunder.*
**ręccean** (**114**), *relate, narrate; expound.*
**rēce-lēasian** (**118**, **156**), *despise.*
**recene**, *straightway.*
**regn** (rēn) (**43**), *rain; shower.* [Ger. *Regen.*]
**regollic** (**57**), *regular.* [< Lat. *regula*; cf. Ger. *regel(recht).*]
**rēn**, see **regn.**
**rēocan** (II. **103**), *reek.* [Ger. *riechen.*]
**reord-berend** (**43.** 6), *man gifted with speech* (lit. *speech-bearer*).
**reordian** (-igan) (**118**), *speak.*
**ręst** (**51.** *b*), *couch, bed.* [Cf. Ger. *Rast.*]
**ręstan** (**113**), *rest.*
**rēðe** (**59**), *fierce, violent.*
**rēðnes** (**51.** 5), *violence.*
**ribb** (**47**), *rib.*
**rīce** (**48.** 1), *kingdom.* [Ger. *Reich*, Mod. Eng. *(Frede)rick, (Hen)ry, (bishop)ric*; cf. Lat. *rex.*]
**rīce** (**59**), *powerful, noble.* [Ger. *reich*, Mod. Eng. *rich.*]
**rīcsian** (**118**), *bear rule, have dominion.* [< **rīce.**]
**riht** (**47**), *right.* [Ger. *Recht.*]
**riht** (**58**), *right; direct.* [Ger. *recht.*]
**rihtlice** (**70**), *accurately, correctly.*
**riht-wīs** (**58**, **146**), *righteous.*
**riht-wīsnes** (**51.** 5), *righteousness.*
**rīnan** (**113**, **161**), *rain.*
**rinc** (**43**), *warrior, man.*
**rīpe** (**59**), *ripe.* [Ger. *reif.*]

**rōd** (51. *b*), *cross.* [Ger. *Rute*, Mod. Eng. *rod, rood;* cf. *rood-loft, Holyrood, Haml.* 3. 4. 14.]
**rodor** (43), *firmament, heaven.*
**rōf** (59), *stout.*
**Romanisc** (57, 146), *Roman.*
**Romane** (Lat.), plur., *Romans.*
**rǫnd**, see **rand.**
**rōse** (53. 1), *rose.* [Lat. *rosa.*]
**rōwan** (R. 109), *row.*
**rōwend** (43. 6), *rower.*
**rōwnes** (51. 5), *rowing.*
**rudu** (51. *a*), *redness.*
**rūm** (43), *room, opportunity.* [Ger. *Raum.*]
**rūwe** (53. 1), *tapestry?*

## S.

**sācerd** (51. *b*), *priestess.* [< Lat. *sacerdos.*]
**sǣ** (43; 51. *b*), *sea.* [Ger. *See;* cf. note, p. 324.]
**sǣ-bāt** (43), *sea-boat, vessel.*
**sǣ-beorg** (43), *sea-cliff.*
**sǣd** (47), *seed.* [Ger. *Saat.*]
**sǣd-tīma** (53), *seedtime.*
**sǣ-flota** (53), *sea-floater.*
**sǣ-hęngest** (43), *sea-steed.* [Cf. Ger. *Hengst*, Eng. *Hengist.*]
**sǣ-holm** (43), *sea (swelling sea?).*
**sǣ-lād** (51. *b*), *sea-voyage.*
**sǣleoda**, see **sǣlida.**
**sǣlic** (57), *marine, of the sea.*
**sǣ-lida** (-leoda) (53), *seaman, sailor, mariner.* [Cf. **līðan.**]
**sǣ-mearh** (43), *sea-steed.* [Cf. Jebb, *Classical Greek Poetry*, pp. 91–92: "Homer speaks of 'swift ships, which are the horses of the sea for men'; Hesiod would not have scrupled to use the phrase 'horses of the sea' as a substitute for the word 'ships,' leaving his meaning to be guessed."]
**sǣ-wērig** (57), *sea-weary.*
**sǣ-wiht** (51. *b*), *sea-animal.*
**salowig-pād** (58), *dark-coated.*
**samninga** (70), *all at once, suddenly.* [Cf. **sęmninga.**]
**samod** (sǫmod), *together.*
**sand** (47), *sand.* [Ger. *Sand.*]
**sand-hlið** (47, 20), *sand-hill.*
**sang** (43), *song.* [Ger. *(Ge)sang.*]
**sār** (47), *sorrow.*
**sār** (58), *grievous, sore.* [Cf. Ger. *sehr, (ver)sehren.*]
**sār-cwide** (44), *taunt, gibe, raillery, sarcasm.*
**sārlic** (57), *doleful.*
**sārlice** (70), *lamentably, mournfully.*
**sārnes** (51. *b*), *grief, unhappiness.*
**sāw(o)l** (51. 4), *soul; life.* [Ger. *Seele.*]
**sāwol-lēas** (58, 146), *soulless.*
**sceadu** (51. *a*; 18), *shadow.* [Cf. Ger. *Schatten.*]
**sceal**, see **sculan.**
**scealc** (43, 18), *man.*
**sceam-fæst** (58, 18), *modest.* [Mod. Eng. *shamefast;* see Spenser, *F. Q.* 5. 5. 25.]
**sceamu** (51. *a*; 18), *shame.* [Ger. *Scham.*]
**scēap** (47, 18), *sheep.* [Ger. *Schaf.*]
**scēap-hierde** (44), *shepherd.* [Ger. *Schafhirt.*]
**scearpe** (70, 18), *sharp.* [Ger. *scharf.*]
**scēat** (43), *corner, region, quarter.* [Ger. *Schooss;* in the sense of Lat. *angulus, plaga*, as Isa. 11. 12, Rev. 7. 1.]
**sceatt** (43, 18), *coin.* [Ger. *Schatz.*]

**scēaþ** (51. *b*; 18), *sheath.* [Ger. *Scheide.*]
**sceaða** (53, 18), *enemy.* [Cf. Ger. *Schade*, *Schädiger*, Mod. Eng. *scathe.*]
**scēawian** (118), *watch; behold, see.* [Ger. *schauen*, Mod. Eng. *show* (with changed meaning).]
**scęncan** (113), *pour out, give to drink.* [Ger. (*ein*)*schenken*, archaic Mod. Eng. *skink;* cf. Shak., *1 Hen. IV.* 2. 4. 26.]
**sceolde**, see **sculan**.
**scēor** (18), see **scūr**.
**sceort** (58, 65, 18), *short.*
**scēotend** (43. 6), *shooter, marksman.*
**scēo-wyrhta** (53, 18), *shoemaker.*
**sciccels** (43), *cloak, mantle.*
**scield** (scild) (43, 18), *shield.*
**scield-burh** (scild-) (52, 28), *testudo, roof of shields, shield-roofed phalanx.*
**scīene** (scȳne) (59, 18), *beautiful.* [Ger. *schön;* cf. Chaucer, *K. T.* 210, Spenser, *F. Q.* 2. 1. 10.]
**scieppan** (VI. 107, 18), *create.* [Ger. *schöpfen.*]
**scieppend** (scippend, scyppend) (43. 6; 18), *creator.*
**scieran** (IV. 105, 18), *cut, cleave.* [Ger. *scheren*, Mod. Eng. *shear.*]
**sciertra**, see **sceort**.
**scīete** (53. 1), *sheet, linen cloth.* [< **scēat**.]
**scild**, see **scield**.
**scīnan** (I. 102), *shine.* [Ger. *scheinen.*]
**scip** (47), *ship.* [Ger. *Schiff.*]
**scip-fērend** (43. 6; 147), *sailor.*
**scip-hęre** (44. 2; 147), *naval force, fleet.*
**scippend**, see **scieppend**.
**scip-weard** (43), *shipmaster.*
**scīr** (58), *bright, gleaming.* [Cf. Spenser, *F. Q.* 3. 2. 44, Shak., *Rich. II.* 5. 3. 61.]
**scīre** (70), *dazzlingly, radiantly.*
**scīr-mǣled** (57), *splendidly marked, splendidly decorated.*
**scop** (43), *minstrel.*
**Scottas** (43), plur., *Scots.*
**scrid** (57), *fleet?* (Grimm, *rigged*).
**scrūd** (47), *clothing, raiment, attire.* [Mod. Eng. *shroud.*]
**scrȳdan** (113), *clothe, array.*
**scucca** (53), *the devil, Satan.*
**scūfan** (II. 103), *thrust.*
**sculan** (133, 188), *ought, must; shall.* [Cf. Ger. *sollen.*]
**scūr** (scēor) (43, 18), *storm; shower.* [Ger. *Schauer.*]
**scȳne**, see **scīene**.
**scyppend**, see **scieppend**.
**se** (84; 87; 154. *b*).
**sealm** (43), *psalm.* [< Lat. *psalmus.*]
**sealt-sēaþ** (43), *salt-spring.*
**sēamere** (44. 1; 143), *tailor.* [Cf. Ger. *Saum*, Mod. Eng. *seam.*]
**searu** (49), *device, contrivance.*
**searu-ðancol** (searo-ðǫncol) (57), *discerning, sagacious.*
**sēcean** (sēcan) (114), *seek; seek out; visit.* [Ger. *suchen.*]
**sęcg** (43), *man, hero.*
**sęcgean** (sęcgan) (123, 36), *say; speak; tell.*
**sedl**, see **setl**.
**segl** (47?), *sail.* [Ger. *Segel.*]
**seld-cūþ** (58), *strange, novel, out of the way.* [Cf. *F. Q.* 4. 8. 14.]
**sęlen** (51. *b*), *bounty, bestowal.*
**self** (seolf, sylf) (86), (*my, him*) *self; own; same; very.* [Ger. *selb*(*er*).]
**sęllan** (syllan) (114, 36), *give; give to be; sell.*

**sēlest** (sēlost) (**66**), *best.*
**sellic** (syllīc) (**57**), *strange, queer, remarkable.* [< **seldīc.**]
**sēlost** (**76**), *best.*
**sēlra** (**53, 66**), *better.*
**sęmninga** (**70**), *suddenly.* [See **samninga.**]
**sęndan** (**113**), *send; hurl.*
**sēo**, see **se.**
**seofon** (**78, 20**), *seven.* [Ger. *sieben.*]
**seofon-feald** (**58, 146**), *seven-fold.*
**seofoðða** (**78, 80**), *seventh.*
**sēol**, see **seolh.**
**seolh** (**43.** 3; **21**), *seal.*
**seolf**, see **self.**
**seolfor** (**47, 20**), *silver.* [Ger. *Silber*, Goth. *silubr.*]
**seolfren** (**57**), *silver.* [Ger. *silbern.*]
**seoððan**, see **siððan.**
**sessian** (**118**), *subside.*
**setl** (sedl) (**47**), *seat; throne.* [Ger. *Sessel;* Mod. Eng. *settle.*]
**sętnes** (**51.** 5), *foundation.*
**sęttan** (**113**), *set, set down; place; make; make to turn.* [Formed, by **16**, from the second stem of **sittan** (cf. **lęcgan**); Ger. *setzen.*]
**sibb** (**51.** *b*), *peace; love.* [Cf. Mod. Eng. *gossip.*]
**sīd** (**58**), *roomy, ample.*
**sīde** (**53.** 1), *silk.* [< Lat. *sēta;* cf. Ger. *Seide.*]
**sīe(n)**, see **wesan.**
**siexta** (**78, 80**), *sixth.*
**siextīene** (syxtȳne) (**78**), *sixteen.* [Ger. *sechszehn.*]
**sige** (**44**), *victory.* [Ger. *Sieg.*]
**sige-fæst** (**58, 146**), *victorious, triumphant.* [*ulting in victory.*
**sige-hrēmig** (-hrǣmig) (**57**), *ex-*
**sige-hrēðig** (**57**), *exultant with victory.*
**sige-rōf** (**58**), *of victorious energy.*
**sige-ðūf** (**43**), *triumphal banner.* [**ðūf** < Lat. *tufa.*]
**sige-wang** (-wǫng) (**43**), *field of victory.*
**sigor** (**43**), *victory, triumph.*
**simle**, *always.*
**sīn** (**83**), *his.*
**sinc** (**47**), *treasure, riches.*
**sinc-weorðung** (**51.** 3), *gift of treasure, costly gift.*
**sind**, see **wesan.**
**sin-gāl** (**58**), *constant, never-ceasing.*
**singan** (III. **104, 22**), *sing; praise.* [Ger. *singen.*]
**sittan** (V. **106**), *sit.* [Ger. *sitzen.*]
**sīð** (**43, 30**), *journey; adventure; plan, errand; time.* [Cf. Ger. *Gesinde*, Chaucer, *Prol.* 485, Spenser, *F. Q.* 3. 10. 33.]
**sīð-fæt** (**43.** 2), *journey; passage.*
**sīð-fram** (-frǫm) (**57**), *ready for (their) journey.*
**sīð-nese** (**53.** 1), *prosperous voyage.*
**siððan** (seoððan, syððan) (**84.** 3), *when; after; as soon as; afterward.* [Ger. *seitdem;* cf. Chaucer, *Knight's Tale* 1244, Shak., *Cor.* 3. 1. 47.]
**slacian** (**118**), *defer, delay.* [Mod. Eng. *slack(en).*]
**slǣp** (**43**), *sleep.* [Ger. *Schlaf.*]
**slǣpan** (R. **110**), *sleep.* [Ger. *schlafen.*]
**slēan** (VI. **107, 37**), *smite, strike; strike down, slay.* [Ger. *schlagen;* cf. Chaucer, *Prol.* 661.]
**slęcg** (**51.** *b*), *hammer, sledge.* [Cf. **slēan.**]
**smēan** (**113**), *consider, inquire into.*

**smēaung** (51. 3), *meditation; investigation.*
**smercian** (118), *smile.* [Mod. Eng. *smirk.*]
**smiđ** (43), *blacksmith.* [Ger. *Schmied.*]
**smiđđe** (53. 1), *smithy.*
**smylte** (59), *calm, smooth, unruffled.*
**smyltnes** (51. 5), *serenity, calm.*
**snel(l)** (58; 35. *a*), *active, swift, fleet.* [Ger. *schnell,* Scotch *snell.*]
**snellīc** (57), *swift.*
**snelnes** (51. 5), *agility, celerity.*
**snēowan** (II. 103), *hasten, speed.*
**snottor** (57), *wise.*
**snūd** (43?), *speed.*
**snūde** (70), *quickly.*
**sǫmod,** see **samod.**
**sōna,** *soon; immediately; at once; as soon; when.*
**sorg** (51. *b*), *distress; anxiety, trouble.* [Mod. Eng. *sorrow.*]
**sorgian** (118), *be anxious.* [Mod. Eng. *sorrow,* Ger. *sorgen.*]
**sōđ** (47), *truth.* [Mod. Eng. *sooth;* cf. *forsooth, soothsayer.*]
**sōđ** (58), *true.*
**sōđ,** adv., *verily.* [Cf. Spenser, *F. Q.* 3. 3. 13.]
**sōđ-fæst** (58), *just and true; righteous.* [Mod. Eng. *soothfast.*]
**sōđ-fæstnes** (51. 5), *truth.* [Cf. Chaucer, *Nun's Priest's Tale* 508.]
**sōđlice** (70), *indeed, truly.* [Cf. *soothly,* Spenser, *F. Q.* 5. 10. 8.]
**sparian** (118), *spare.* [Ger. *sparen.*]
**spell** (47), *account.*
**spildan** (113), *fling away.* [Cf. Shak., *Haml.* 4. 5. 20.]
**sprǣc** (51. *b*), *speech; language; tale.* [Ger. *Sprache.*] [*sprechen.*
**sprecan** (V. 106), *speak.* [Ger.
**springan** (III. 104), *spread.* [Ger. *springen,* Mod. Eng. *spring.*]
**spryttan** (113), *bring forth.* [Cf. Ger. *spriessen,* Eng. *sprout.*]
**stæfna,** see **stefna.**
**stānen** (57), *stone.* [< **stān,** by 16; Ger. *steinen.*]
**stæppan** (VI. 107), *step, march.*
**stān** (43), *stone.* [Ger. *Stein.*]
**standan** (VI. 107), *stand; stand still; fall upon.*
**starian** (118), *gaze.* [Mod. Eng. *stare.*]
**stēap** (58), *lofty.* [Mod. Eng. *steep.*]
**stęde** (44), *place, position.* [Mod. Eng. *stead;* cf. Ger. *Statt, Stätte.*]
**stęde-heard** (58), *firm, strong.*
**stęde-wang** (43), *plain.*
**stefn** (51. *b*), *voice.* [Ger. *Stimme;* cf. Chaucer, *Knight's Tale* 1704, Spenser, *Shep. Cal., Sept.* 224.]
**stefn** (43), *prow.* [Cf. 'from *stem* to stern.']
**stefna** (stæfna) (53), *prow.*
**stēoran,** see **stīeran.**
**steorra** (53), *star.* [Cf. Ger. *Stern,* Lat. *stella,* Gr. *ἀστήρ.*]
**stęrced-ferhđ** (58), *resolute-souled, stout-hearted.*
**stīeran** (stēoran) (113), *steer.* [Cf. Ger. *steuern;* and cf. Gr. *σταυρός* ?]
**stiern-mōd** (styrn-) (58), *stern of mood.*
**stīg** (51. *b*), *road, course, line.* [Cf. Mod. Eng. *stile, stirrup, stair.*]
**stīgan** (I. 102, 28), *ascend, enter, go aboard; go down* (cf. Ps. 107.

23). [Ger. *steigen*, Gr. στείχειν; cf. Spenser, *F. Q.* 4. 9. 33.]

**stillan** (**113**; **164**. *i*), *calm, appease, hush.* [Ger. *stillen.*]

**stille** (**59**), *still; quiet, silent.* [Ger. *stille.*]

**stilnes** (**51**. 5), *calm, quietness.*

**storm** (**43**), *storm.* [Cf. Ger. *Sturm.*]

**stōw** (**51**. *b*), *place.* [Cf. Mod. Eng. *stow.*]

**strǣl** (**43**), *arrow.* [Ger. *Strahl.*]

**strǣt** (**51**. *b*), *street; public place.* [< Lat. *strāta;* Ger. *Strasse.*]

**strand** (**43**), *strand, sea-shore.* [Ger. *Strand.*]

**strang** (**58**, **65**), *strong; powerful; violent; hard, severe, arduous.* [Cf. Ger. *streng.*]

**strangung** (**51**. 3), *invigoration, quickening.*

**strēam** (**43**), *stream, current.* [Ger. *Strom.*]

**strēam-wielm** (-welm) (**43**), *whirlpool, maelstrom.*

**strȩng** (**43**), *rope;* plur. *cordage, rigging, tackle.* [Cf. Mod. Eng. *string.*]

**strȩngre**, see **strang**.

**strȩngðu** (**51**. *a*; **144**), *strength.*

**strēonan**, see **strīenan**.

**strīenan** (strēonan) (**113**), *win over, gain over, convert.* [See **gestrēon**.]

**stund** (**51**. *b*), *while;* **stunde** (**176**), *now.* [Ger. *Stunde*, archaic Mod. Eng. *stound*, as in Chaucer, *Knight's Tale* 354, Spenser, *F. Q.* 1. 8. 25, 38.]

**stycce-mælum** (**72**), *gradually, little by little.* [Cf. Ger. *stückweise.*]

**styrian** (**118**), *move; flow, roll.* [Mod. Eng. *stir.*]

**styriendlic** (**57**), *moving, that moves.*

**styrman** (**113**), *storm.* [< **storm**, **17**; Ger. *stürmen.*]

**styrnmōd**, see **stīernmōd**.

**sulh-scear** (**43**?), *plowshare.* [Cf. Lat. *sulcus.*]

**sum** (**89**. *a*; **151**), *some(one); (a) certain; one.* [Cf. Chaucer, *Knight's Tale* 397, 399.]

**sumer** (**43**. 5), *summer.* [Ger. *Sommer.*]

**sund** (**47**), *swimming; course; sea.*

**sundor-ierfe** (-yrfe) (**44**), *private property.*

**sunne** (**53**. 1), *sun.* [Ger. *Sonne.*]

**sunu** (**45**), *son.* [Ger. *Sohn.*]

**sūð-dǣl** (**43**), *southern part; south.*

**sūð-westerne** (**59**), *southwestern.* [Cf. Ger. *südwest.*]

**swā**, *so; as; yet; since; such; which;* **eall swā**, see **eall**; **swā** (**swā**) . . . **swā** (**202**), *so . . . as, as . . . as; the . . . the; inasmuch as; whether . . . or.*

**swǣsendu** (**47**), plur., *viands, food.* [For the plural, cf. Lat. *epulæ.*]

**swæðorian**, see **swe(o)ðerian**.

**swā-hwæðer** (**89**. *a*), *whichever.*

**swā-hwæt-swā** (**89**. *d*), *what(so)ever.*

**swan** (**43**), *swan.* [Ger. *Schwan.*]

**swā-swā**, *like; as; just as; as if.*

**swātig** (**47**), *bloody.* [Ger. *schweissig.*]

**swā-ðēah**, *nevertheless.*

**swaðu** (**51**. *a*), *track, footprint.*

**swefan** (V. **106**), *sleep.*

**swefel** (**43**), *sulphur.* [Ger *Schwefel.*]

**swēg** (**43**), *music.*

**swēg-cræft** (**43**), *music.*

**swegel** (47), *sky, heaven.*
**swēging** (51. 3), *noise.*
**swęncan** (113), *weary, fatigue, wear out.* [Formed from the second stem of **swincan**, by 16.]
**sweora** (53), *neck.*
**sweorcan** (III. 104), *grow dark, become overcast.*
**sweord** (swyrd) (47), *sword.*
**swēot** (47), *troop, army.*
**sweotol** (swutol) (57), *clear.*
**sweotole** (70), *clearly, plainly.*
**sweotollice** (70), *plainly, clearly.*
**swęrian** (VI. 107), *swear.* [Ger. *schwören.*]
**swēte** (59), *sweet.* [Ger. *süss;* cf. Lat. *suavis*, Gr. *ἡδύς.*]
**swētnes** (51. 5; 144), *sweetness; goodness.*
**swe(o)ðerian** (118), *depart, melt away, vanish; subside.*
**swīcan** (I. 102; 164. *n*), *desert.*
**swift** (58), *swift, fleet.*
**swiftnes** (51. 5; 144), *swiftness, celerity.*
**swīge** (53. 1), *silence.*
**swīgian** (118), *be silent, keep silence.*
**swilc** (89. *a*), *such, this sort.* [< ***swalic** < **swā** + **līc**; cf. *swich*, Chaucer, *Prol.* 3.]
**swilce**, adv., *likewise.*
**swilce** (swylce), conj., *as if;* **ēac swilce, swilce ēac**, see **ēac.**
**swimman** (III. 104), *swim.* [Ger. *schwimmen.*]
**swincan** (III. 104), *work with effort.* [Cf. **swęncan**, and archaic Mod. Eng. *swink*, as in Chaucer, *Prol.* 186, Milton, *Com.* 293.]
**swingan** (III. 104), *whip? throw?*
**swīð** (58, 64, 30), *strong;* comp. *right.* [Cf. Ger. *geschwind.*]
**swīðe** (swȳðe) (70), *much, greatly, very;* comp. *rather, more.*
**swīðlice** (70), *exceedingly, greatly*
**swīð-mōd** (58), *vehement-souled.*
**swutol**, see **sweotol.**
**swylce**, see **swilce.**
**swyrd**, see **sweord.**
**swȳðe**, see **swīðe.**
**sybb**, see **sibb.**
**sylf**, see **self.**
**syllan**, see **sęllan.**
**syllīc**, see **sellic.**
**syn(n)** (51. *b*), *sin.* [Cf. Ger. *Sünde.*]
**synderlic** (57, 146), *separate, individual.* [Cf. Ger. *sonderlich.*]
**syndon**, see **wesan.**
**syn-full** (58), *sinful.*
**syððan**, see **siððan.**
**syxtȳne**, see **siextīene.**

## T.

**tācen** (47), *sign, signal.* [Ger. *Zeichen*, Mod. Eng. *token.*]
**tācen-bora** (53), *groomsman* (lit. *standard-bearer*).
**tācnian** (118), *signify, betoken, indicate.*
**tǣcean** (114), *teach.*
**tǣlan** (113), *blame, censure.*
**tāl** (51. *b*), *censure;* **tō tāle**, *censurable, blameworthy.*
**tēar** (43), *tear.* [Cf. Ger. *Zähre* and Gr. *δάκρυ.*]
**tęlg** (43), *dye.*
**tempel** (47), *temple.* [< Lat. *templum.*]
**tēon** (II. 103), *pull, bring.* [Ger. *ziehen.*]
**tēon** (tīan) (113), *arrange, or dain.*
**ticcen** (47), *goat.* [Ger. *Zicke.*]

**tīd** (**51**. 1), *time, season; while; day; hour.* [Ger. *Zeit*, Mod. Eng. *tide* in *Christmastide, Whitsuntide.*]

**tigel-fāg** (**58**), *variegated with tiles.* [**tigel** < Lat. *tegula.*]

**tigris** (Lat.), *tiger.*

**til**, *to.* [Mod. Eng. *till;* cf. Ger. *Ziel.*]

**tilian** (**118**), *gain, obtain, provide.* [Ger. *zielen*, Mod. Eng. *till.*]

**tilung** (**51**. 3), *acquisition, procuring.*

**tīma** (**53**), *time.*

**timbran** (**115**. *b*), *build, construct.* [Ger. *zimmern.*]

**tin** (**47**), *tin.* [Ger. *Zinn.*]

**tinterg** (**47**), *punishment.*

**tīr** (**43**), *glory, fame.* [Ger. *Zier.*]

**tīð** (**51**. *b* ; **28**), *boon.*

**tīðian** (**118**; **159**. *a* ; **28**), *grant, bestow.* [Cf. **tīð**.]

**tō**, prep., *to; for; according to;* the sign of the gerund, and governing the following infinitive as a noun in the dative. [Ger. *zu.*]

**tō**, adv., *too.* [Ger. *zu.*]

**tō-** (**142**). [Cf. Spenser, *F. Q.* 4. 7. 8 ; 5. 9. 10.]

**tō-berstan** (III. **104**), *break up, go to pieces.* [Cf. Chaucer, *Knight's Tale* 1753, 1833, 1899.]

**tō-brecan** (IV. **105**), *break in pieces, shatter.* [Ger. *zerbrechen.*]

**tō-dæg**, *to-day.* [Cf. Ger. *heut zu Tage.*]

**tō-dælan** (**113**), *divide, part asunder, separate, disperse.* [Ger. *zertheilen.*]

**tō-dōn** (**140**), *separate.*

**tō-drǣfan** (**113**), *drive away.* [**drǣfan** < second stem of **drīfan** (**102**), by **16.**]

**tō-foran**, *before.*

**tō-gædere**, *together.*

**tō-gēanes**, *towards, to meet.*

**tō-ge-īecan** (**113**), *add.*

**tō-ge-lǣdan** (**113**), *bring.*

**tō-glīdan** (I. **102**), *glide away, slip away.*

**tō-hopa** (**53**), *hope.* [Cf. Ger. *hoffen.*]

**tō-hrēosan** (II. **103**), *fall away.*

**tohte** (**53**. 1), *conflict.*

**tō hwon**, *why.*

**tō-middes**, *amidst, in the midst of.*

**top** (**43**), *top? ball?* [Ger. *Zopf.*]

**torht** (**58**), *resplendent.*

**torr** (**43**), *tower; watch-tower; crag.* [< Lat. *turris.*]

**tō-sceacan** (VI. **107**), *depart, pass away.*

**tō-scēadan** (R. **110**), *separate, divide.*

**tō-slītan** (I. **102**), *rend, tear, destroy.* [*rupt.*

**tō-twǣman** (**113**), *divide; inter-*

**tō-weorpan** (III. **104**), *blot out, forgive* (lit. *break in pieces*); *quell, compose*, Lat. *dissolvere.*

**træf** (**47**. 4), *building.*

**trēo** (**47**. 3), *tree.*

**trēow-cynn** (**47**), *sort of tree.*

**trēownes** (**51**. 5 ; **144**), *trust.*

**trēow-wyrhta** (**53**, **147**), *carpenter.* [Cf. **wyrhta.**]

**trum** (**57**), *secure, strong.*

**trymman** (**115**. *a*), *confirm, establish, strengthen.* [< **trum**, by **16.**]

**tungol** (**47**. 6), *star, heavenly body.*

**tūsc** (**43**), *tusk.*

**twā**, see **twēgen.**

**twēgen** (**78**, **79**), *two.* [Mod. Eng. *twain*, Chaucerian *tweye* (*Prol.* 704), archaic Ger. *zween.*]
**twęlf** (**78**, **24**), *twelve.* [Ger. *zwölf.*]
**twēntig** (**78**), *twenty.* [Ger. *zwanzig.*]
**twēonian** (**118**; **159.** *b*), *doubt.*
**Tyrisc** (**57**), *Tyrian.*
**tyrnan** (**113**), *revolve.* [Mod. Eng. *turn.*]

## Ð.

**ðā**, pron.; see **84**, **87**. [Cf. Chaucer, *Prol.* 498.]
**ðā** (**84.** 1), *then, when; there, where.* [Ger. *da;* archaic Mod. Eng. *tho*, as in Chaucer, *Knight's Tale* 135, Spenser, *F. Q.* 1. 1. 18.]
**ðæce** (**53.** 1), *roof.* [Ger. *Dach*, Mod. Eng. *thatch.*]
**ðām**, see **84**.
**ðār** (**75**), *there, where.* [Cf. Chaucer, *Prol.* 34, 172, 547.]
**ðāra, ðāre**, see **84**.
**ðār-on**, *therein.*
**ðār-tō-ēacan**, *besides, in addition to that.*
**ðæs**, see **84**.
**ðæs-ðe**, see **157.** 1.
**ðæt**, see **84**; **189.** 3.
**ðæt**, conj., *that.*
**ðætte** (**34**), *that;* **tō ðon ðætte**, *so that.* [< **ðæt-ðe.**]
**ðafian** (-igan) (**118**), *permit, allow.*
**ðā-hwæðre**, *yet.*
**ðā-hwīle-ðe**, *while, so long as.* [Cf. Ger. *dieweil.*]
**ðām**, see **84**.
**ðanan** (**ðe**) (**75**), *thence, from there; whence; from which; of which; by which.* [Ger. *dannen;* cf. Mod. Eng. *thence.*]
**ðanc** (**43**), *thank(s).* [Ger. *Dank.*]
**ðancian** (**118**; **159.** *a*), *thank.* [Ger. *danken.*]
**ðancol-mōd** (**58**), *discreet, heedful, attentive.*
**ðanc-snottor** (ðǫnc-snottur) (**57**), *wise of thought.*
**ðāra**, see **84**.
**ðās**, see **85**.
**ðā-ðā**, *when;* **ðā-ðā . . . ðā** (**202**), *when . . . (then).*
**ðā-ðe, ðe**, see **87**.
**ðe . . . ðe** (**202**), *whether . . . or.*
**ðēah** (ðēh), *though, although; yet;* **ðēah . . . ðēah** (**202**), *though . . . yet.* [Ger. *doch.*]
**ðēah-hwæðre**, *nevertheless.*
**ðēah-ðe**, *though, although;* **ðēah-ðe . . . hwæðre, ðēah-ðe . . . swā-ðēah** (**202**), *though . . . yet.*
**ðearf** (**51.** *b*; **21.** *a*), *need; profit, benefit.* [Cf. **ðurfan.**]
**ðearfa** (**53**; **21.** *a*), *needy (one), poor.* [Cf. **ðurfan.**]
**ðearfendlic** (**57**), *poor.*
**ðearle** (**70**), *greatly, very, very much, exceedingly.*
**ðearlice** (**70**), *violently.*
**ðēaw** (**43**), *conduct;* plur. *morals, virtues.* [Cf. Spenser, *F. Q.* 1. 1. 33.]
**ðegn** (**43**, **28**, **24**), *vassal, retainer, thane.* [Archaic Ger. *Degen;* cf. Gr. τέκνον.]
**ðēh**, see **ðēah.**
**ðęncean** (**114**), *think, consider, reflect; devise.* [Ger. *denken.*]
**ðęnden** (ðęnde), *inasmuch as.*
**ðēnian** (**118**; **164.** *e*; **28**), *serve, minister to.*

**ðēnung** (51. 3; 28), *ministration, service; first course.*

**ðēod** (51. *b*), *people, nation; region, country, province.* [Cf. Ger. *Deutsch.*]

**ðēoden** (43), *lord.* [< **ðēod**; cf. **dryhten** < **dryht**, **cyning** < **cynn.**]

**ðēoden-hold** (58), *faithful to his lord.*

**ðēod-guma** (53), *man of the people.*

**ðēod-scipe** (44. 1; 144), *discipline.*

**ðēos**, see **85.**

**ðēow** (58), *bond, unfree, serving.*

**ðēow-dōm** (43), *service.*

**ðes**, see **85.**

**ðider** (ðyder) (75), *thither; wherever.*

**ðīestru** (ðrīostru) (47), plur., *darkness.* [Cf. Ger. *düster*, and, for the plural, Lat. *tenebræ.*]

**ðīn** (83, 81), *thy, thine.* [Ger. *dein.*]

**ðīnen** (51. 5), *handmaid.* [Cf. **ðegn.**]

**ðing** (47), *thing; sake;* **ǣnige ðinga**, *in any way, by any means.*

**ðing-gewrit** (47), *document.*

**ðis, ðisne, ðissa, ðisse, ðisses, ðissum**, see **85.**

**ðīwen** (51. 5), *handmaid.*

**ðolian** (118), *endure, experience.* [Scotch *thole;* cf. Ger. *dulden.*]

**ðon**, see **84**, **175** ff.; sometimes for **ðǣm, ðām**, through the shortened **ðam, ðan.**

**ðone**, see **84.**

**ðonne**, *then; when; since; than* (with comparatives); **ðonne . . . ðonne** (202), *when . . . (then).*

**ðoðor** (43), *ball.*

**ðrēan** (113), *rebuke.*

**ðrēat** (43), *band, crowd, multitude.*

**ðrēatian** (118), *reprove, chide.* [Cf. Mod. Eng. *threaten.*]

**ðridda** (78), *third.* [Ger. *dritte.*]

**ðrīe** (ðrȳ) (78, 79), *three.* [Ger. *drei.*]

**ðrīnes** (51. 5; 144), *trinity.*

**ðringan** (III. 104), *press forward.* [Ger. *dringen;* cf. Mod. Eng. *throng.*]

**ðrīostru**, see **ðīestru.** [*dreist.*]

**ðrīste** (59), *bold, confident.* [Ger.

**ðrītig** (78), *thirty.*

**ðrīðcyning**, see **ðrȳðcyning.**

**ðroht-heard** (58), *patient, much-enduring.*

**ðrōwian** (118), *suffer, endure.*

**ðrōwung** (51. 3), *passion.*

**ðrȳ**, see **ðrīe.**

**ðrym(m)** (43), *force; troop; glory.*

**ðrym-fæst** (58, 146), *glorious.*

**ðrym-full** (58, 146), *glorious.*

**ðrymlīc** (57), *glorious.*

**ðrym-sittende** (61), *sitting in glory.*

**ðrȳð** (51. *b*), *might;* the translation of **þrēata þrȳðum**, p. 219, 1. 5, is doubtful.

**ðrȳð-bearn** (47, 38), *mighty son*, i.e. *mighty youth.*

**ðrȳð-cyning** (ðrīð-) (43), *king of might.*

**ðū**, see **81.**

**ðūhton**, see **ðyncean.**

**ðurfan** (131), *need.* [Ger. (*be*)-*dürfen.*]

**ðurh**, *through; throughout; in; by; by means of;* **ðurh eall**, see **eall.** [Mod. Eng. *th(o)rough;* Chaucer has *thurgh*, *Knight's Tale* 362.]

**ðurstig** (57), *thirsty.* [Ger. *durstig.*]
**ðus**, *thus* (always with a verb of utterance in these texts).
**ðūsend** (78, 79), *thousand.*
**ðūsend-mælum** (72), *by thousands.*
**ðwēal** (47), *bath.*
**ðwīeres** (ðwēores) (71), *transversely.*
**ðȳ**, see 84, 175 ff.
**ðȳs**, see 85.
**ðyder**, see **ðider**.
**ðȳ-læs-ðe**, *lest.* [Cf. Lat. *quominus.*]
**ðyllic** (89. *a*), *such like, this kind.*
**ðȳn** (113), *coerce, restrain.*
**ðyncean** (114; 164. *l*), *seem.* [Ger. *dünken*, Mod. Eng. *(me)thinks.*]
**ðȳrel** (47), *hole.* [< ***ðurhil** (16). Cf. Chaucer, *Knight's Tale* 1852; Spenser, *F. Q.* 1. 11. 20, 22.]
**ðyrstan** (113, 190), *thirst.* [Ger. *dursten*, Mod. Eng. *thirst.*]
**ðyssum**, see 85.

## U.

**ufan-weard** (58; 166. 1), *upper, above.*
**ūhte** (53. 1), *dawn, daybreak.*
**un-æðele** (59), *plebeian, simple.*
**un-ā-sęcgende** (61), *unspeakable, ineffable.*
**un-ā-swundenlice** (70), *forthwith, without delay.*
**un-cūð** (58, 30), *unknown.* [Mod. Eng. *uncouth;* see Chaucer, *Knight's Tale* 1639, Spenser, *F. Q.* 1. 11. 20, Shak., *Tit. And.* 2. 3. 211.]
**un-cystig** (57, 146), *wicked.*
**under**, *under; among.* [Ger. *unter.*]
**under-fōn** (R. 110), *assume; receive, take in, entertain.*
**under-standan** (VI. 107), *understand.*
**under-ðēodnes** (51. 5; 144), *submission.* [See **underðīedan.**]
**under-ðīedan** (113), *subjoin, add.* [< **ðēod**, by 16.]
**un-ēaðe**, *with difficulty, hardly.* [Cf. **unīeðe**, and *F. Q.* 2. 1. 27.]
**un-for-cūð** (58), *excellent.* [Cf. **fracoð.**]
**un-for-wandiendlice** (70), *boldly, saucily, forwardly.*
**un-ge-cnāwen** (62, 109), *unknown.*
**un-ge-lǣred** (62), *untaught, unlearned, uneducated.* [See **lǣran.**]
**un-ge-limp** (47), *mishap, ill-luck.*
**un-ge-rydelice** (70), *suddenly, on a sudden.*
**un-ge-sewenlic** (57), *invisible.*
**un-ge-ðanc-full** (58, 146), *unthankful, ungrateful.*
**un-ge-ðwærnes** (51. 5; 144), *wickedness, depravity.*
**un-ge-wēned** (63), *unexpected.* [See **wēnan.**]
**un-ge-wērged** (62), *unwearied.* [See **wērig.**]
**un-ge-wunelic** (57, 146), *unusual.* [See **wunian**].
**un-īeðe** (59), *difficult.* [See **unēaðe.**]
**un-lifiende** (-lyfigende) (61), *unliving, dead.* [Cf. **libban.**]
**unnan** (129; 159. *a*), *grant, allow.* [See **ēst.**]
**un-nyt** (57, 155), *devoid, destitute.*

**un-riht-wīs** (**58**, **146**), *unrighteous.*
**un-riht-wīsnes** (**51.** 5; **144**), *unrighteousness.*
**un-rīm** (**47**; **154.** *a*; **142**), *multitude.*
**un-rōt** (**58**), *sorrowful, dejected.*
**un-scęððig** (**57**, **146**), *innocent.*
**un-scrȳdan** (**113**, **162**), *divest.* [See **scrȳdan.**]
**un sōfte** (**70**), *harshly, cruelly.* [Cf. Ger. *unsanft.*]
**un-stille** (**59**), *unquiet, restless.*
**un-stilnes** (**51.** 5; **144**), *disorder, confusion.*
**un-trum** (**57**), *sick.*
**un-trymnes** (**51.** 5; **144**), *illness, disease, infirmity.* [< **untrum.**]
**ūp**, *up.*
**ūp-ā-hǣfednes** (**51.** 5; **144**), *pride, arrogance.* [Cf. **ūpāhębban.**]
**ūp-ā-hębban** (VI. **107**), *lift up.* [Cf. Chaucer, *Knight's Tale* 1570.]
**ūp-ā-standan** (upp-) (VI. **107**), *rise up.* [Cf. Ger. *auferstehen.*]
**ūp-ā-stīgan** (I. **102**), *rise, ascend.*
**ūp-gān** (**141**), *go up.* [Ger. *aufgehen.*]
**ūp-gang** (**43**), *rising.*
**ūplic** (**57**, **146**), *upper, above.*
**uppan**, *upon, on top of.*
**uppe**, *up.*
**ūre** (ūser) (**83**), *our, ours.* [Ger. *unser.*]
**ūrig-feðere** (**59**), *dewy-feathered.*
**urnon**, see **iernan.**
**ūser**, see **ūre.**
**ūt**, *out.*
**ūt-ā-blāwan** (R. **109**), *blow out, breathe out; exhale.*
**ūtan**, *about, externally, on the outside.* [Ger. *aussen.*]
**ūte** (**69**), *outside.*
**ūt-gān** (**141**), *go out.*
**ūt-gangan** (R. **109**), *go out.*
**uton** (wuton), *let us.*

## W.

**wæccen** (**51.** *b*), *vigil.*
**wæd** (**47**), *water, billow, flood.*
**wǣd** (**51.** *b*), *garment; rope.* [Cf. Chaucer, *Knight's Tale* 148, Spenser, *F. Q.* 2. 3. 21, Shak., *Sonn.* 76. 6, and our 'widow's weeds.']
**wǣdla** (**53**), *poor man, destitute one.*
**wǣfels** (**43**), *cloak, mantle.*
**wǣg** (**43**), *billow, flood.* [Cf. Chaucer, *K. T.* 1100, Spenser, *F. Q.* 2. 12. 4.]
**wǣg-flota** (**53**), *water-floater, ship.*
**wæl** (**47**), *slaughter.* [Cf. *Walhalla, Walkyrie.*]
**wæl-gīfre** (**59**), *greedy for slaughter.*
**wæl-grim** (**57**), *fierce, cruel, sanguinary.*
**wæl-hrēow** (**58**), *cruel.*
**wæl-hrēownes** (**51.** 5; **144**), *cruelty.*
**wælm**, see **wielm.**
**wæl-scel** (**47**?), *carnage.*
**wǣpen** (**47.** 1), *weapon;* plur. *arms.*
**wær** (**47**), *ocean.*
**wǣr** (**51.** *b*), *covenant; protection, care, safe-keeping.*
**wǣr-fæst** (**58**, **146**), *covenant-keeping, faithful.*
**wǣstm** (**43**), *growth, size; fruit.* [Cf. **weaxan**, and Ger. *Wachstum;* Mod. Eng. *waist.*]
**wæter** (**47.** 1, 6), *water.* [Ger. *Wasser.*]

**wæter-brōga** (53), *water terror, terrible waters.*
**wæter-ęgesa** (-ęgsa) (53), *dread of the waters, dreadful waters.*
**wæter-flōd** (43), *water-flood.*
**wæter-scipe** (44. 1), *body of water.*
**wafian** (118), *waver.*
**wald**, see **weald.**
**waldend**, see **wealdend.**
**wana** (158), *wanting, lacking.*
**wang** (43), *field, mead.*
**wann** (wǫnn) (58), *dark, black.* [Mod. Eng. *wan.*]
**waroð, waruð**, see **wearoð.**
**wāt**, see **witan.**
**wēa** (53), *woe.* [Cf. Ger. *Weh.*]
**weald** (wald) (43), *weald, forest.*
**wealdend** (waldend) (43. 6), *ruler, lord.*
**wealh-stōd** (43), *interpreter, translator.*
**weall** (43), *wall, rampart.* [< Lat. *vallum.*]
**weallan** (R. 109), *seethe, foam.* [See **wielm.**]
**weard** (43), *guardian, warden.* [Ger. *-wart.*]
**wearoð** (waroð, waruð) (43), *strand, shore, beach.*
**wearoð-gewinn** (waruð-) (47), *strife of the shore*, i.e. *surf, breakers.*
**wearð**, see **weorðan.**
**weax** (47), *wax.* [Ger. *Wachs.*]
**weaxan** (R. 109, 24), *grow, be fruitful, increase.* [Ger. *wachsen;* cf. Shak., *M. N. D.* 2. 1. 56, *Haml.* 1. 3. 12.]
**węccean** (114), *wake.*
**węcg** (43), *metal.* [Mod. Eng. *wedge;* cf. Shak., *Rich. III.* 1. 4. 26.]
**weder** (47), *weather.* [Ger. *Wetter.*]
**weder-candel** (51. 5), *weather-candle*, i.e. *the sun.*
**weg** (43, 24), *way.* [Ger. *Weg.*]
**wegan** (V. 106), *carry.*
**wel**, *well.*
**wela** (53), *wealth, riches, weal.* [Cf. Chaucer, *Knight's Tale* 37.]
**welig** (57, 146), *rich, wealthy, abounding.* [Cf. our 'well off,' 'well to do.']
**wel-willende** (61), *benevolent, kind-hearted, generous.*
**wel-willendlice** (70), *lovingly.*
**wel-willendnes** (51. 5; 144), *generosity, liberality.*
**wēn** (51. 1), *expectation, prospect, chance;* **wēn is ðæt**, *perhaps, perchance.* [Ger. *Wahn.*]
**wēnan** (113; 156. *g*), *expect, look for; think, suppose, imagine.* [Ger. *wähnen*, Mod. Eng. *ween;* cf. Shak., *1 Hen. VI.* 2. 5. 88.]
**węndan** (113), *turn; return; translate.* [Ger. *wenden;* cf. Mod. Eng. *wend, went.*]
**węnding** (51. 3), *rotation.*
**węnian** (116), *accustom, train.*
**weoloc** (43, 20), *cockle, whelk.*
**weoloc-rēad** (58), *scarlet.*
**weoloc-sciell** (51. *b*), *cockle-shell.*
**weolor** (-ur) (51. *b*; 20), *lip.*
**weorc** (47; 21. *b*), *work; exercise; deed; energy.* [Ger. *Werk.*]
**weorod** (weorud, werod) (47, 20), *host.* [< **wer.**]
**weorðan** (wyrðan) (104; 187; 21. *b*), *become; be;* **weorðan tō** sometimes nearly = **weorðan.** [Ger. *werden;* cf. our 'woe *worth* the day.']
**weorðian** (118; 21. *b*), *honor, exalt.* [Cf. Shak., *Lear* 2. 2. 128.]

**weorð-full** (**58**, **146**), *honorable.*
**weorðlic** (-līc) (**57**, **146**), *honorable; exalted.*
**weorðlice** (**70**), *worthily, honorably.*
**weorð-mynt** (**43** — orig. **51**. *b* — **144**; **34**), *dignity.* [< ***weorð-mundiþa**.]
**weorð-scipe** (**44**. 1; **143**), *honor, dignity.* [Mod. Eng. *worship;* cf. Shak., *W. T.* 1. 2. 314, *Lear* 1. 4. 288.]
**weoruld**, see **woruld**.
**wēpan** (R. **109**), *weep.* [< **wōp**, by **16**.]
**wer** (**43**), *man, husband.* [Cf. Lat. *vir*.]
**wer-hād** (**43**), *male sex.* [Cf. **hād**.]
**wērig** (**57**, **146**), *weary.*
**werod**, see **weorod**.
**wer-ðēod** (**51**. *b*), *nation.*
**wesan** (**138**, **187**), *be.*
**westan**, *from the west.*
**west-sǣ** (**43**; **51**. *b*), *sea on the west.*
**wīc** (**47**), *dwelling.* [Cf. Mod. Eng. *bailiwick;* cognate with Lat. *vicus*, Gr. οἶκος.]
**wīcian** (**118**), *visit, lodge, sojourn.* [< **wīc**.]
**wīd** (**58**), *wide.* [Ger. *weit*.]
**wīde** (**70**), *widely, far.*
**wīd-fērende** (**61**), *traveling (traveler) from a distance.*
**wīd-fæðme** (**59**), *capacious, extensive.* [See **fæðm**.]
**wīd-gill** (**58**), *extensive; spacious.*
**wīd-gilnes** (**51**. 5; **144**), *extent, compass.*
**wielm** (wylm, wælm) (**43**), *boiling, swelling, surging.* [See **weallan**, and Mod. Eng. *whelm*.]
**wierdan** (**113**), *mar, injure.*
**wīf** (**47**, **38**), *wife; woman.* [Ger. *Weib;* cf. Chaucer, *Prol.* 445, Shak., *T. N.* 5. 139.]
**wīf-hād** (**43**), *female sex.*
**wīg** (**47**), *war.*
**wīgend** (wiggend) (**43**. 6), *warrior.*
**wīg-hūs** (**47**), *war-house, tower.*
**wiht** (**47**; cf. **89**. *b*), *whit.*
**wild** (**58**), *wild.* [Ger. *wild*.]
**wildēor** (**47**, **38**), *wild animal, wild beast.*
**willa** (**53**), *will; request; desire; delight.* [Ger. *Wille*.]
**willan** (wyllan) (**139**, **188**), *will, wish, desire.* [Cf. Ger. *wollen*, Lat. *velle*.]
**wilnian** (**118**), *desire.* [See Chaucer, *Knight's Tale* 751.]
**wīn** (**47**), *wine.* [< Lat. *vinum;* Ger. *Wein*.]
**wind** (**43**), *wind.* [Ger. *Wind*.]
**windan** (III. **104**), *fly about.* [Ger. *winden*, Mod. Eng. *wind*.]
**windig** (**57**, **146**), *windy.* [Ger. *windig*.]
**wine** (**44**. 2, 4), *friend.*
**wine-ðearfende** (**61**), *needing a friend.* [Cf. **ðearf**.]
**wīn-geard** (**43**), *vineyard.*
**winnan** (III. **104**), *struggle, toil.*
**winstre** (**60**), *left.*
**winter** (**43**. 5), *winter (year); storm.* [Ger. *Winter*.]
**winterlic** (**57**, **146**), *winter, wintry.* [Ger. *winterlich*.]
**wīr** (**43**), *wire.*
**wīs** (**58**; **155**. *e*), *wise.* [Ger. *weise*.]
**wīsian** (**118**), *point out.* [Ger. *weisen*.]
**wīslīc** (**57**, **146**), *wise, true.*
**wist** (**51**. *b*), *provisions, food.* [Cf. **wesan**.]

**witan** (126), *know.* [Mod. Eng. *to wit*, Ger. *wissen;* cf. Chaucer, *K. T.* 402, Spenser, *F. Q.* 1. 3. 6.]
**wītan** (I. 102), *blame, censure.* [Cf. Spenser, *F. Q.* 2. 12. 16.]
**wīte** (48), *punishment, penalty, torture.* [Cf. **wītan**.]
**wītga** (53), *prophet* (*psalmist ?*).
**witodlice** (uutedlice) (70), *indeed, truly.*
**wiþ**, *with* (hostility); *against; toward; in return for.* [Not to be confounded with **mid**; cf. *withstand.*]
**wiþer-** (142).
**wiþer-trod** (47), *retreat.*
**wiþer-winna** (53), *adversary.*
**wiþ-innan**, *within.*
**wiþ-sacan** (VI. 107; 164. *m*), *renounce.*
**wiþ-standan** (VI. 107), *withstand.*
**wiþ-þingian** (118), *talk with, speak to.* [Cf. Mod. Eng. *hustings.*]
**wlanc** (58), *proud, lordly.*
**wlęncu** (51. *a*), *pomp, splendor.* [< **wlanc**, by 16.]
**wlite** (44), *beauty.* [Cf. **andwlita**.]
**wlite-beorht** (58), *beautiful.*
**wlitig** (57, 146), *beautiful, comely.*
**wolcen** (47), *cloud.* [Cf. Ger. *Wolke*, Mod. Eng. *welkin.*]
**wolde**, see **willan**.
**wǫnn**, see **wann**.
**wōp** (43), *weeping* (*tears*).
**word** (47), *word.* [Ger. *Wort.*]
**word-hord** (47, 147), *treasury of words.* [Cf. Ger. *Hort.*]
**word-loca** (53, 147), *coffer of words.*
**worhte**, see **wyrcean**.
**worn** (43), *multitude.*
**woruld** (51. 1, 3; 26; 20), *world;* **in woruld worulde**, *for ever and ever.*
**woruld-bisgu** (51. *a*), *worldly occupation.*
**woruld-cræft** (43), *secular art, secular occupation.*
**woruld-ge-þyngþ** (51. *b*), *worldly honor, worldly dignity.*
**woruld-līf** (47), *worldly life.*
**woruld-spēd** (51. *b*), *worldly success.*
**wręccean** (114), *awake, arouse.*
**wrēon** (I. 102), *clothe.*
**wręþian** (118), *support, uphold.*
**wrigon**, see **wrēon**.
**wudu** (45), *forest, wood.*
**wudu-bearu** (-bearo) (43. 7), *forest, grove.*
**wuldor** (47), *glory, splendor.*
**wuldor-cyning** (43), *king of glory, king of majesty.* [Cf. Ps. 24. 7.]
**wuldor-drēam** (43), *heavenly joy heavenly rapture* (lit. *glory-joy*).
**wuldor-fæder** (43. 8), *father of glory.*
**wuldor-spēdig** (57, 146), *glorious.*
**wuldor-þrym(m)** (43), *glorious majesty.*
**wuldrian** (118), *glorify, magnify, celebrate.*
**wulf** (43, 24), *wolf.* [Ger. *Wolf.*]
**wund** (58), *wounded, sore.* [Ger. *wund.*]
**wundenlocc** (58), *curly-haired.*
**wundor** (47. 1), *wonder.* [Ger. *Wunder.*]
**wundorlic** (57, 146), *wonderful.* [Ger. *wunderlich.*]
**wundorlice** (70), *wondrously.* [Cf. Chaucer, *Prol.* 84.]
**wundrian** (118), *wonder.* [Ger. *wundern.*]

**wunian** (**118**), *dwell, remain, live.* [Ger. *wohnen;* cf. Chaucer, *Prol.* 388, Spenser, *F. Q.* 2. 1. 51.]
**wunung** (**51.** 3), *dwelling.* [Ger. *Wohnung;* cf. Chaucer, *Prol.* 606, Spenser, *F. Q.* 6. 5. 13.]
**wurdon**, see **weorðan.**
**wuton**, see **uton.**
**wyllan**, see **willan.**
**wylm**, see **wielm.**
**wyn-sum** (**57**, **146**), *winsome, pleasant.* [Ger. *wonnesam.*]
**wyn-sumlice** (**70**), *winsomely.*
**wyrcean** (**114**; **161**; **184.** *a*), *work; do; construct, make, build; yield.* [Cf. Ger. *wirken*, and Chaucer, *Knight's Tale* 1901.]
**wyrhta** (**53**), *craftsman, workman, maker.* [Cf. **wyrcean**; Mod. Eng. *-wright* (see Chaucer, *Prol.* 614).]
**wyrm** (**43**), *worm.* [Ger. *Wurm.*]
**wyrm-cynn** (**47**), *kind of worms.*
**wyrt** (**51.** 1), *herb.* [Mod. Eng. *wort;* cf. Ger. *Wurz, Wurzel, Gewürz*, and Chaucer, *Nun's Priest's Tale* 401.]
**wyrt-ge-mang** (**47**), *spice.*
**wyrt-ge-męngnes** (**51.** 5; **147**), *spice.*
**wȳscan** (**113**), *wish.* [Ger. *wünschen.*]

## Y.

**ȳcan**, see **īecan.** [*übel.*]
**yfel** (**57**), *evil, wicked, bad.* [Ger.
**yfel** (**47**), *evil.*
**yfele** (**70**), *evil, wrongly.*
**ymb(e)**, *about.*
**ymb-** (**142**).
**ymb-clyppan** (**113**), *embrace.*
**ymb-hōn** (R. **110**), *surround.*
**ymb-hwyrft** (**43**), *compass, circuit; orbit.*
**ymb-hycgean** (**124**), *consider.*
**ymb-sęllan** (**114**), *envelop; beset.*
**ymb-sittan** (V. **106**, **142**), *sit around.*
**ymb-trymman** (**115.** *a*), *surround.*
**ymb-ūtan**, *about, around.*
**yrre**, see **ierre.**
**ȳð** (**51.** *b*; **30**), *wave, billow, flood.* [Cf. Lat. *unda*, and **30.**]
**ȳð-bord** (**47**), *ship?*
**ȳð-lād** (**51.** *b*; **215**), *billow-road.*
**ȳð-lid** (**47**, **215**), *ship.*

Note. — The EWS. forms of **sǣ** (p. 310) are: sing. nom. **sǣ**, gen. **sǣs**, dat. **sǣ**, acc. **sǣ**. Other forms are: sing. gen. dat. **sǣwe**; plur. nom. acc. **sǣs, sǣ**, dat. **sǣum, sǣwum.**

# DATE DUE

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| FEB | 5 | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |

Demco, Inc. 38-293

RUTGERS THE STATE UNIVERSITY
3 9030 02416999 9

214635

PE129
.C771E3

SEP 21 '36
SEP 28 '36
CANCEL
CANCEL
6 '56
OCT - 7 1964
CANCEL
DEC 4 - 1970